JVC

ENGLISH

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720

ESPAÑOL

RECEPTOR DVD CON MONITOR KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720

FRANÇAIS

RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720

MP3
WMA
WAV

Amplifier Power Standard CEA CEA-2006 Compliant

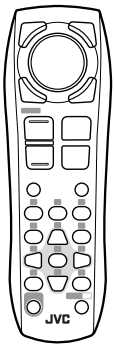
DVD VIDEO

HD Radio READY

COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

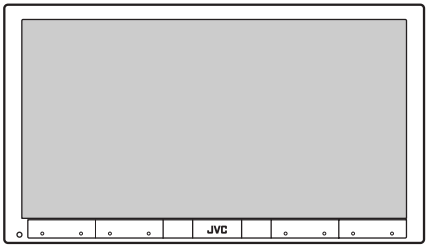
SAT RADIO READY

DOLBY DIGITAL



Made for iPod

Works with iPhone



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 12.
Para cancelar la demonstración en pantalla, consulte la página 12.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 12.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____

Serial No. _____

GET0602-001A
[J]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** (For U.S.A.) Visible and/or invisible class II laser radiation when open. Do not stare into beam.
   (For Canada) Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

[European Union only]

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Caution:

This product has a fluorescent lamp that contains mercury. Disposal of these materials may be regulated in your community due to environmental considerations. For disposal or recycling information, please contact your local authorities or for USA, the Electronic Industries Alliance: <http://www.eiae.org.>

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

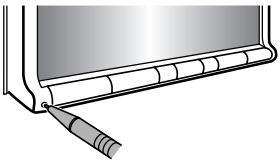
WARNINGS:
(To prevent accidents and damage)

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

How to read this manual

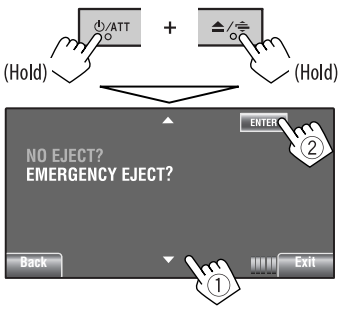
- < > is used to indicate the variable screens/menus/operations/settings that appear on the touch panel.
- [ ] is used to indicate the buttons on the touch panel.
- (🔍 page number) is used to indicate the reference page number of the related topics/operations/settings.
- **Operation index:** To locate easily the desired operations/functions. (🔍 63)
- **Indication language:** English indications are used for the purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language from the <**AV Menu**>. (🔍 15)

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device). (🔍 27, 38)*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *You can forcibly eject the loaded disc even if the disc is locked. To lock/unlock the disc, 🔍 30.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Playable disc type

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc	Playable
DVD • DTS sound cannot be reproduced.	DVD-Video (Region Code: 1) *1 ALL 1 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD-Audio/DVD-ROM	✗NO
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW *2, +R/+RW *3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD-Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/DivX/MPEG4/DVD+VR/DVD-RAM	✗NO
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DTS-CD/SVCD (Super Video CD)/CD-ROM/CD-I (CD-I Ready)	✗NO
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/DivX/MPEG4	✗NO

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs). DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.*

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs. "DVD" is selected as its disc type when a +R/+RW disc is loaded. +RW double layer discs are not playable.*

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

CONTENTS

How to read this manual 3
How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3
Playable disc type 4

INTRODUCTIONS

Basic operations 6
- Using the monitor panel/touch panel 6
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 9

Preparation 12

AV MENU

AV Menu operations 13

OPERATIONS

Listening to the radio 29
Disc operations 30
- Operation buttons on the screen 32
- Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 33

USB operations 37

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 38
- Connecting a new Bluetooth device 38
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 39
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 41

Listening to the CD changer 41
Listening to the satellite radio 42
- Tuning in to a channel you want 43

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast 44
Listening to the iPod/iPhone 45
- When connected with the USB cable 45
- When connected with the interface adapter 46

Using other external components 47
- AV-INPUT 47
- EXT-INPUT 48

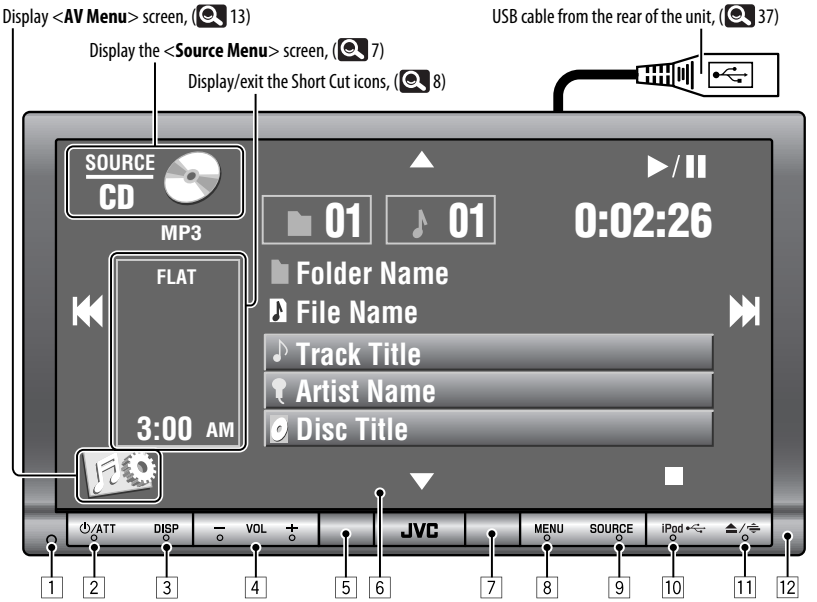
REFERENCES

More about this unit 48
Maintenance 55
Troubleshooting 56
Specifications 61
Operation index 63

ENGLISH

Basic operations

Using the monitor panel/touch panel



1 Resets the unit (3).

2
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound (if the power is on).
- Turns off the power. (Hold)

3 Changes the display information.*1

4
- Adjusts the volume.
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.*2

5 Remote sensor

6 Touch panel (see the following pages).
- Most of the operations are explained using the touch panel unless mentioned otherwise.
- The screen will turn off if no operation is done for about 10 seconds (depends on the <**Illumination**> setting). (18)

7 Motion sensor

8 Displays <**AV Menu**> screen.

9
- Selects the source.*3
  TUNER/HD Radio → SAT → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) → USB/iPod → CD-CH/iPod/EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN → (back to the beginning)
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Displays the <**Dial Menu**> screen. (Hold)*4

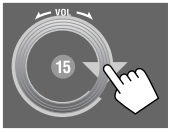
10
- Selects "**USB/iPod**" as the source.
- Switches the setting between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE" (Hold)

*1 – *4 : 7

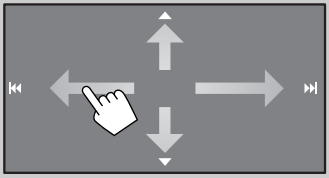
11 • Displays <**Open/Tilt**> screen.*5
[**Open**] : Opens the monitor panel.
[**Eject**] : Ejects the disc.
[**Close**] : Closes the monitor panel.
[**Tilt +**] : Tilts open the monitor panel.
[**Tilt –**] : Tilts close the monitor panel.
• Ejects the disc and display <**Open/Tilt**> screen. (Hold)
• Closes the monitor panel when the panel is opened.

12 Monitor panel

*1 *Available display information varies among the playback sources. (53)*
*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of other sources.*
*3 *Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made. (17, 18)*
*4 *Only when Bluetooth phone is connected.*
*5 *Shaded items cannot be used.*



You can also adjust the volume by moving your finger on the touch panel as illustrated.



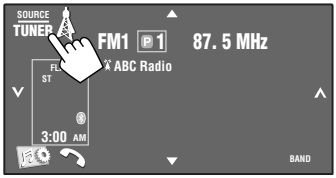
When you drag your finger on the touch panel, it functions in the same way as touching [▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭].

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

<Source Menu> screen

You can also select the source using the touch panel.



Current source Exit

Touch panel and button illumination

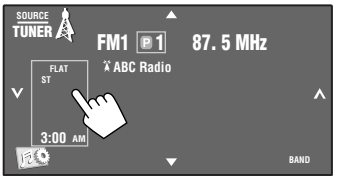
Dependable on the <**Illumination**> setting. (18)

• Turned off:
When no operation is done for about 10 seconds.
• Turned on again:
– When you touch the touch panel or move your hand nearby.
– When you use the remote controller.
– When a call/SMS comes in (for Bluetooth cellular phone).
– When the signal from the rear view camera comes in
• Always turned on:
– When <**AV Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Source Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Open/Tilt**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Illumination**> is set to <**Normal**>.

Continued on the next page

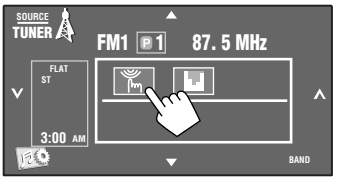
Short Cut icons

You can easily access some frequently used functions by using the Short Cut icons.

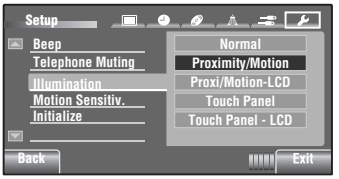


Short Cut window appears.

- To exit from the window, press the button again.



Press a Short Cut icon.



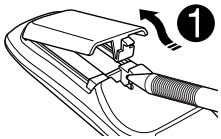
The corresponding screen is displayed.

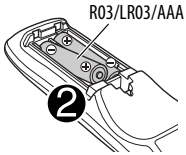
Available icons vary among the sources.

	Displays <**Illumination**> menu. (18)
	Changes the sound mode. (19)
	Turns on or off Track/Chapter Repeat. (22)
	Displays <**Aspect**> menu. (15)
	Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (26)
	Displays <**Redial**> menu. (26)
ID	Displays <**Sirius ID**> menu. (17)
D A	Displays <**Blend Hold**> menu. (21)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the batteries





Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

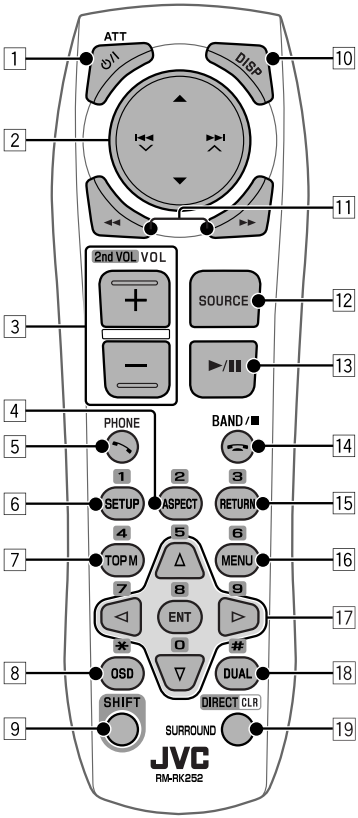
If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The following describes all the available operations for all the sources.

- To easily locate the available operations between different type of files, 33, 34.



1 ⏻/I ATT **button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 ▲/▼ **buttons**

- **TUNER**: Selects the preset stations.
- **HD Radio**: Selects a multicast channel.
- **SAT**: Selects the categories.

Continued on the next page

- **DISC/USB**:
  – DVD-Video: Selects the title.
  – DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  – **USB/CD-CH**/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects the folders if included.
- **iPod**:
  – ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲/▼/ |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ work as menu selecting buttons.)
    ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
    ▼: Confirms the selection.
  – ▼: Pauses or resumes playback.

|◄◄ ∨ / ►►| ∧ buttons

- **TUNER/HD Radio**:
  – Searches for stations automatically if pressed briefly.
  – Searches for stations manually if pressed and held.
- **SAT**:
  – Selects a channel if pressed briefly.
  – Selects a channel rapidly if pressed and held.
- **DISC/USB/CD-CH**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.

  In menu selecting mode:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.

3 **VOL** (volume) **+ / – buttons**
- Adjusts the volume level.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**:
  – Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.

2nd VOL (volume) **buttons**
- Not applicable for this unit.

4* **ASPECT button**
- Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

5 **PHONE button**

Applicable only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

6* **SETUP button**
- Not applicable for this unit.

7* **TOP M** (menu) **button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

8 **OSD** (on-screen display) **button**
- Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "✳."

9 **SHIFT button**
- Functions with other buttons.

10 **DISP** (display) **button**
- Changes the display information.

11 **◄◄/►► buttons**
- MP3/WMA/WAV/**USB**/**iPod**: Reverse search/forward search.

12 **SOURCE button**
- Selects the source.

13 ► (play) / ❚❚ (pause) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Starts playback/pauses.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Answers incoming calls.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Starts playback.

14 (end call) **button**
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Ends the call.

BAND button
- **TUNER/HD Radio/SAT**: Selects the bands.

■ (stop) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Stops playback.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Pauses.

15* **RETURN button**
- VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16* **MENU button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

17* △/▽ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- **CD-CH**: Changes discs in the magazine.

◁/▷ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- MPEG Video: Skips back or forward by about 5 minutes.

ENT (enter) **button**
- Confirms selection.

18 **DUAL button**
- Not applicable for this unit.
- Does not function as "#."

19 **DIRECT button**
- **DISC/USB**: Enters direct search mode for chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track when pressed with SHIFT button (34).

CLR (clear) **button**
- **DISC/USB**: Erases the misentry when pressed with SHIFT button.

SURROUND button
- Not applicable for this unit.

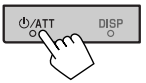
* *Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.*
- – **DISC/USB**: *Enters chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track number after entering search mode by pressing SHIFT and DIRECT. (34)*
- – **TUNER/HD Radio/SAT**: *(Number 1 to 6) : Enters preset station/channel number.*

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.
- Some of the operations might be different with the steering wheel remote control function.

Preparation

Canceling the display demonstration and setting the clock

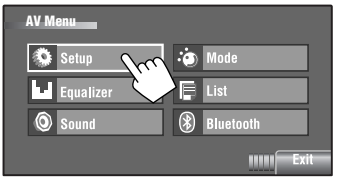
1 Turn on the power.



2 Display <AV Menu> screen.

or

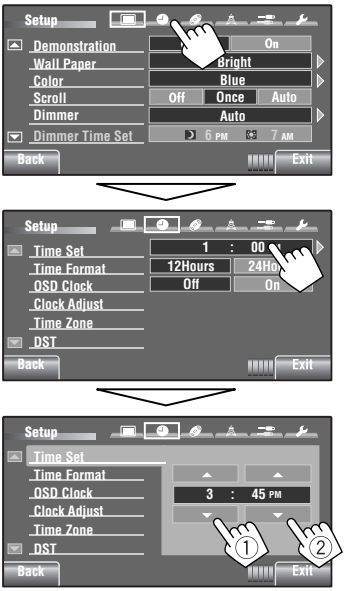
3 Display <Setup> screen.



4 Cancel the demonstration.

Select [**Off**].

5 Set the clock.



6 Finish the procedure.

AV Menu operations

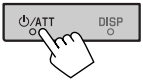
You can use the <**AV Menu**> for most of the operations and settings. The available menu items shown on the touch panel, depends on the selected source.

- Non-available items will be shaded.

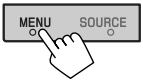
The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures.

- You can perform the operations/change the settings by following these steps unless mentioned otherwise.

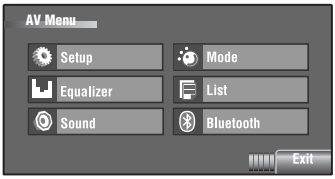
❶ Turn on the power.



❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.



or

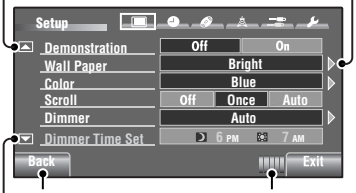


Setup : 14 – 18
Equalizer : 19
Sound : 20
Mode : 21 – 23
List : 24 – 25
Bluetooth : 26 – 28

❸ Press the desired icon/item to perform the desired operations/settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

Indicates the next hierarchy level/setting item exists



Returns to the previous screen.

Indicates the remaining time before the current screen exit automatically.

Moves to the succeeding menu page

- Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting screen, but just selecting an option will change the setting.
- To exit from the setting, press [**Exit**].

Continued on the next page

Setup

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Demonstration**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen. (12)
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. ♦ **Bright, Future, Horizon, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. ♦ **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Once** : Scrolls the displayed information once. ♦ **Auto** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • Touching the information bar scrolls the text regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates dimmer. ♦ **Auto** : Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. *1 ♦ **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting (see below).
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On ( )/Off ( ) times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. ♦ **01** (bright), **02** (middle), **03** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust the brightness of the screen. ♦ **–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust *2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (common) and the other for "**AV-IN**." Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. (**–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**) ♦ **Bright** : Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. ♦ **Contrast** : Adjust the contrast. ♦ **Color** : Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. ♦ **Tint** : Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION CONTROL lead connection is required. (See the Installation/Connection Manual.)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (the media must contain pictures or videos) or "**AV-IN**."*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Aspect** *3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.

	Aspect ratio of the incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Panorama: For viewing 4:3 pictures naturally on the wide screen		
Auto:	• For "**DISC**": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

Display	**Language** *4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. ♦ **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português** • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. (52)
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **1:00AM** (12)
	Time Format	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. (12) ♦ **12 Hours, 24 Hours**
	OSD Clock	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : The clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
	Clock Adjust *5	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Auto** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock time data provided via the satellite radio channel.
	Time Zone *5, *6	Select your residential area from one of the following time zones for clock adjustment. **Alaska, Pacific, Mountain, Central, Eastern, Atlantic, Newfoundland**
	DST (Daylight Saving Time) *5, *6	Activates this if your residential area is subject to DST. ♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates daylight saving time.

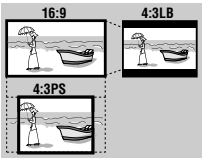
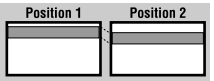
*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *Turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

*5 *Appears only when SIRIUS Satellite Radio or XM Satellite Radio is connected.*

*6 *Appears only when* <**Clock Adjust**> *is set to* <**Auto**>.

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Menu Language *7	Select the menu language; Initial **English** (54)
Audio Language *7	Select the audio language; Initial **English** (54)
Subtitle *7	Select the subtitle language or erase the subtitle <**Off**>.; Initial **Off** (54)
Monitor Type *7 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. ◆ **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. ◆ **4:3LB** (Letterbox)/ **4:3PS** (Pan Scan) : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3.
OSD Position *7 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. (36) ◆ **1** : Higher position. ◆ **2** : Lower position.
File Type *7	Select the playback file type when a disc/USB contains different types of files. You can store this setting separately for each source—"**DISC/USB**." ◆ **Audio** : Plays back audio files. ◆ **Still Picture** : Plays back JPEG files. ◆ **Video** : Plays back MPEG1/MPEG2 files. ◆ **Audio&Video** : Plays back audio files and MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
iPod Artwork *8	While playing back a track (in "HEAD MODE"), Artwork recorded for the track is displayed on the monitor. ◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates Artwork display. To display the artwork, press DISP repeatedly. • It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
D. (Digital) **Audio Output** *7	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (53) ◆ **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. ◆ **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. ◆ **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio.

*7 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*8 *Skip the track so that your setting takes effect.*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Disc	**Down Mix** *9	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks. ♦ **Dolby Surr.** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. ♦ **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) **Range Compres.** (Compression) *9	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. ♦ **Auto** : Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. ♦ **On** : Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	♦ **Auto** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ♦ **Wide** : Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	Area Setting	♦ **US** : When using in North/Central/South America. FM/AM intervals are set to 200 kHz/10 kHz. ♦ **Europe** : When using in any other areas. FM/AM intervals are set to 50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search)/9 kHz. ♦ **SA** : When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	Sirius ID *10	Your SIRIUS identification number appears on the monitor.
Input	**AV Input** *11	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. (47) ♦ **Off** : Select when no component is connected ("**AV-IN**" is skipped while selecting the source). ♦ **iPod (Off)** : Select when connecting the iPod/iPhone using the USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone. (45) ♦ **Audio&Video** : Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. ♦ **Audio** : Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. ♦ **Camera** *12 : Select when connecting a rear view camera to display the picture (as it is taken). ♦ **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System. (47)

*9 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*10 *Appears only when a SIRIUS Satellite Radio is connected.*

*11 *Not selectable when "**AV-IN**" is selected as the source.*

*12 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <**Full**> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the monitor panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Input	**External Input** *13, *14	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. ♦ **Changer/iPod** *15 : CD changer, (41), iPod, (45). ♦ **External** : Any other than the above, (48).
Others	**Beep**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting *16	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Muting1, Muting2** : Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Illumination	You can turn off the screen and the light of the buttons on the monitor panel while turning on the unit. (7)
	Motion Sensitiv.	Change the sensitivity of the sensor for <**Illumination**> above. ♦ **Low, Mid, High**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. (3)

	Buttons on the monitor panel	Screen
Normal:	Always lights.	Always lights.
Proximity/Motion:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Always lights.
Proxi/Motion-LCD:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.
Touch Panel:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Always lights.
Touch Panel-LCD:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.

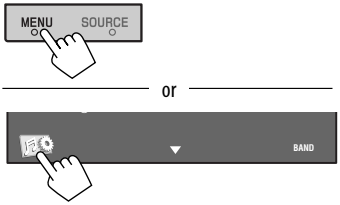
*13 *Not required for Bluetooth, Satellite radio interface, and XMDirect™ Tuner Box. They are automatically detected.*
*14 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*
*15 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*
*16 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Equalizer

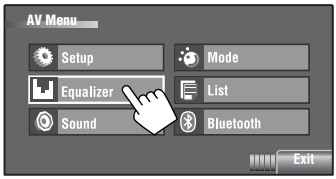
Selects a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- **Flat** (Initial), **Hard Rock, R&B, Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User1, User2, User3**

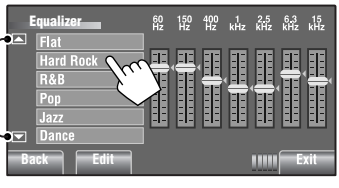
1 Display <AV Menu> screen.



2 Display <Equalizer> screen.



3 Select a sound mode.



Moves to the other 6 sound modes.

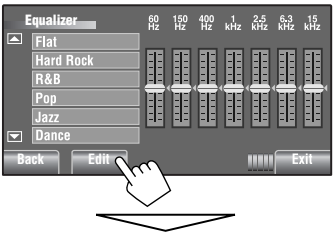
Ex.: When <**Hard Rock**> is selected

Storing your own adjustments

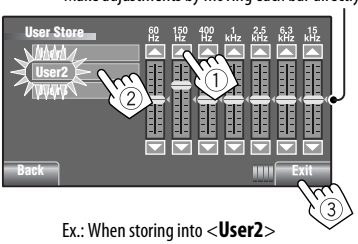
You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 above to enter the <Equalizer> screen.

2 Adjust the settings, then store.



Make adjustments by moving each bar directly.



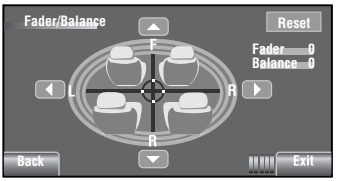
Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Fader/Balance	**Fader** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. • When using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0." ♦ **F6** to **R6;** Initial **0** **Balance** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. ♦ **L6** to **R6;** Initial **0** Press [▲/▼/◄/►] to adjust. 
Volume Adjust *1	Adjust and store the auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • <**Fix**> appears if "**TUNER/Bluetooth PHONE**" is selected as the source. ♦ **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00**
Subwoofer Level	Adjust the subwoofer output level. ♦ **–06 to +08;** Initial **00**
High Pass Filter	♦ **Through** : Select when the subwoofer is not connected. ♦ **On** : Select when the subwoofer is connected.
Crossover	Select the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. ♦ **80Hz, 120Hz, 150Hz**
Amplifier Gain *2	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. ♦ **Off** : Deactivates the built-in amplifier. ♦ **Low** : VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) ♦ **High** : VOL 00 to 50

*1 *For "**DISC/USB**": You can make the adjustments separately depending on the audio format—Dolby digital, MPEG Audio, and the others.*

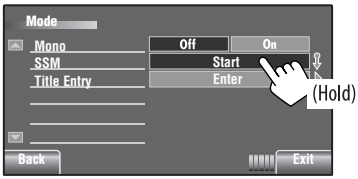
*2 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOL 30" if you change to <**Low**> with the volume level set higher than "VOL 30."*

Mode

Initial: **Underlined**

Selectable items when the source is:

- **TUNER** : **Mono, SSM, Title Entry**
- **HD Radio** : **Mono, SSM, DX/Local, Blend Hold**
- **DISC, USB, CD-CH, iPod** : **Repeat, Random**
- **iPod** *1 : **Repeat, Random, Audiobooks**
- **AV-IN, EXT-IN** : **Title Entry**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Mono *2	When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive, activate monaural mode for better reception. The MONO indicator lights up. ♦ **ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The MONO indicator lights up. ♦ **OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
DX/Local	Only for FM station of the HD Radio. ♦ **Local** : Activate to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The LO indicator lights up. ♦ **DX** : Restore the stereo effect.
SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory) *3	You can automatically preset 6 stations for each FM band.  • Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.
Blend Hold *4	While receiving an HD Radio broadcast, the unit tunes to digital or analog audio automatically due to the receiving condition. You can change the HD Radio reception mode manually. ♦ **Analog** : Tuning to analog audio only. ♦ **Digital** : Tuning to digital audio only. ♦ **Auto** : Switch between digital and analog audio automatically.

*1 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

*2 *Only works for FM station and FM station of the HD Radio.*

*3 *Also available for AM when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

*4 – *Appears only when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*
– *If no sound can be heard from the selected setting, change the setting to <**Analog**> or <**Digital**>.*
– *The setting automatically changes to <**Auto**> if you tuned in to or change to another station, or if you turned off the power.*
– *This setting cannot take effect for the conventional FM/AM stations.*
– *If the radio station forces the reception mode to digital, the DIGITAL indicator flashes.*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Title Entry *5	You can assign titles (up to 16 characters) to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM), **AV-IN**, and **EXT-IN**. (For available characters, 52.) Press [**Enter**] to show the <**Title Entry**> screen.

[Store] : Confirm the entry.
[◄/►] : Move the cursor.
[BS] : Erase the character before the cursor.
[Del] : Erase the character on the cursor.
[Cap] : Change the letter case (upper/lower).
[A → 0 → Ä] : Change the character set.
[Space] : Enter a space.

Repeat *6

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source	DISC					USB		CD-CH		iPod	iPod
Disc/file type / Repeat	DVD-Video	DVD-VR	MPEG/ MP3/ WMA/ WAV	JPEG	VCD/CD	MPEG/ MP3/ WMA/ WAV	JPEG	CD	MP3	—	—
Chapter	●	●									
Title	●										
Program		●									
Disc								●	●		
Folder			●	●		●	●		●		
Track			●		●	●		●	●		
One										●	●
All										●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Chapter** : Repeats current chapter.
- **Title** : Repeats current title.
- **Program** : Repeats current program (for DVD-VR, not available during Playlist playback).
- **Disc** : Repeats all tracks of the current disc.
- **Folder** : Repeats all tracks of the current folder.
- **Track** : Repeats current track. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **One** : Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
- **All** : Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

*5 *Unavailable for AM/FM stations when an HD Radio tuner box is connected.*
*6 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Random *7	Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source	DISC		USB	CD-CH		iPod	iPod*8
Disc/file type / Random	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD	MP3	—	—
Folder	●		●		●		
Disc/USB (All)	●	●	●	●	●		
All				●	●		
Song						●	●
Album						●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Folder** : Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folders.
- **Disc/USB (All)** : Randomly plays all tracks. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **All** : Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs.
- **Song** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs"*9 of the iPod.
- **Album** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

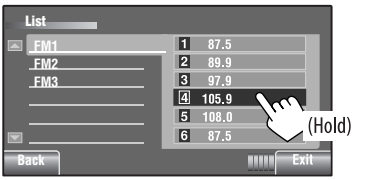
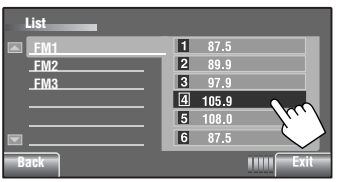
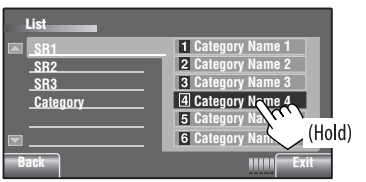
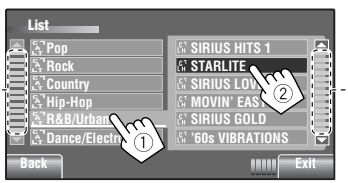
Audiobooks	You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. ♦ **Normal** : Plays at normal speed. ♦ **Faster** : Plays faster. ♦ **Slower** : Plays slower.

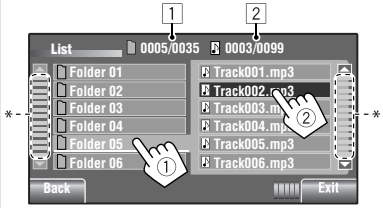
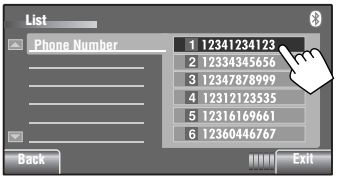
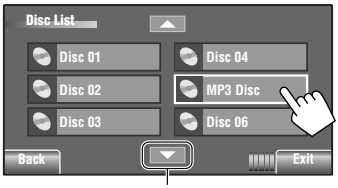
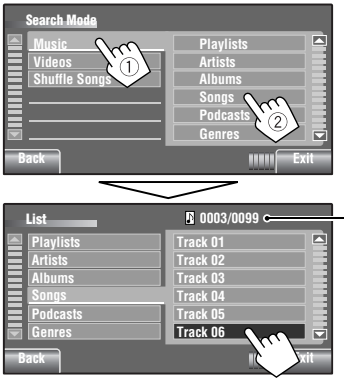
*7 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

*8 *Not applicable for video file.*

*9 *You can activate* <**Shuffle Songs**> *in* <**Search Mode**> *menu. (25)*

List

Source	Operation/setting
TUNER/ HD Radio	• **Storing a preset station manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [⌃ / ⌄] to tune in to the station you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  The station selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset station on the list** 
SAT	• **Storing a preset channel manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [▲ **CATEGORY**/▼ **CATEGORY**], then [⌃ / ⌄] to tune in to the channel you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  The channel selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset category/channel on the list**  * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*

Source	Operation/setting
DISC/USB	**Selecting a track on the list** If the device contains folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.  1 Current folder list number/total folder list number 2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*
Bluetooth PHONE	**Selecting a preset phone number on the list to make a call** 
CD-CH	**Selecting a disc on the list**  To go to the other list If an MP3 disc is selected, Folder/Track List appear. Select a track to start playback.
iPod	**Selecting a track/video from <Search Mode>** • Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)  Current track (video) number/total track (video) number ♦ **Music :** Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, Podcasts, Genres, Composers, Audiobooks ♦ **Videos :** Video Playlists, Movies, Music Videos, TV shows, Video Podcasts ♦ **Shuffle Songs :** Playback starts if this is selected.

Bluetooth

Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source for operations.

- Firstly, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to register and establish the connection with a device.

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Dial Menu *1	Select the method to make a call. ♦ **Redial** : Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. ♦ **Received Calls** : Shows the list of the received calls. ♦ **Phonebook** : Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. ♦ **Missed Calls** : Shows the list of the missed calls. ♦ **Phone Number** : Shows the phone number entry screen. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Preset]** : Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. **[Dial]** : Calls the entered number. ♦ **Voice Dialing** : Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system: → Speak the name you want to call.
Message *2	**If <Message Info> is set to <Manual>... (🔍 28)** Access the message list to read messages. ♦ **Unread** : Messages you have not read. ♦ **Read** : Messages you have read. ♦ **Unsent** : Messages you have not sent. ♦ **Sent** : Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.

*1 *Only for the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*2 *Selectable only when the source is "**Bluetooth PHONE**" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Open	**Preparation:** • Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function. • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Open**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. 2 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)*3. • You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only. [**BS**] : Erases the character before the cursor. [**Del**] : Erases the character on the cursor. [**Enter**] : Confirms the entry. 3 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen. Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit. • The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> or activate <**Auto Connect**> to connect the same device the next time.
Search	**Preparation:** • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Search**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.) 2 Select a device you want to connect. 3 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit. • Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code. 4 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

*3 *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

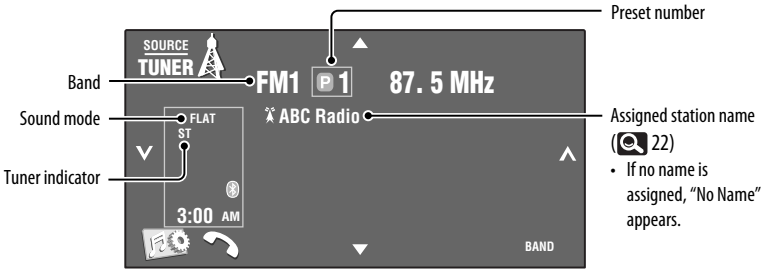
Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item	
Special Device	Only for "NEW DEVICE." Select a device you want to connect from the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish the Bluetooth connection. Then, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to connect. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> the next time.	
Connect	Only for the registered devices. Select a device from the list of registered devices, establish the connection with it.	
Disconnect	Only for the connected devices. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.	
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Press <**Yes**> to confirm delete the registered devices.	
Settings Initial: **Underlined**	**Auto Connect***4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... ♦ **Off** : No Bluetooth device. ♦ **Last** : The last connected Bluetooth device. ♦ **Order** : The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer*5	♦ **Off** : The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. ♦ **On** : The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. ♦ **Reject** : The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info*5	♦ **Auto** : The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, 40. ♦ **Manual** : The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting*5	Adjust the volume of the microphone connected to the Bluetooth adapter. ♦ **01/02/03**
	Version	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." Not selectable when "NEW DEVICE" is selected.*

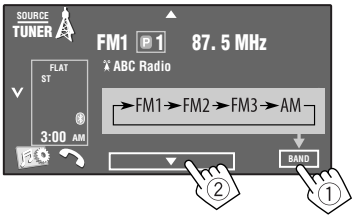
Listening to the radio



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3. **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.**
   - Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
   - The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

Selecting a preset station

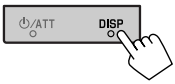
- Directly from the touch panel



You can also select a preset station using the remote controller (9) and from the Preset List (24).

> You can display the Preset List by pressing [P 1] or holding [▲/▼].

Changing the display information



(53)

> - To improve the FM reception, 21.
> - To automatically preset stations into memory, 21.
> - To manually preset stations into memory, 24.
> - To assignning titles to stations, 22.

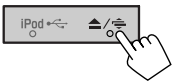
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, then playback starts (for some discs, the top menu of the disc appears).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

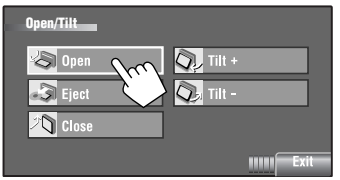
❶ Open the monitor panel.



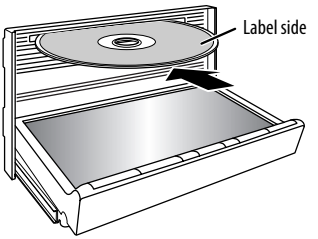
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷



❸ Insert a disc.

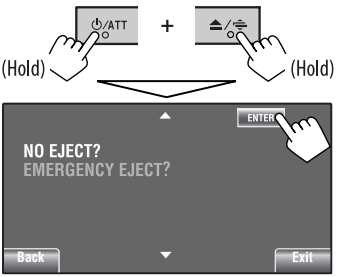


Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**Close**].

Caution:
Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

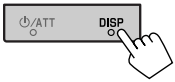


To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.
- Discs can be forcibly ejected. (🔍 3)

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (🔍 53)

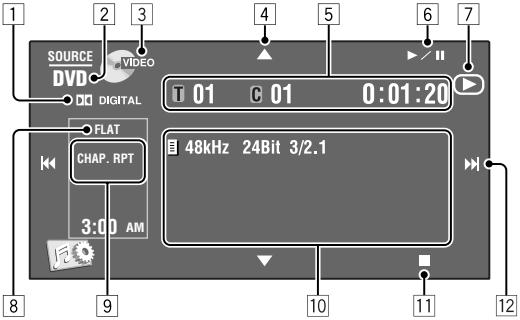
- To select the playback mode, 🔍 22, 23.
- To select tracks on the list, 🔍 25.

Changing the display information



Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (53)

Ex.: While playing a DVD Video



1 Audio format—Dolby Digital, MP3, WMA, WAV
2 Disc type—DVD, DVD-VR, VCD, CD
3 Video format—MPEG, VR-PRG (program), VR-PLAY (playlist), PBC
4 [▲/▼]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects title/program/playlist.
- MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV:
  – Selects folder
  – Displays Folder/Track List (Hold)

5
- DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
- DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
- MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
- JPEG: Folder no./Track no.
- VCD/CD: Track no./Playing time

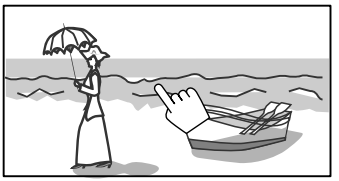
6 [►/❚❚]
Starts playback/pauses
7 Indicates the button pressed (►/❚❚/■)
8 Sound mode (19)
9 Playback mode (22, 23)
10 Disc/track information
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
- MPEG/JPEG: Folder name/file name
- CD Text: Title/artist name/album name
  – "No Name" appears for conventional CDs or if not recorded
- MP3/WMA/WAV: Current folder name/current file name/tag data (current track title/artist name/album title) if it is recorded

11 Stops playback
12 [|◄◄/►►|]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects chapter.
- MPEG/JPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects track.
- DVD Video/DVD-VR/MPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

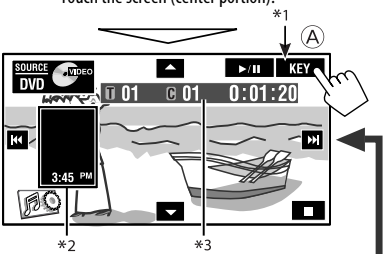
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

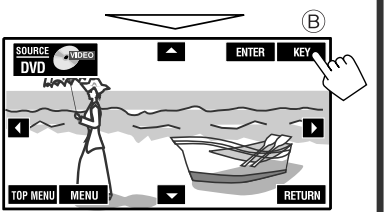
- If no operation is done after awhile, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



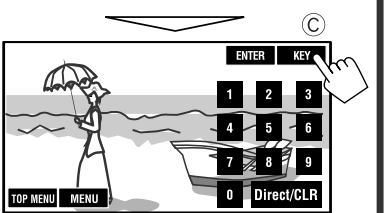
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To end the operations, touch the screen again.

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Displays <**Source Menu**> screen
[▲ ▼]	🔍 31
[► / ❚❚]	Starts playback/pause
[|◄◄ ►►|]	• Selects tracks • Reverse/forward search (Hold)
[ ]	Displays <**AV Menu**> screen
[■]	Stops playback

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD menu operation playback

[▲ ▼ ◄ ►]	Selects the menu items
[**ENTER**]	Confirms the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Returns to the previous menu or displays the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENTER**]	Enters numbers
[**Direct/CLR**]	• Switches between chapter/track entry and title/folder entry • Erases the last entry when you enter a wrong number

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENTER**]

*1 *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen*

*2 *Displays Short Cut icons. (🔍 8)*

*3 *Playback time. (🔍 31)*

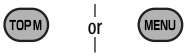
Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Button	DVD Video / DVD-VR	MPEG/JPEG
■	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	• MPEG: Start play/Pause (if pressed during play) • JPEG: • Start play (Slide show: Each file is shown for a few seconds.) • Pause (if pressed during play).
◄◄ ►►	• Reverse/forward chapter search*1 (No sound can be heard.) • Slow motion*2 during pause (No sound can be heard.) – *DVD-VR: Reverse slow motion does not work.*	• MPEG: Reverse/forward track search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭	• Select chapter (during play or pause) • Reverse/fast-forward chapter search*3 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• MPEG: • Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*5 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold) • JPEG: Select file
▲ ▼	• DVD-Video: Select title (during play or pause) • DVD-VR: • Select program • Select playlist (during play or pause)	Select folder
◁ ▷	—	• MPEG: Skip back or forward the scenes by about 5 minutes
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	Select aspect ratio

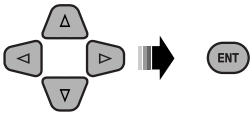
*1 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*2 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*3 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10
*4 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2 ⇨ ▶▶ 3
*5 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2

Using menu driven features... (DVD-Video)

1 Enter the menu screen.



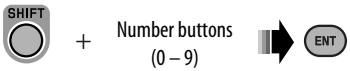
2 Select an item you want to start play.



Canceling the PBC playback... (VCD)

During stop...

1

2 

• To resume PBC, press TOP M/MENU.

Continued on the next page

Button	VCD	MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD
■	Stop play	Stop play	Stop play
▶/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)
◀◀ ▶▶	Reverse/forward track search*6 • Forward slow motion*7 during pause. (No sound can be heard.) – *Reverse slow motion does not work.*	Reverse/forward track search*6	Reverse/forward track search*6
⏮ ⏭	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)
▲ ▼	—	Select folder	—
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	—	—

*6 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*7 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*8 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10

Searching for an item directly

1 While holding SHIFT, press DIRECT repeatedly to select the desired search mode.

DVD-Video: CHAP ➡ -- → TITLE ➡ -- → Canceled

DVD-VR: CHAP ➡ --- → PG/PL ➡ --- → Canceled

MPEG: TRACK ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

JPEG: FILE ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

MP3/WMA/WAV: Track Search --- → Folder Search --- → Canceled

VCD/CD: Track Search --- → Canceled

2 While holding SHIFT, press the number buttons (0 – 9) to enter the desired number.

3 Press ENT (enter) to confirm.

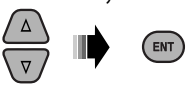
- For MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV, track is searched within the same folder.
- For DVD-VR, program/playlist search is possible during Original program playback (PG)/Playlist playback (PL).
- To erase a misentry, press CLR (clear) while holding SHIFT.
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

Using the list screens... (DVD-VR)

1 Display the Original Program screen.

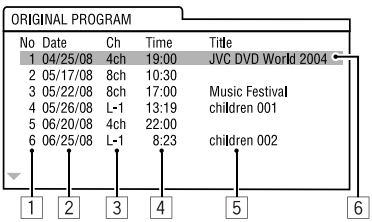
Display the Playlist screen.

2 Select an item you want to start play.

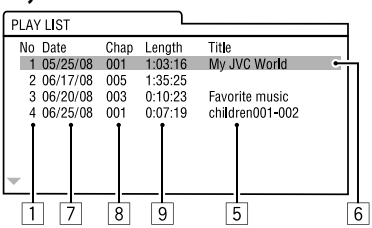


Original Program/Playlist screen

- **Original Program**



- **Playlist**



1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

(DVD/DVD-VR/MPEG/JPEG/VCD)

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

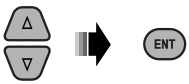
1 Show the on-screen bar (36).

(twice)

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...



- To cancel pop-up menu, press RETURN.
- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

Entering time/numbers

Press △/▽ to change the number, then press ◁/▷ to move to the next entry.

- Each time you press △/▽, the number increases/decreases by one value.
- After entering the numbers, press ENT (enter).
- It is not required to enter the zero and tailing zeros (the last two digits in the example below).

Ex.: Time search

DVD: _:_ _:_ _ (Ex.: 1:02:00)

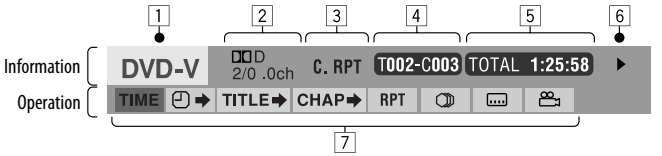
Press △ once, then ▷ twice to go to the third entry, △ twice, then press ENT (enter).

Removing the on-screen bar

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar

Ex.: DVD-Video



1 Disc type

2
- DVD-Video: Audio signal format type and channel
- VCD:PBC

3 Playback mode*1

DVD-Video:	**T. RPT**:	Title repeat
	C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
DVD-VR:	**C. RPT**:	Chapter repeat
	PG. RPT:	Program repeat
MPEG Video:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	F. RPT:	Folder repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random
	F. RND:	Folder random
JPEG:	**F. RPT**:	Folder repeat
VCD*2:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T002-C003	Current title/chapter
PG001 C002	Current program/chapter
PL001 C002	Current playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD-Video, elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist.)
T. REM	DVD-Video/DVD-VR: Remaining title/program/playlist time VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track*3
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track*3

6 Playback status

▶	Play
▶▶ / ◀◀	Forward/reverse search
I▶ / ◀I	Forward/reverse slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

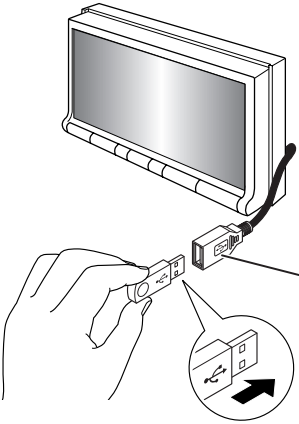
TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
	Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist or of the disc.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play*1
RND	Random play*1
	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
	Change or turn off the subtitle language
	Change the view angle

*1 *For repeat play/random play, 22, 23.*
*2 *While PBC is not in use.*
*3 *Not applicable for DVD-VR.*

USB operations

You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect the iPod to the USB terminal of the unit. For details of the operations, 45 – 46.

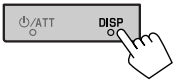


This unit can play JPEG/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV files stored in USB mass storage class device.

- You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on discs.
- All tracks in the USB device will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously when you reconnect the same USB device again.

- To select the playback mode, 22, 23.
- To select tracks on the list, 25.

Changing the display information



(53)

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Now Reading" is shown on the screen.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, 50.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.
- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

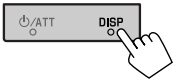
Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.
- Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

- To register a device using <**Open**> or <**Search**>, 27.
- To connect a special device, 28.
- To connect/disconnect/delete a device, 28.

Changing the display information



(53)

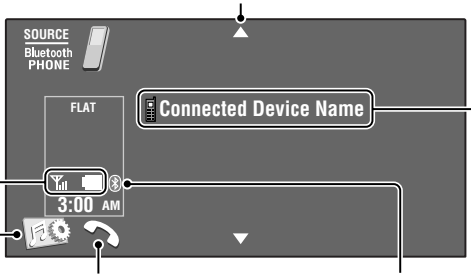
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only).

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

Status of the device
- Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device).

[▲/▼]: Selects the other registered device.

Connected device name
- When a cellular phone with audio function is registered/connected, appears.



Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (Hold)

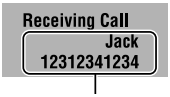
Display <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Appears on any source information screen when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

Bluetooth icon
- Lights up when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [Bluetooth].**
4. **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu). (26 – 28)**

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "**Bluetooth PHONE**" automatically.



Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...
The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (28)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...
To answer the incoming call
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

To end the call
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

- You can adjust the microphone volume, 28.

To make a call, use <**Dial Menu**>. (26)

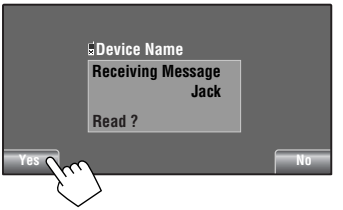
Continued on the next page

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (28)



To read the message, press [**Yes**].
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press [**No**].

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (26)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages, 28.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

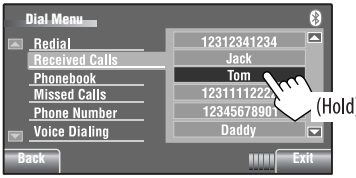
Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

Presetting the phone numbers

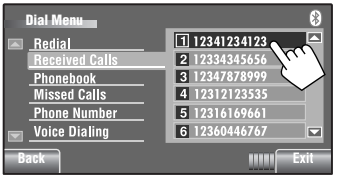
You can preset up to 6 phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>.
(26)

2 Select a telephone number to store.



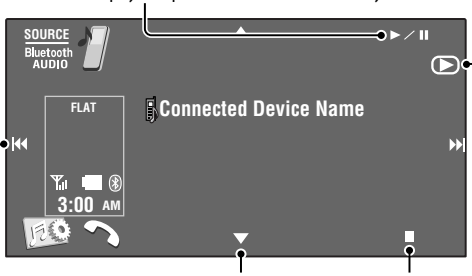
3 Select a preset number.



Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

To call a preset number, 25.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].**

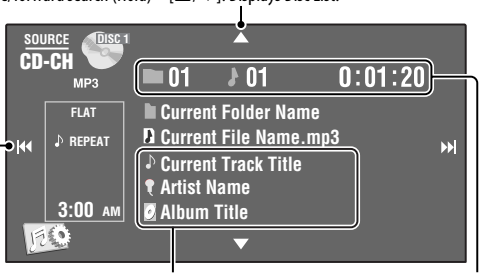
❷ **Start playback.**
If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (18)

Ex.: While playing an MP3 disc
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects track
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold) [▲/▼]: Displays Disc List.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].**

❷ **Press [ ].**

❸ **Press [List].**

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**

To select the playback mode, 22, 23.

Listening to the satellite radio

Before operating, connect either one of the following (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS satellite radio System,** SC-C1 and KS-SRA100, PnP, SC-VDOC1 and KS-SRA100, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **XM satellite radio System,** JVC Smart Digital Adapter–XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC and CNPJVC1 for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

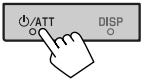
GCI (Global Control Information) update

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically, and no sound can be heard:
  – For SIRIUS Satellite radio: "Channel is updating XX% completed" appears.
  – For XM Satellite radio: "UPDATING" appears.
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- Do not press any buttons or perform any operations until updating is completed.

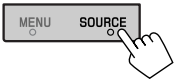
For SIRIUS Radio

Activate your subscription after connection:

1 **Turn on the power.**



2 **Select "SAT" for the source.**



The SIRIUS Satellite radio starts updating all the SIRIUS channels. (🔍 "GCI update" above.)

- Once completed, SIRIUS Satellite radio tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

3 **Check your SIRIUS ID. (🔍 17)**

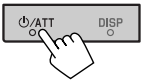
4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**
"Subscription updated Press Any Key to Continue" appears on the monitor once subscription has been completed.

For XM Radio

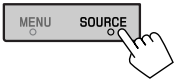
Activate your subscription after connection:

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1 **Turn on the power.**



2 **Select "SAT" for the source.**

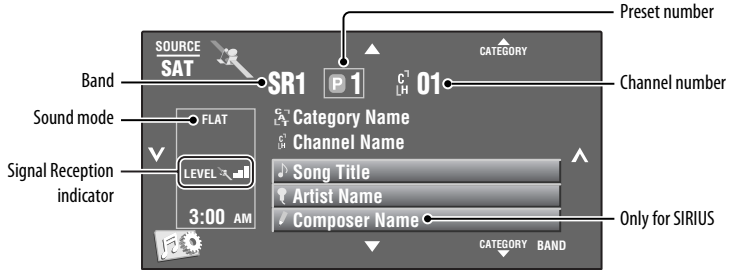


The XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically. (🔍 "GCI update" above.)

3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirectTM Universal Tuner Box, or tune in to "Channel 0." (🔍 43)**

4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**
Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

Tuning in to a channel you want



For SIRIUS Radio

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [SAT].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → SR1 → SR2 → SR3
3. **Press [▲ CATEGORY] or [CATEGORY ▼] to select a category.**
   - To select a channel from all categories, select <**All**>.
4. **Press [∨] or [∧] to select a channel to listen to.**
   - Holding either button changes the channel rapidly.
   - While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

You can display the Preset List by pressing [P1] or holding [▲/▼].

- To store channels in memory, 24.
- To select preset category/channel from the list, 24.

For XM Radio

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [SAT].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → XM1 → XM2 → XM3
3. **Press [▲ CATEGORY] or [CATEGORY ▼] to select a category.**
   - To select a channel from all categories (including non-categorised channels), skip this step.
   - If you do not select a channel within 15 seconds, the category selected is canceled. You can select a channel from all categories now.
4. **Press [∨] or [∧] to make a channel to listen to.**
   - Holding either button changes the channel rapidly.
   - While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

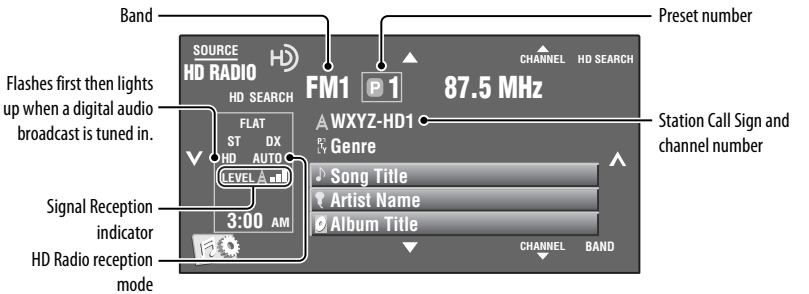
Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast

Before operating, connect HD Radio tuner box, KT-HD300 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

What is HD Radio Technology?

HD Radio Technology can deliver high-quality digital sound—AM digital will have FM-like quality (in stereo) and FM digital will have CD-like quality—with static-free and clear reception. Furthermore, stations can offer text and data, such as artist names and song titles.

- When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, it can also receive conventional analog broadcasts.
- Many HD Radio stations also offer more than one channel of programming. This service is called multicasting.
- To find HD Radio stations in your area, visit www.hdradio.com <http://www.hdradio.com/>.



Refer to page 29 for basic radio operations.

When receiving HD Radio Multicast channels...

1 Press [▲ CHANNEL] or [CHANNEL ▼] to select a desired channel.

→ HD1 ↔ HD2 ↔ HD8 ←

- "LINKING" appears while linking to a multicast channel.

Searching for HD Radio stations only

1 Press [HD SEARCH].

- The HD SEARCH indicator appears.

2 Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.

- To change the HD Radio reception mode, 🔍 21.
- To improve the reception, 🔍 21.

Listening to the iPod/iPhone

You can connect the iPod/iPhone using the following cable or adapter:

To	Cable/adapter	To operate
Listen to the music	USB 2.0 cable (accessory of the iPod/iPhone) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below.
	Interface Adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the interface adapter" on page 46.
Watch the video	USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone, KS-U30 (not supplied) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below. • Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 17.

When connected with the USB cable

There are 2 control modes in "**iPod**" source.

- "HEAD MODE" : Control by this unit.
- "iPod MODE" : Control by the connected iPod/iPhone.
  Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**> when using KS-U30 to connect. (17)

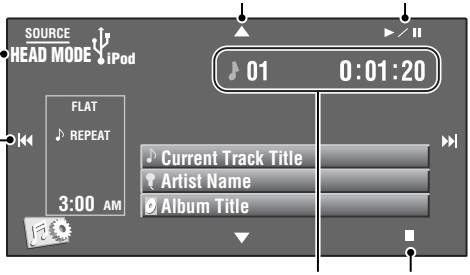
- Press and hold **iPod** to switch between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE."

The operation explained below are under "HEAD MODE."

- [▲/▼]: Moves to the previous/next item of a category*1
- Enters <**Search Mode**> menu (Hold)*2 (25)

Starts playback/pause

Indicates the controlling unit for playback



*1 [▲/▼] *may not function depending on how you select the current track/video.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."*

- [|◀◀/▶▶|]: Selects a track/video
- [|◀◀/▶▶|]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Track no./Playing time

Stops playback

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].

Playback starts automatically.

- When you connect the iPod to the USB terminal, "**iPod**" is selected as the source and playback starts automatically.

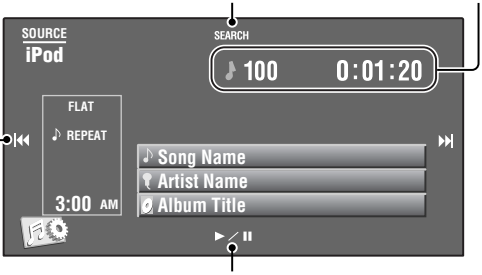
2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select a track/video.

You cannot resume playback for video sources.

Continued on the next page

The following operations/settings are only available in "HEAD MODE."
- To display the <**iPod Artwork**>, 16.
- To select track/video from <**Search Mode**>, 25.
- To select the playback mode, 22, 23.
- To change the play speed of the audio books, 23.

When connected with the interface adapter



- [⏮/⏭]: Selects tracks
- [⏮/⏭]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Starts playback/pause

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (18)

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select a track.

Selecting a track from the main menu

1 Press [SEARCH] to enter the main menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select the desired item.
- Skips 10 items at a time if there are more than 10 items. (Hold)

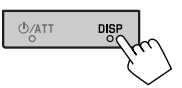
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [► / ❚❚] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [SEARCH].

To select the playback mode, 22, 23.

Changing the display information

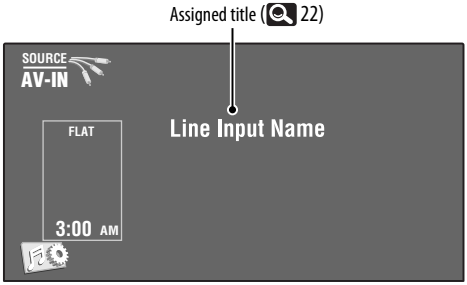


(53)

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN jacks.



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].**
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons while watching the playback picture, 32.

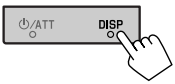
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the LINEIN/VIDEO IN jack so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (17)

To view the navigation screen

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (53)



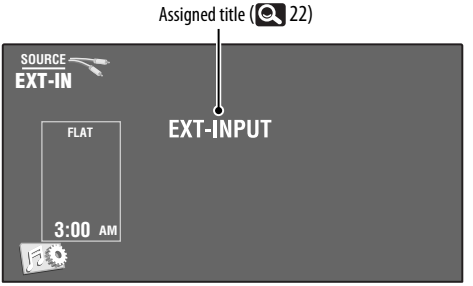
- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (15)

When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**> (17)
- You can use the source "**AV-IN**" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN jacks.

Continued on the next page

EXT-INPUT

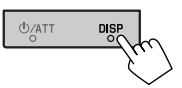
You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter, KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter, KS-U58 (not supplied).



Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (18)

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].**
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

Changing the display information



(53)

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No Disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.

- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.

* *<.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders. The MPEG2 files with the <.mod> extension code cannot be played back when stored on a USB mass storage class device.*

- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/ program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/ MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- This unit can play back JPEG files that are at 32 × 32 to 8 192 × 7 680 resolution.
  It may take time to display the file depending on its resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

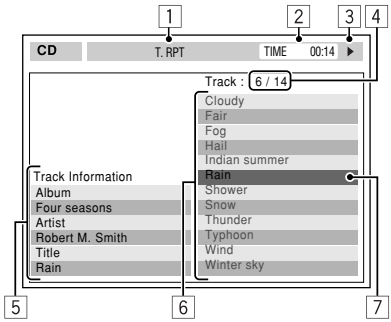
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

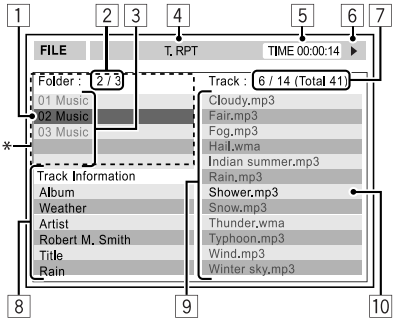
- **CD**



Continued on the next page

1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**



* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

USB

- If "No USB Device" appears after removing a device, reattach a device or select another playback source.
- When the USB device has no playable files, or has not been formatted correctly, "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.
- This unit cannot recognize a USB device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with two or more partitions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect only one USB device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- This unit may not recognize a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- When connecting with a USB cable, use the USB 2.0 cable.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of the devices.
- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- For MPEG1/2 files: The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 2 Mbps.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.

- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**:
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (28)
- **Error**:
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**:
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**:
  The unit is updating the phone book or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**:
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset08**:
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

: Cellular phone

: Household phone

: Office

: General

: Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (25), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

Satellite radio operations

- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <http://www.sirius.com>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <http://www.xmradio.com>.

iPod/iPhone operations

- You can control the following types of iPod/iPhone:
  (A) Connected with the USB cable:
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)*1, *2, *3
  – iPod classic*1, *2
  – iPod nano*2, *3
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod Touch*1, *2
  – iPod Touch (2nd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPhone/iPhone 3G*1, *2
  (B) Connected with the interface adapter:
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)
  – iPod classic
  – iPod nano
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*4

*1 *To watch the video with its audio, connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*

*2 *"iPod MODE" is available, 45.*

*3 *To listen to the sound in "iPod MODE," connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*

*4 *It is not possible to charge the battery through this unit.*

Continued on the next page

- If the iPod does not play correctly, update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the monitor. This unit can display up to 40 characters when using the interface adapter and up to 128 characters when using the USB 2.0 cable or USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30).

Notice:
When operating an iPod/iPhone, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

For the USB connection:
When <**iPod Artwork**> is set to <**On**>:
Do not press any keys during the first 5 seconds or more of playing back any track containing an Artwork*. It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
* *The picture displayed on the iPod's/iPhone's screen while playing back a track.*

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Characters you can enter for titles

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (22)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space							

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Ð	Ŧ	Ł	Ĳ	Ŋ	ð								

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ľ	ı	ij		

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

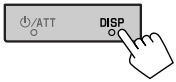
- DTS sound cannot be emitted.
- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (🔍 16)

Playback disc \ <D. Audio Output>		Output signals		
		<Stream>	<Dolby D>	<PCM>
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

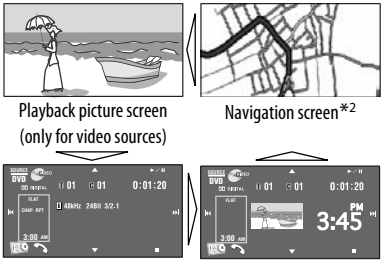
Display information

- Available display information varies among the playback sources.



Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex.: When the playback source is a DVD video disc



Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Navigation screen*2

Source information screen

Playback picture and source information screen*1

*1 *When the source is "iPod," the Artwork of the song is shown if the song has an Artwork data. (🔍 16) While MP3/WMA file is played, "Jacket picture" is shown if the file has the tag data including "Jacket picture."*

*2 *When* <**Navigation**> *is selected for* <**AV Input**>. *(🔍 17)*

Language codes (for DVD language selection)

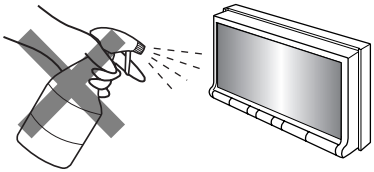
Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- HD Radio™ and the HD Radio Ready logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- "SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- "SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- "Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- "Works with iPhone" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Maintenance

Caution on cleaning the unit

Do not use any solvent (for example, thinner, benzine, etc.), detergent, or insecticide. This may damage the monitor or the unit.



Recommended cleaning method:
Gently wipe the panel with a soft, dry cloth.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD
—8 cm (3-3/16") disc

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).
- Messages (enclosed in " ") in the tables below are shown in the language selected on <**Language**>. (15) Messages described here are in the language of this manual.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (14)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press [**OPEN/TILT**].
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN jack. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only VOL +/– and ⏏/⇕ work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• The touch panel does not respond properly. • <**Illumination**> function does not work properly.	• Keep your hands and the touch panel clean and dry. • Eliminate static electricity and do not place magnetic items near the unit. • Leave the unit until the temperature becomes stable in the car. • A rubber mat on the floor may cause this symptom. In this case, do not use the rubber mat.
TUNER	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (24)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (30)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (14)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (4)
MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
USB	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• "Now Reading..." keeps flashing on the screen.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Copy tracks to the USB device.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, 52.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks are not properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again, and try again.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device.
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (28)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit (supplied with Bluetooth Adapter) position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped while using a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "NEW DEVICE" cannot be selected for "**Bluetooth AUDIO**."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "NEW DEVICE," disconnect it. (27)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" appears on the screen.	Starts subscribing SIRIUS Satellite radio. (42)
	• "Acquiring Signal" or "NO SIGNAL" appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "No Antenna" or "ANTENNA" appears on the screen.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "No CH" appears on the screen for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display when listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "CH–––" appears on the screen for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "NO NAME" appears on the screen.	No text information for the selected channel.
	• "UPDATING" appears on the screen and no sound can be heard.	The receiver is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• "OFF AIR" appears on the screen while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "LOADING" appears on the screen while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information is temporarily unavailable.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Reconnect this unit and the Satellite radio correctly and reset the unit.
	• Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect the Satellite radio after a few seconds.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
HD Radio reception	• Sound quality changes when receiving HD Radio stations.	Fix the reception mode either to <**Digital**> or <**Analog**>. (21)
	• No sound can be heard.	• "Analog" is selected when receiving all digital broadcast of HD Radio station. Select <**Digital**> or <**Auto**>. (21) • <Digital> is selected when receiving weak digital signals or receiving conventional radio broadcast. Select <**Analog**> or <**Auto**>. (21)
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Reconnect this unit and the HD Radio tuner box correctly, then reset the unit.
iPod /iPhone	• The iPod/iPhone does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version of the iPod/iPhone. • Charge the battery of the iPod/iPhone. • Check whether "HEAD MODE" or "iPod MODE" is correctly selected. (45) • Reset the iPod/iPhone.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod/iPhone.
	• No operations are available when playing back a track containing Artwork.	Operate the unit after the Artwork is loaded. (16)
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
	• "Restricted Device" appears on the screen.	Check whether the connected iPod is compatible with this unit. (51)
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (14)

JVC bears no responsibility for any loss of data in an iPod/iPhone and/or USB mass storage class device while using this unit.

Specifications

AMPLIFIER	**Power Output:**	**20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N**		Amplifier Power Standard CEA CEA-2006 Compliant
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)		
	Load Impedance:			4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:		Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
			Level:	±10 dB
	Audio Output Level: • LINE OUT (REAR) • SUBWOOFER		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
			Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:			NTSC
	Video Output (composite):			1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input, USB input, Steering wheel remote input	
		Output:	VIDEO OUT	
		Others:	CD changer, DIGITAL OUT (optical)	
TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
			with channel interval set to 50 kHz	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	with channel interval set to 10 kHz	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
			with channel interval set to 9 kHz:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:		9.3 dBf (0.8 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:		16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):		65 dB
		Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:		40 dB
	AM Tuner:	Sensitivity:		20 μV
		Selectivity:		40 dB
DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:		16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:		16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:			96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:			98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:			Less than measurable limit

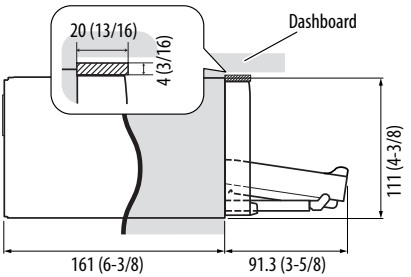
Continued on the next page

USB	USB Standards:	USB 2.0 Full Speed	
	Data Transfer Rate	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
	Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
	Max. Current:	DC 5 V ⎓ 500 mA	
MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C (14°F to 140°F)
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 161 mm (7-3/16″ × 4-3/8″ × 6-3/8″)
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 22 mm (7-7/16″ × 4-5/8″ × 7/8″)
	Mass (approx.):		3.3 kg (7.3 lbs) (including trim plate and sleeve)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm (inch)

Operation index

General

Reset 3, 6
Volume 6, 7, 10, 20
AV Menu 6, 13
Source 6, 7, 11, 32
Short Cut 6, 8, 32
RM-RK252 ..... 9 – 11, 33 – 36
Clock 12, 15
Display demonstration 12, 14

Tuner

Listen to the radio (FM/AM) 6, 9, 29
Auto/manual search 10, 29
Select preset station 9, 24, 29
Store station (automatically/manually) 21, 24
Improve FM reception 21
Assign title 22

Disc

Open/close 7, 30
Eject 3, 7
Lock/unlock disc 30
Playable disc type 4
Display information 31
Repeat/random play 22, 23, 36
Select track/folder ..... 11, 25, 31 – 34
Select title/program/playlist ..... 10, 11, 31 – 33
Start/stop/pause/resume playback ..... 11, 32 – 34
Search/skip ..... 10, 32 – 34
OSD 10, 16, 35, 36
PBC playback 10, 11, 33

USB

Attach/detach 37
Start/pause playback 11, 37
Repeat/random play 22, 23

CD changer

Start playback 25, 41
Repeat/random play 22, 23

Satellite radio

Activate subscription 42
Listen to a channel 43
Store channel 24
Preset channel 24

HD Radio operation

Listen to a channel 44
Change the HD Radio reception mode 21
Improve reception 21

Bluetooth

Connect/disconnect/delete 27, 28, 38
Make a call 26, 39
Answer/end call 28, 39
Read SMS 26, 40
Microphone volume 28
Preset phone number 25

iPod

Connect 45, 46
Start/pause playback 45, 46
Head Mode/iPod Mode 45
Repeat/random play 22, 23
Audiobooks 23
Select track 25, 45, 46

External component

AV-INPUT 47
EXT-INPUT 48

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

JVC

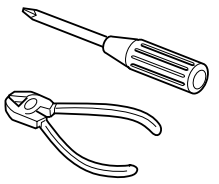
EN, SP, FR

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0109DTSMDTJEIN

KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0602-002A
[J]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN, SP, FR
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

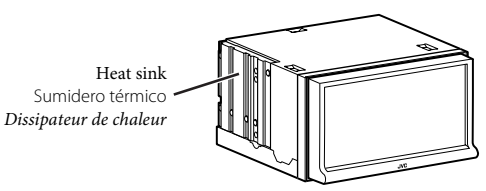
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

- NO instale ningún receptor o tienda ningún cable en una ubicación donde;
  - Donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.
  - Donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.
  - Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.
- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Podría producirse un descuido, y causar un accidente.
- Si necesita operar la unidad mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente a su alrededor pues de lo contrario, se podría producir un accidente de tráfico.
- Si el freno de mano no está en uso, aparecerá "Parking Brake (Freno de Mano)" en la pantalla y no se mostrará ninguna secuencia de imagen.
  - Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

Notas sobre las conexiones eléctricas:

- Reemplace el fusible por otro del régimen especificado. Si el fusible se funde frecuentemente, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de **4 Ω a 8 Ω**).
  Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie <Amplifier Gain> para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 20 de MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los terminales de los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- La unidad estará muy caliente después del uso. Tenga la precaución de no quemarse al efectuar su desmontaje.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

- *N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:*
  - *où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
  - *où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.*
  - *où il peut gêner la visibilité.*
- *NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
- *Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.*
- *Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.*
- *Si le frein à main n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake (Frein à Main)" s'affiche sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.*
  - *Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.*

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre* **4 Ω et 8 Ω***).*
  Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez <Amplifier Gain> pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 20 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- *Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

Parts list for installation and connection

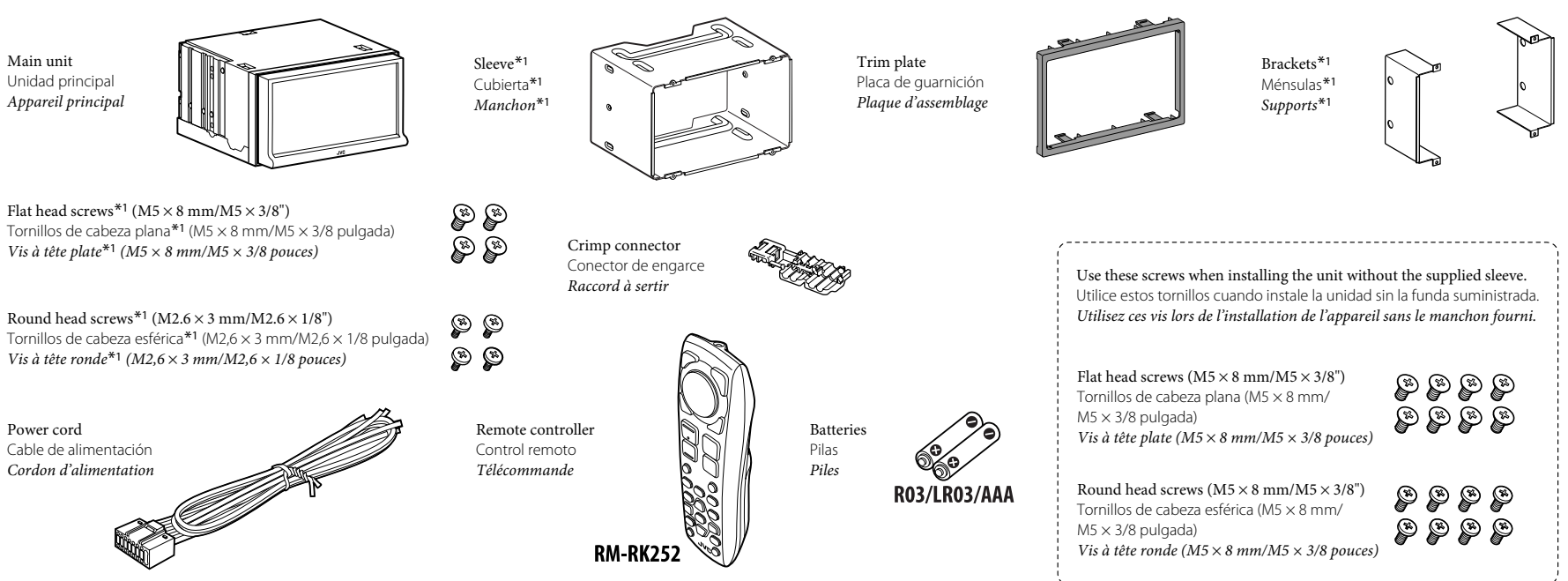
If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

Si hay algún elemento faltante, consulte inmediatamente con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.



*1 Fitted to the main unit when shipped.

*1 Fijado a la unidad principal cuando se expide de fábrica.

*1 *Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.*

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.

3 Attach the brackets to the main unit.
- Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm/M5 × 3/8"). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

4 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 – 6.

5 Install the main unit in the sleeve.

6 Attach the trim plate.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Sin embargo usted deberá efectuar los ajustes correspondientes a su automóvil. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si no está seguro de poder instalar la unidad correctamente, déjela en manos de un técnico cualificado.

Antes de instalar la unidad

- Al instalar la unidad, asegúrese de usar los tornillos suministrados, de acuerdo con las instrucciones. Si emplea otros tipos de tornillos, corre el riesgo de que las piezas se aflojen o se dañen.
- Al apretar los tornillos o los pernos, asegúrese de que ningún cable de conexión quede pillado.
- Al efectuar la instalación, asegúrese de no bloquear el ventilador del panel trasero a fin de mantener una ventilación correcta.

1 Desmonte el sistema de audio instalado originalmente en el coche, junto con los ménsulas de montaje.
Nota: Asegúrese de guardar todos los tornillos y piezas quitados de su vehículo para poderlos usar en el futuro.

2 Instale la cubierta en el cubretablero del automóvil.

3 Fije los ménsulas a la unidad principal.
- Asegúrese de usar los tornillos de cabeza plana suministrados (M5 × 8 mm/M5 × 3/8 pulgada). El uso de tornillos más largos producir daños a la unidad.

4 Realice todas las conexiones eléctricas necesarias.
- Consulte las páginas 3 – 6.

5 Coloque la unidad principal en la cubierta.

6 Fije la placa de guarnición.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.*

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- *Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.*
- *Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.*
- *Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.*

1 *Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.*
Remarque: *Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.*

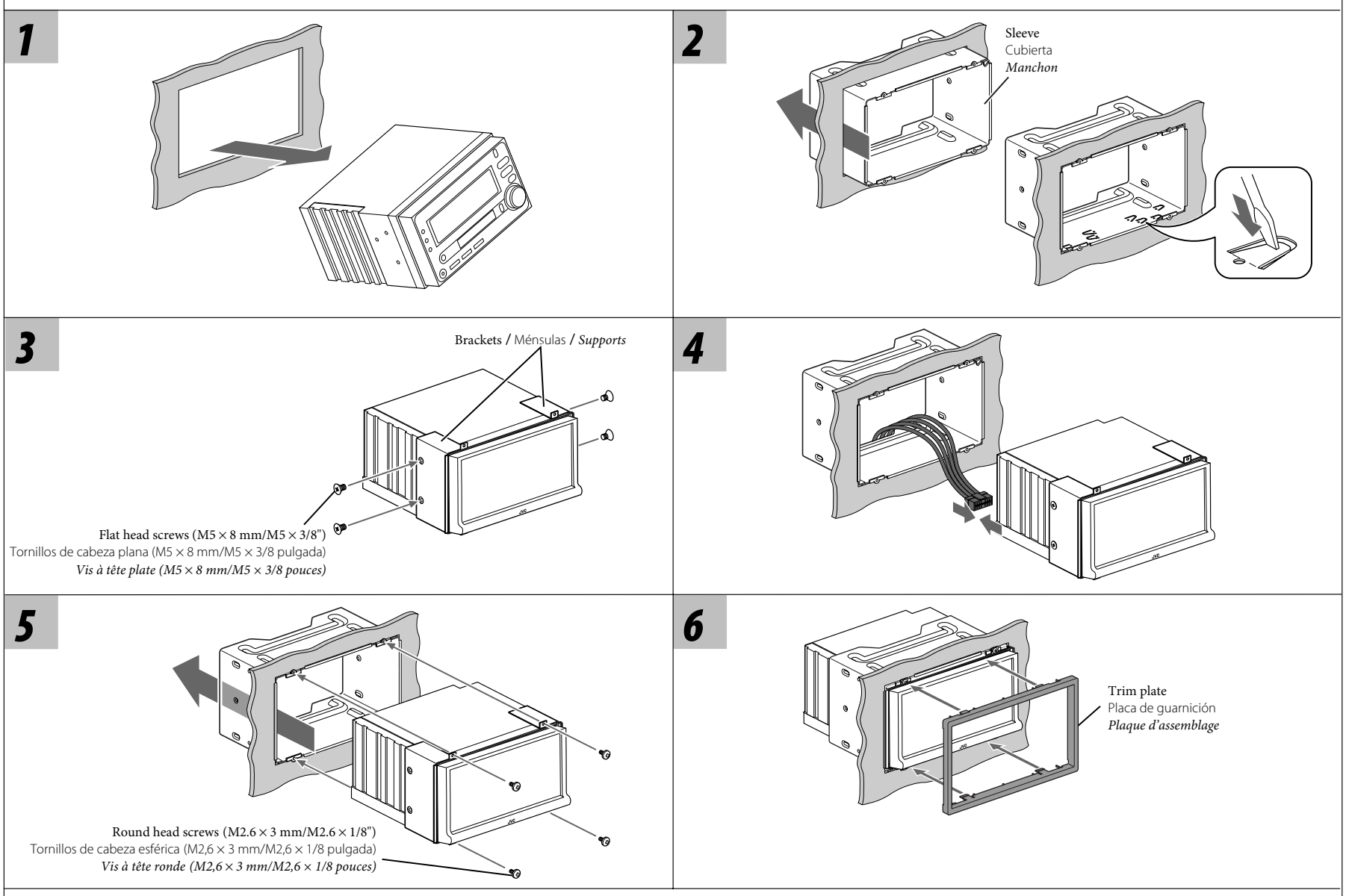
2 *Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.*

3 *Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.*
- *Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis— (M5 × 8 mm/M5 × 3/8 pouces). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.*

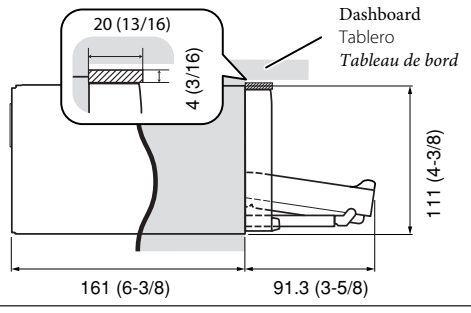
4 *Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.*
- *Référez-vous aux pages 3 – 6.*

5 *Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.*

6 *Fixez la plaque d'assemblage.*

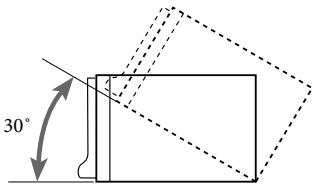


Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
Espacio requerido para la instalación y la expulsión del monitor
Espace nécessaire pour l'installation et l'éjection du moniteur



Unit: mm (inch)
Unidad: mm (pulgada)
Unité: mm (pouces)

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°, teniendo en cuenta que el monitor debe extraerse para su uso.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

Typical connections / Conexiones tipicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

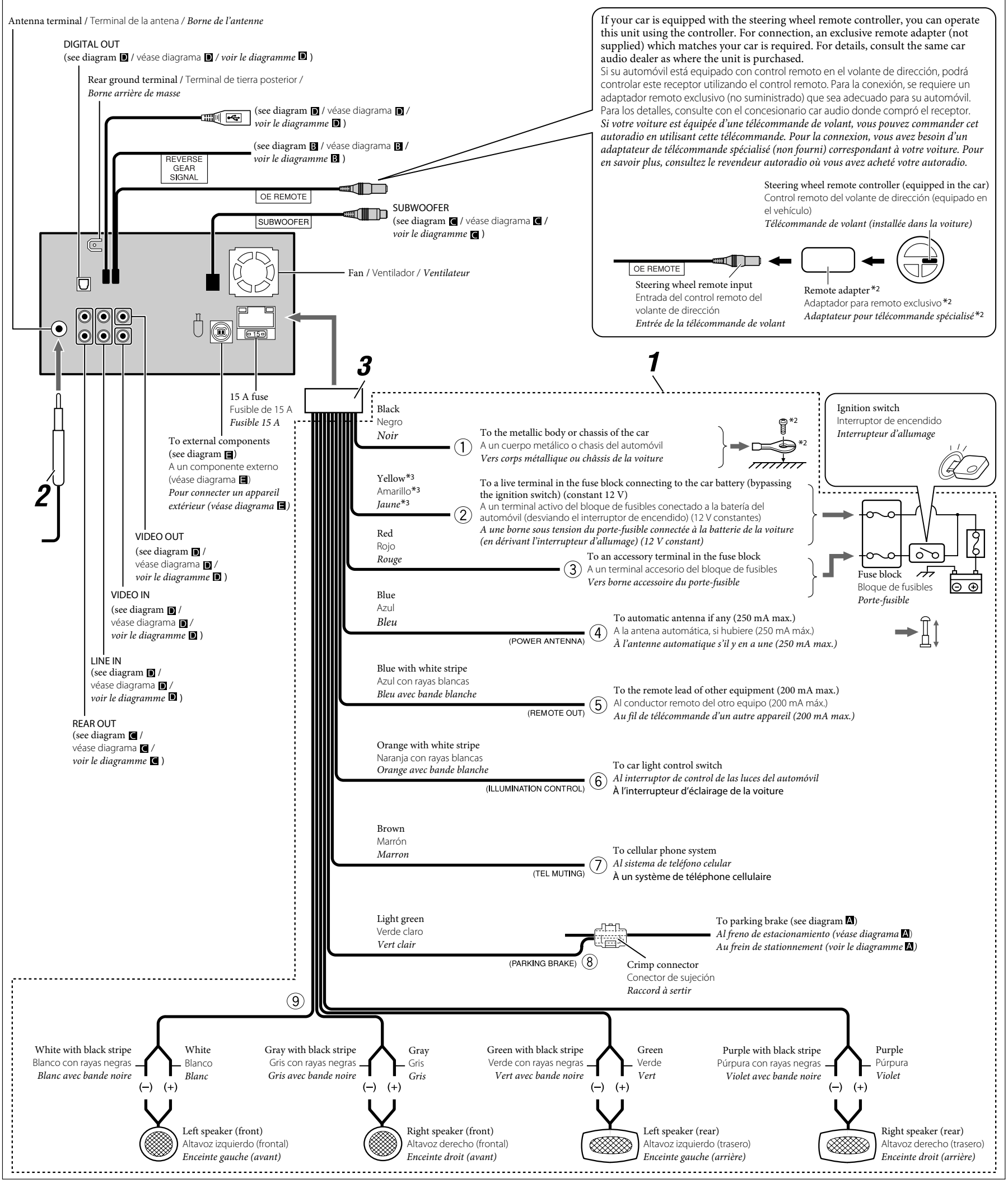
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

1. Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
2. Conecte el cable de antena.
3. Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
2. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
3. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*



*2 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*2 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*3 Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.

*2 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*3 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

ENGLISH

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ESPAÑOL

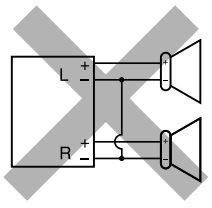
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

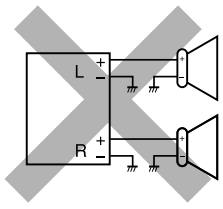
- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en las unidades.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.

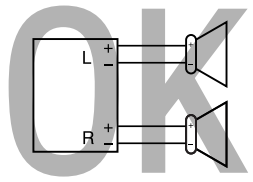
FRANÇAIS

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

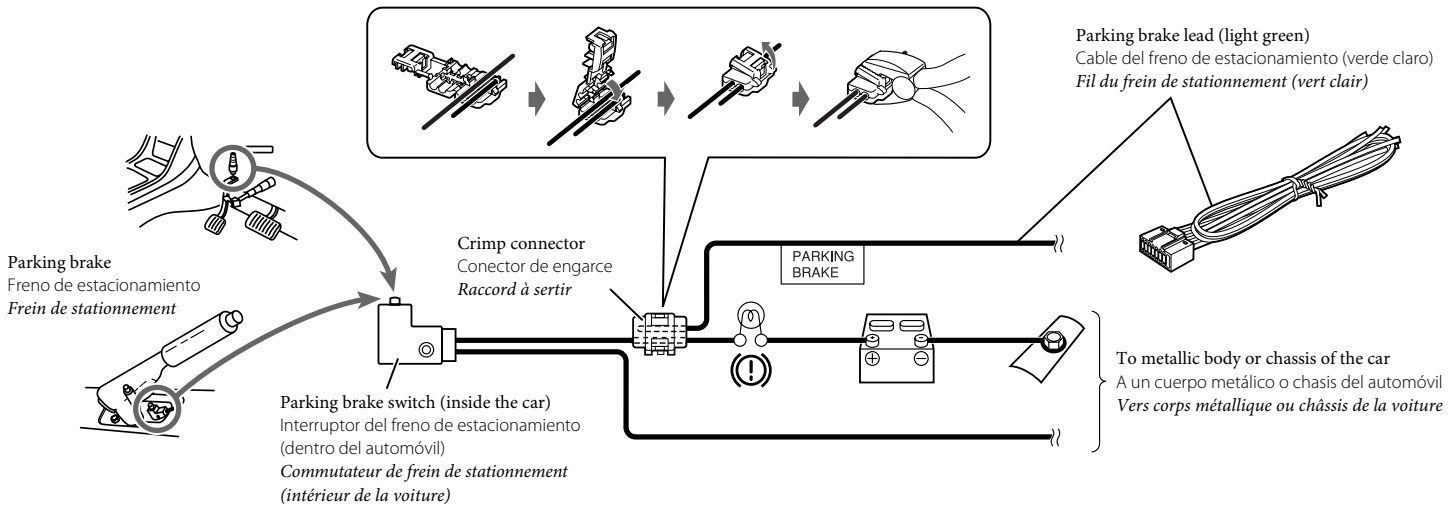
- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*







A Connecting the parking brake lead / Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento / Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement

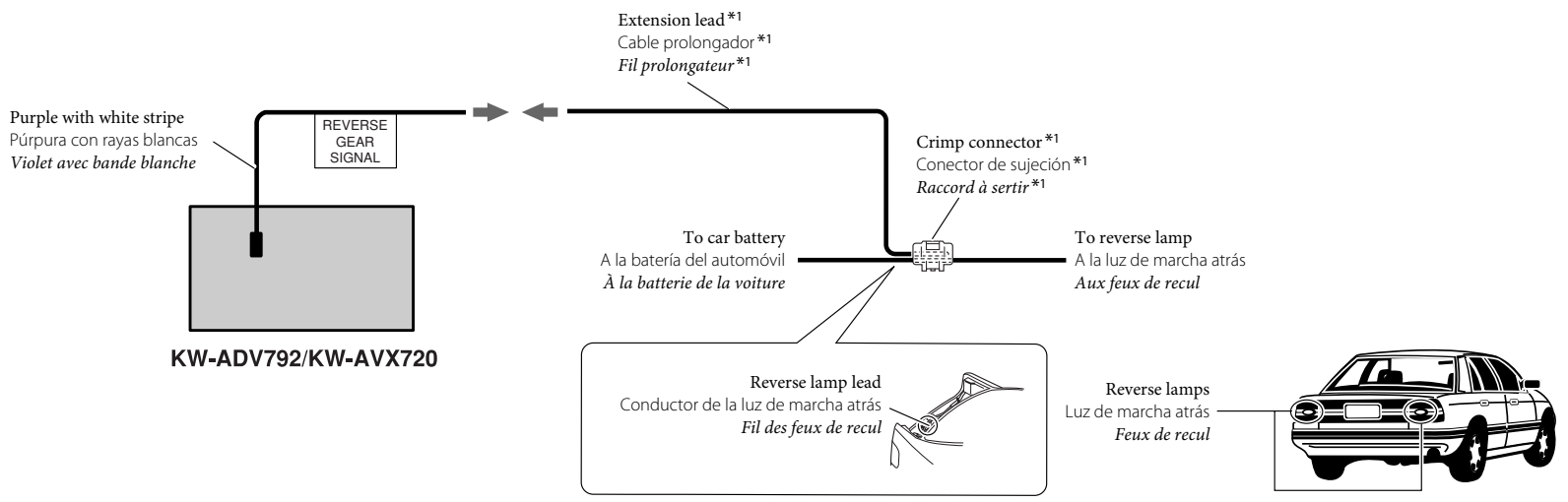


B Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / Conexión del cable de señal del engranaje de marcha atrás (para cámara de retrovisión) / Connexion du fil de signal de marche arrière (pour la caméra du rétroviseur)

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.

Localice el conductor de la luz de marcha atrás en el portaequipajes.

Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.



*1 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 No suministrado con esta unidad

*1 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
  * ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
  * ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
  * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
  * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
  * ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **Esta unidad se calienta.**
  * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Esta unidad no funciona en absoluto.**
  * ¿Reinicializó la unidad?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

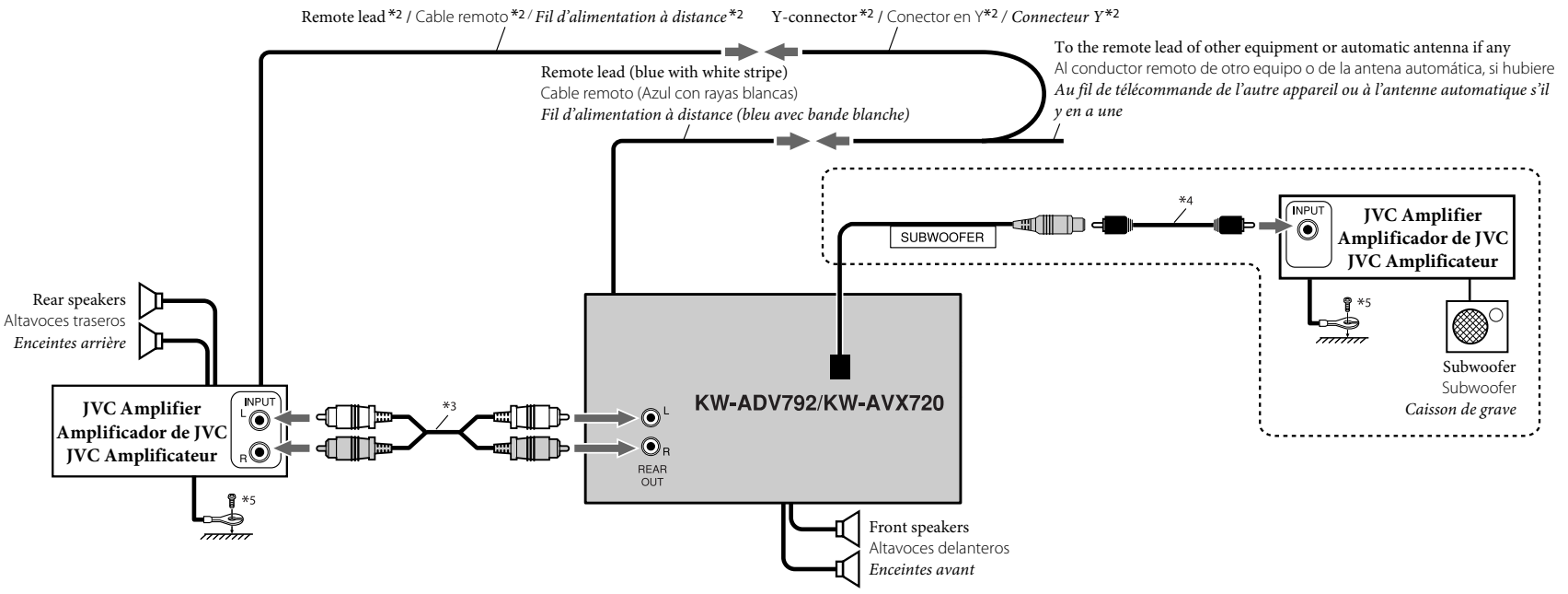
- **Le fusible saute.**
  * *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
  * *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  * *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **Cet appareil devient chaud.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
  * *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

C Connecting the external amplifier and/or subwoofer / Conexión del amplificador y/o subwoofer exterior / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou d'un caisson de grave

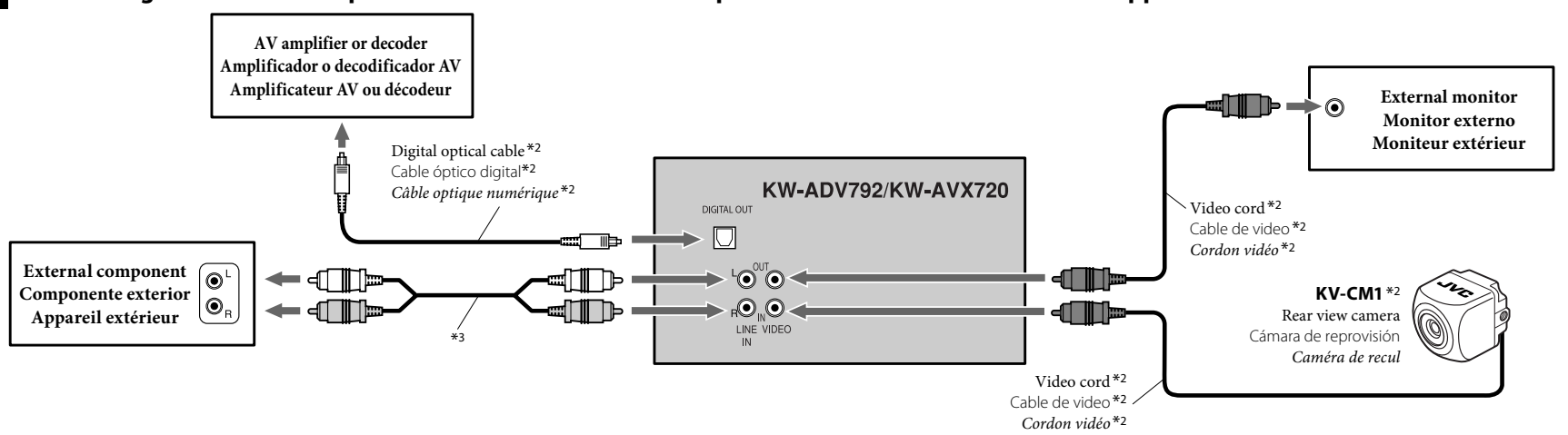
You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Usted podrá conectar un amplificador para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.
- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
  - **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**
  - Podrá desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio solamente al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar que se caliente el interior de la unidad. Consulte la página 20 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).

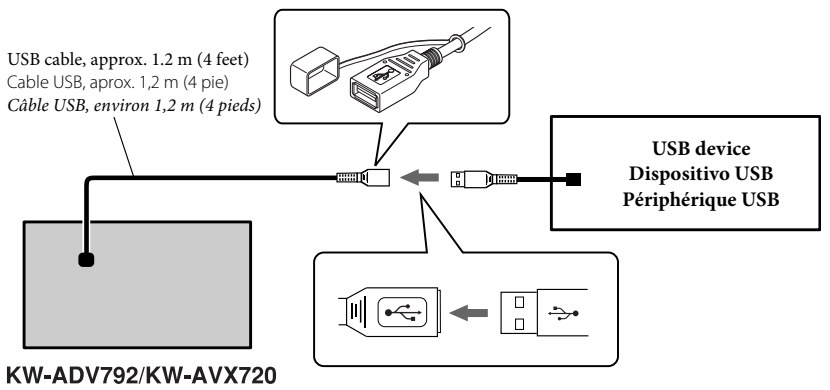
Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.
- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
  - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
  - *Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement sur un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et d'éviter tout échauffement interne de l'autoradio. Voir page 20 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).*



D Connecting the external components / Conexión de otros componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs



USB devices / Dispositivos USB / Périphériques USB



You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
No se puede conectar un ordenador al terminal USB (⭠) de la unidad.
Vous ne pouvez pas connecter un ordinateur à la prise USB (⭠) de l'appareil.

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

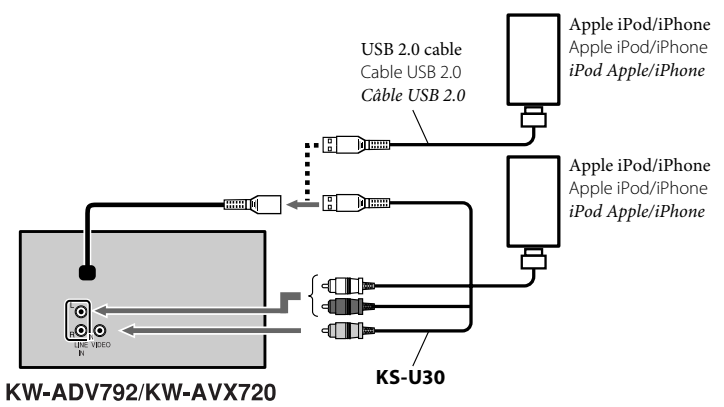
iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone es una marca comercial de Apple Inc.
iPhone est une marque de commerce de Apple Inc.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / Conectar el iPod/iPhone al termina USB / Connexion du iPod/iPhone à la prise USB

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:
- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied for the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied)*6

Puede conectar el iPod/iPhone al terminal USB utilizado los siguientes cables:
- Para escuchar la música: Cable USB 2.0 (suministrado con el iPod/iPhone)
- Para ver vídeo: Cable USB audio y video para iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (no suministrado)*6

Vous pouvez connecter le iPod/iPhone à la prise USB en utilisant les câbles suivants:
- *Pour écouter la musique: Câble USB 2.0 (fourni pour le iPod/iPhone)*
- *Pour regarder une séquence vidéo: Câble USB Audio et Vidéo pour iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (non fourni)*6*



*2 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*4 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*6 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 17 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*2 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*3 Cable de señal (no suministrado con esta unidad).
*4 Cable de audio (no suministrado con esta unidad).
*5 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.
*6 Cuando utilice el cable, asegúrese de haber seleccionado <iPod (Off)> para <AV Input> (consulte la página 17 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).

*2 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*3 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil).*
*4 *Cordon audio (non fourni avec cet appareil).*
*5 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*
*6 *Lors de l'utilisation de ce câble, assurez-vous que <iPod (Off)> est choisi pour <AV Input> (voir page 17 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*

E Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / Conexión de los componentes externos al jack del cambiador de CD / Connexion des appareils extérieurs au changeur de CD

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
HD Radio™ tuner box	KT-HD300

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters or system.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter/System	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	Smart Digital Adapter	XMDJVC100
XMDirect2 Tuner System	XM satellite radio System	CNP2000UC and CNPJVC1
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio System	SC-C1 and KS-SRA100
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio System	PnP, SC-VDOC1 and KS-SRA100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm (3/16") stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.
- XM Radio and SIRIUS satellite radio cannot be used together.

Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.

PRECAUCION:
Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.

Componente JVC	Nombre del modelo
Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Sintonizador HD Radio™	KT-HD300

También puede conectar los siguientes componentes a través de los diversos adaptadores o sistema JVC.
- Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.

Componente	Adaptador/Sistema	Nombre del modelo
Dispositivo Bluetooth	Adaptador Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptador de interfaz para iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	Adaptador digital inteligente	XMDJVC100
Sistema de sintonizador XMDirect2	Sistema de radio XM Satellite	CNP2000UC y CNPJVC1
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS	SC-C1 y KS-SRA100
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS	PnP, SC-VDOC1 y KS-SRA100
Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de salida de línea	Adaptador de entrada por línea	KS-U57
Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pulgada)	Adaptador de entrada AUX	KS-U58

Cuando conecte más de un componente (máximo: tres), se recomienda que conecte los componentes en serie, como se explica a continuación.
- No puede utilizar juntas la radio XM y la radio satelital SIRIUS.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Tuner HD Radio™	*KT-HD300*

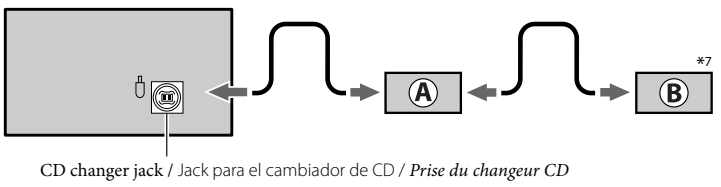
Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC ou systèmes.
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

Appareil	Adaptateur/ Système	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	*KS-PD100*
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	*Adaptateur numérique intelligent*	*XMDJVC100*
XMDirect2 Tuner System	*Système radio satellite XM*	*CNP2000UC et CNPJVC1*
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Système radio satellite SIRIUS*	*SC-C1 et KS-SRA100*
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Système radio satellite SIRIUS*	*PnP, SC-VDOC1 et KS-SRA100*
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	*KS-U57*
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pouces)	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	*KS-U58*

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.
- *La radio XM et SIRIUS ne peuvent pas être utilisées en même temps.*

When connecting two components in series / Cuando conecta dos componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série

KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720

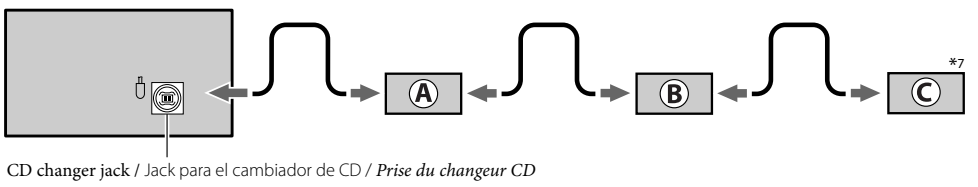


CD changer jack / Jack para el cambiador de CD / *Prise du changeur CD*

Ⓐ **KT-HD300**[*8] / **KS-SRA100**[*8,*9] / **XMDJVC100** / **CNP2000UC**[*10]
Ⓑ[*7] **CD-CH** / **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58**

When connecting three components in series / Cuando conecta tres componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série

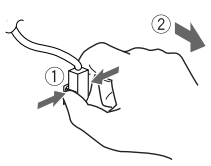
KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720



CD changer jack / Jack para el cambiador de CD / *Prise du changeur CD*

Ⓐ **KT-HD300**[*8] / **KS-SRA100**[*8,*9] / **XMDJVC100** / **CNP2000UC**[*10]
Ⓑ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓒ[*7] **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58**

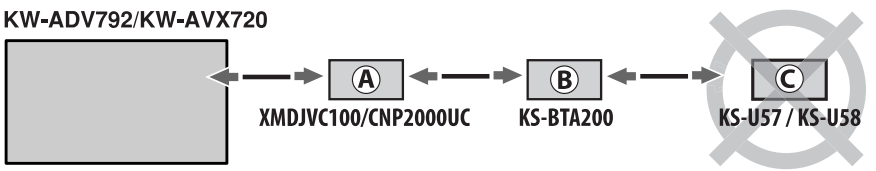
To disconnect the connector / Para desconectar el cable / *Pour déconnecter le connecteur*



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (①) y seguidamente, extráigalo (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).

It is not recommended to connect KS-U57/KS-U58 at Ⓒ in series with XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC and KS-BTA200.
No se recomienda conectar el KS-U57/KSU58 en Ⓒ, en serie con XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC y KS-BTA200.
Il n'est pas recommandé de connecter le KS-U57/KS-U58 en série à Ⓒ in avec le XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC et le KS-BTA200.

KW-ADV792/KW-AVX720



HD Radio™ is a proprietary trademark of iBiquity Digital Corp.

HD Radio™ es una marca comercial de iBiquity Digital Corp.

HD Radio™ est une marque de commerce d'iBiquity Digital Corp.

*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 Power cannot be supplied to the component through the CD changer jack. You need to connect the power cord supplied for the component separately.
*9 This model is a component of SIRIUS satellite radio System.
*10 This model is a component of XM satellite radio System.

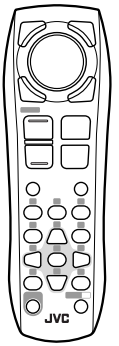
*7 Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 18 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
*8 No puede suministrar energía eléctrica al componente a través del jack del cambiador de CD. Es necesario conectar, aparte, el cable de alimentación suministrado con el componente.
*9 Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS.
*10 Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio XM Satellite.

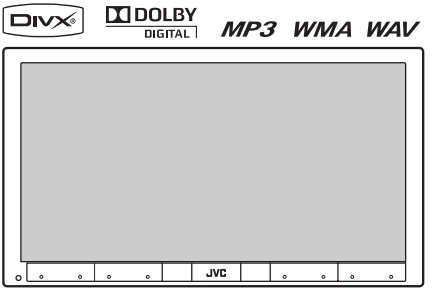
*7 *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 18 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
*8 *L'alimentation ne peut pas être fournie à l'appareil par la prise de changeur de CD. Vous devez connecter séparément le cordon d'alimentation fourni pour l'appareil.*
*9 *Ce modèle est un composant du système radio satellite SIRIUS.*
*10 *Ce modèle est un composant du système radio satellite XM.*

JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625/KW-AVX624





For canceling the display demonstration, see page 10.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

GET0605-001A
[U/UN/UT/A/UI]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

[European Union only]

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

How to read this manual

- < > is used to indicate the variable screens/menus/operations/settings that appear on the touch panel.
- [ ] is used to indicate the buttons on the touch panel.
- (🔍 page number) is used to indicate the reference page number of the related topics/operations/settings.
- **Operation index:** To locate easily the desired operations/functions. (🔍 59)
- **Indication language:** English indications are used for the purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language from the <**AV Menu**>. (🔍 13)

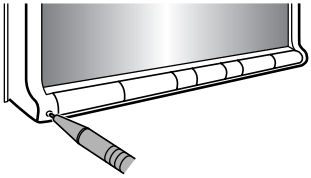
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

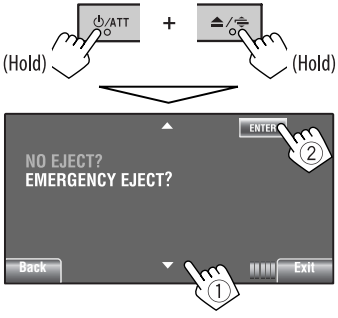
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device). (24, 35)*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *You can forcibly eject the loaded disc even if the disc is locked. To lock/unlock the disc, 27.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

WARNINGS:
(To prevent accidents and damage)

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

CONTENTS

How to read this manual 2
How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3

INTRODUCTIONS

Playable disc type 4
Basic operations 5
- Using the monitor panel/touch panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 7

Preparation 10

AV MENU

AV Menu operations 11

OPERATIONS

Listening to the radio 26
Disc operations 27
- Operation buttons on the screen 29
- Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 30

USB operations (for ***KW-AVX726/ KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***) 34

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 35
- Connecting a new Bluetooth device 35
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 36
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 38

Listening to the CD changer 38
Listening to the iPod/iPhone 39
- When connected with the USB cable 39
- When connected with the interface adapter 40

Using other external components 41
- AV-INPUT 41
- EXT-INPUT 42

REFERENCES

Maintenance 43
More about this unit 44
Troubleshooting 52
Specifications 56
Operation index 59

Playable disc type

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc	Playable
DVD • DTS sound cannot be reproduced.	DVD-Video *1 Region Code: South East Asia, Hong Kong region: 3 Australia: 4 India: 5 Ex.: ALL 3 1 3 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD-Audio/DVD-ROM	✗NO
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW *2, +R/+RW *3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD-Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4/DVD+VR/DVD-RAM	✗NO
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DTS-CD/SVCD (Super Video CD)/CD-ROM/CD-I (CD-I Ready)	✗NO
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4	✗NO

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs). DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.*

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs. "DVD" is selected as its disc type when a +R/+RW disc is loaded. +RW double layer discs are not playable.*

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Basic operations

Using the monitor panel/touch panel

1 Resets the unit (3).

2
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound (if the power is on).
- Turns off the power. (Hold)

3 Changes the display information.*2

4
- Adjusts the volume.
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.*3

5 Remote sensor

6 Touch panel (see the following pages).
- Most of the touch panel operations are explained unless mentioned otherwise.
- The screen will turn off if no operation is done for about 10 seconds (depends on the <**Illumination**> setting). (16)

7 Motion sensor

8 Displays <**AV Menu**> screen.

9
- Selects the source.*4
  TUNER → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) → USB*1/iPod*1 → CD-CH/iPod/EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN → (back to the beginning)
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Displays the <**Dial Menu**> screen.*5 (Hold)

10
- *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724*:
  iPod :
  – Selects "**USB/iPod**" as the source.
  – Switches the setting between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE" (Hold)
- *KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625/KW-AVX624*:
  AV-IN : Selects "**AV-IN**" as the source.

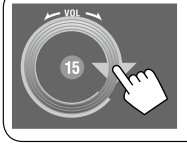
*1 – *5 : 6

Continued on the next page

11 • Displays <**Open/Tilt**> screen.*6
[**Open**] : Opens the monitor panel.
[**Eject**] : Ejects the disc.
[**Close**] : Closes the monitor panel.
[**Tilt +**] : Tilts open the monitor panel.
[**Tilt –**] : Tilts close the monitor panel.
• Ejects the disc and display <**Open/Tilt**> screen. (Hold)
• Closes the monitor panel when the panel is opened.

12 Monitor panel

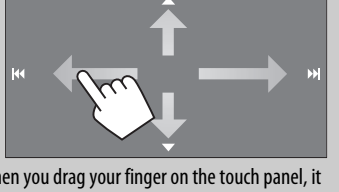
*1 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*
*2 *Available display information varies among the playback sources. (50)*
*3 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of other sources.*
*4 *Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made. (15, 16)*
*5 *Only when Bluetooth phone is connected.*
*6 *Shaded items cannot be used.*



You can also adjust the volume by moving your finger on the touch panel as illustrated.

Caution on volume setting:

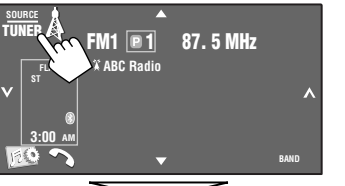
Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

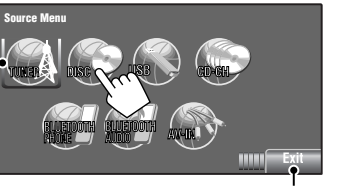


When you drag your finger on the touch panel, it functions in the same way as touching [▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭].

<Source Menu> screen

You can also select the source using the touch panel.





Current source Exit

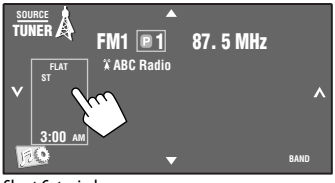
Touch panel and button illumination

Dependable on the <**Illumination**> setting. (16)

• Turned off:
When no operation is done for about 10 seconds.
• Turned on again:
– When you touch the touch panel or move your hand nearby.
– When you use the remote controller.
– When a call/SMS comes in (for Bluetooth cellular phone).
– When the signal from the rear view camera comes in.
• Always turned on:
– When <**AV Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Source Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Open/Tilt**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Illumination**> is set to <**Normal**>.

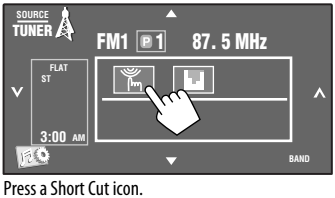
Short Cut icons

You can easily access some frequently used functions by using the Short Cut icons.

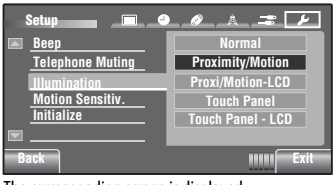


Short Cut window appears.

- To exit from the window, press the button again.



Press a Short Cut icon.



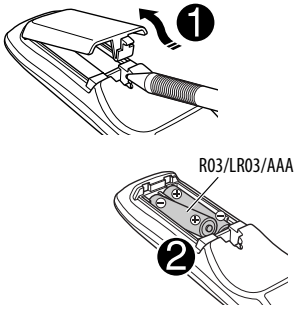
The corresponding screen is displayed.

Available icons vary among the sources.

	Displays <**Illumination**> menu. (🔍 16)
	Changes the sound mode. (🔍 17)
	Turns on or off Track/Chapter Repeat. (🔍 20)
	Displays <**Aspect**> menu. (🔍 13)
	Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (🔍 23)
	Displays <**Redial**> menu. (🔍 23)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the batteries



Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the batteries.

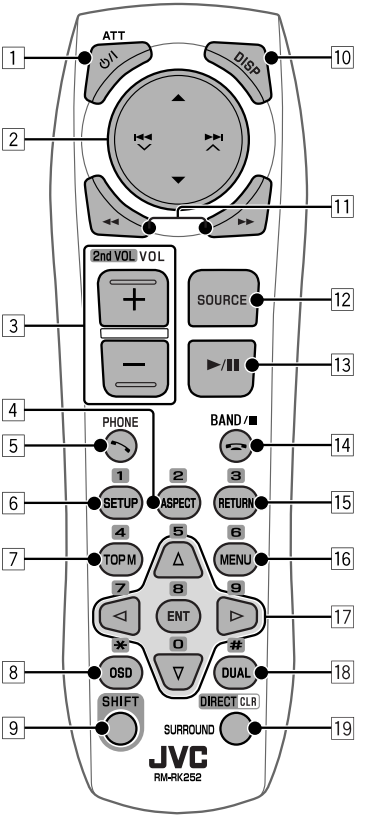
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

The following describes all the available operations for all the sources.

- USB/iPod operations are only applicable for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***.
- To easily locate the available operations between different type of files, 🔍 30, 31.

Continued on the next page



1 ⏻/I ATT **button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 ▲/▼ **buttons**

- **TUNER**: Selects the preset stations.
- **DISC/USB**:
  – DVD-Video: Selects the title.
  – DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  – **USB**/other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders if included.
- **CD-CH**:
  – Selects the folders if included.
- **iPod**:
  – ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲/▼/⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ work as menu selecting buttons.)
    ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
    ▼: Confirms the selection.
  – ▼: Pauses or resumes playback.

⏮ ∨ / ⏭ ∧ **buttons**

- **TUNER**:
  – Searches for stations automatically if pressed briefly.
  – Searches for stations manually if pressed and held.
- **DISC/USB/CD-CH**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.

  In menu selecting mode:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.

3 **VOL** (volume) **+ / – buttons**

- Adjusts the volume level.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**:
  – Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.

2nd VOL (volume) **buttons**

- Not applicable for this unit.

4* **ASPECT button**

- Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

5 **PHONE button**
Applicable only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

6* **SETUP button**
- Not applicable for this unit.

7* **TOP M** (menu) **button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

8 **OSD** (on-screen display) **button**
- Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "*."

9 **SHIFT button**
- Functions with other buttons.

10 **DISP** (display) **button**
- Changes the display information.

11 **◄◄/►► buttons**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Reverse search/forward search.

12 **SOURCE button**
- Selects the source.

13 ► (play) / ❚❚ (pause) **button**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Starts playback/pauses.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Answers incoming calls.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Starts playback.

14 (end call) **button**
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Ends the call.

BAND button
- **TUNER**: Selects the bands.

■ (stop) **button**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Stops playback.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Pauses.

15* **RETURN button**
- VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16* **MENU button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

17* △/▽ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- **CD-CH**: Changes discs in the magazine.

◁/▷ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- DivX/MPEG Video: Skips back or forward by about 5 minutes.

ENT (enter) **button**
- Confirms selection.

18 **DUAL button**
- Not applicable for this unit.
- Does not function as "#."

19 **DIRECT button**
- **DISC/USB**: Enters direct search mode for chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track when pressed with SHIFT button (31).

CLR (clear) **button**
- **DISC/USB**: Erases the misentry when pressed with SHIFT button.

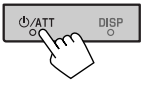
SURROUND button
- Not applicable for this unit.

* *Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.*
- – **DISC/USB***: Enters chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track number after entering search mode by pressing SHIFT and DIRECT.* (31)
- – **TUNER***: (Number 1 to 6) : Enters preset station number.*

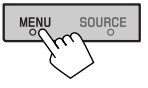
Preparation

Canceling the display demonstration and setting the clock

1 Turn on the power.

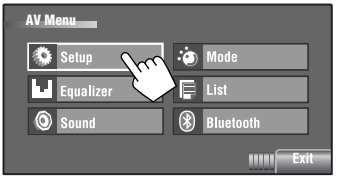


2 Display <AV Menu> screen.



or

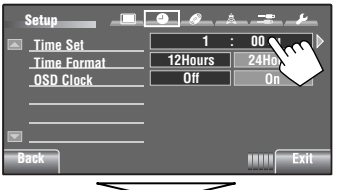
3 Display <Setup> screen.

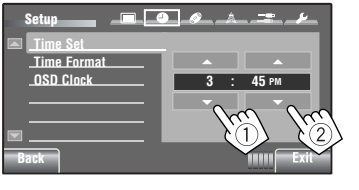


4 Cancel the demonstration.

Select [**Off**].

5 Set the clock.





6 Finish the procedure.

AV Menu operations

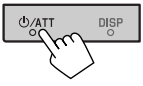
You can use the <**AV Menu**> for most of the operations and settings. The available menu items shown on the touch panel, depends on the selected source.

- Non-available items will be shaded.

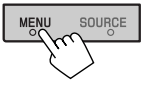
The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures.

- You can perform the operations/change the settings by following these steps unless mentioned otherwise.

❶ Turn on the power.



❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.



or

Setup : 12 – 16
Equalizer : 17
Sound : 18
Mode : 19 – 21
List : 21 – 22
Bluetooth : 23 – 25

❸ Press the desired icon/item to perform the desired operations/settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

Indicates the next hierarchy level/setting item exists

Returns to the previous screen.

Indicates the remaining time before the current screen exit automatically.

Moves to the succeeding menu page

- Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting screen, but just selecting an option will change the setting.
- To exit from the setting, press [**Exit**].

Continued on the next page

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Demonstration**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen. (10)
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. ♦ **Bright, Future, Horizon, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. ♦ **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Once** : Scrolls the displayed information once. ♦ **Auto** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • Touching the information bar scrolls the text regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates dimmer. ♦ **Auto** : Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. *1 ♦ **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting (see below).
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On ( )/Off ( ) times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. ♦ **01** (bright), **02** (middle), **03** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust the brightness of the screen. ♦ **–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust *2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (common) and the other for "**AV-IN**." Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. (**–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**) ♦ **Bright** : Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. ♦ **Contrast** : Adjust the contrast. ♦ **Color** : Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. ♦ **Tint** : Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural, only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>. (13)

*1 *The ILLUMINATION CONTROL lead connection is required. (See the Installation/Connection Manual.)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (the media must contain pictures or videos) or "**AV-IN**."*

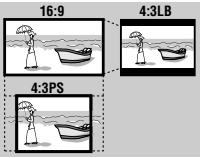
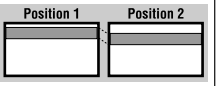
Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Aspect** *3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.

	Aspect ratio of the incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Panorama: For viewing 4:3 pictures naturally on the wide screen		
Auto:	• For "**DISC**": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

Display	**Language** *4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. ♦ **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português,** 简体中文 **,** 繁體中文 **,** 한국어**,** ภาษาไทย **, Türkçe,** عربي **,** فارسی • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. (48)
Display	**NTSC/PAL** *4	Select the color system of the external monitor connected. ♦ **NTSC, PAL**
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **1:00AM** (10)
Clock	**Time Format**	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. (10) ♦ **12 Hours, 24 Hours**
Clock	**OSD Clock**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : The clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
Disc	**Menu Language** *5	Select the menu language; Initial **English** (50)
Disc	**Audio Language** *5	Select the audio language; Initial **English** (50)
Disc	**Subtitle** *5	Select the subtitle language or erase the subtitle <**Off**>.; Initial **English** (50)

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*
*4 *Turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*
*5 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**" (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Disc	**Monitor Type** *6  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. ◆ **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. ◆ **4:3LB** (Letterbox)/ **4:3PS** (Pan Scan) : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3.
	OSD Position *6  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. (33) ◆ **1** : Higher position. ◆ **2** : Lower position.
	File Type *6	Select the playback file type when a disc/USB contains different types of files. You can store this setting separately for each source—"**DISC/USB**." *7 ◆ **Audio** : Plays back audio files. ◆ **Still Picture** : Plays back JPEG files. ◆ **Video** : Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. ◆ **Audio&Video** : Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration) *6	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	iPod Artwork *7, *8	While playing back a track (in "HEAD MODE"), Artwork recorded for the track is displayed on the monitor. ◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates Artwork display. To display the artwork, press DISP repeatedly. • It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
	D. (Digital) **Audio Output** *6	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (49) ◆ **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. ◆ **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. ◆ **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio.

*6 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*7 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

*8 *Skip the track so that your setting takes effect.*

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Disc	**Down Mix** *9	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks. ♦ **Dolby Surr.** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. ♦ **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) **Range Compres.** (Compression) *9	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. ♦ **Auto** : Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. ♦ **On** : Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	♦ **Auto** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ♦ **Wide** : Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Input	**AV Input** *10	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. (41) ♦ **Off** : Select when no component is connected ("**AV-IN**" is skipped while selecting the source). ♦ **iPod (Off)** *11 : Select when connecting the iPod/iPhone using the USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone. (39) ♦ **Audio&Video** : Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. ♦ **Audio** : Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. ♦ **Camera** *12 : Select when connecting a rear view camera to display the picture (as it is taken). ♦ **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System. (42)

*9 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*10 *Not selectable when "**AV-IN**" is selected as the source.*

*11 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

*12 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <**Full**> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the monitor panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Input	**External Input** *13, *14	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. ♦ **Changer/iPod** *15 : CD changer, (🔍 38), iPod, (🔍 40). ♦ **External** : Any other than the above, (🔍 42).
Others	**Beep**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting *16	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Muting1, Muting2** : Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Illumination	You can turn off the screen and the light of the buttons on the monitor panel while turning on the unit. (🔍 6)

	Buttons on the monitor panel	Screen
Normal:	Always lights.	Always lights.
Proximity/Motion:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Always lights.
Proxi/Motion-LCD:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.
Touch Panel:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Always lights.
Touch Panel-LCD:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.

Others	**Motion Sensitiv.**	Change the sensitivity of the sensor for <**Illumination**> above. ♦ **Low, Mid, High**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)

*13 *Not required for Bluetooth. They are automatically detected.*

*14 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*

*15 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*

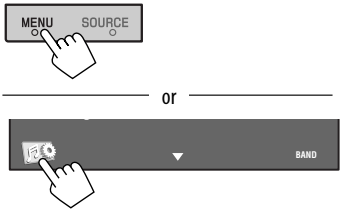
*16 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Equalizer

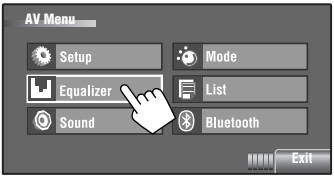
Selects a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- **Flat** (Initial), **Hard Rock, R&B, Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User1, User2, User3**

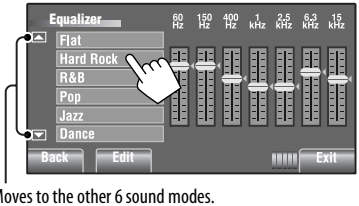
1 Display <AV Menu> screen.



2 Display <Equalizer> screen.



3 Select a sound mode.



Moves to the other 6 sound modes.

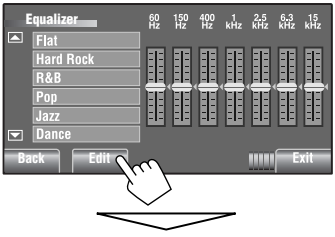
Ex.: When <**Hard Rock**> is selected

Storing your own adjustments

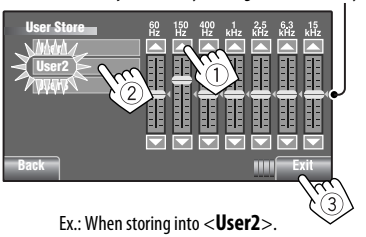
You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 above to enter the <Equalizer> screen.

2 Adjust the settings, then store.



Makes adjustments by moving each bar directly.

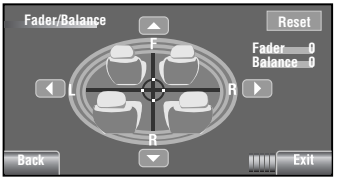


Ex.: When <**User2**>.

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	−02	−01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Fader/Balance	**Fader** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. • When using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0." ♦ **F6** to **R6;** Initial **0** **Balance** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. ♦ **L6** to **R6;** Initial **0** Press [▲/▼/◄/►] to adjust. 
Volume Adjust *1	Adjust and store the auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • <**Fix**> appears if "**TUNER/Bluetooth PHONE**" is selected as the source. ♦ **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00**
Subwoofer Level *2	Adjust the subwoofer output level. ♦ **–06 to +08;** Initial **00**
High Pass Filter *2	♦ **Through** : Select when the subwoofer is not connected. ♦ **On** : Select when the subwoofer is connected.
Crossover *2	Select the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. ♦ **80Hz, 120Hz, 150Hz**
Amplifier Gain *3	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. ♦ **Off** : Deactivates the built-in amplifier. ♦ **Low** : VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) ♦ **High** : VOL 00 to 50

*1 *For "**DISC/USB**": You can make the adjustments separately depending on the audio format—Dolby digital/MPEG Audio and the others.*

*2 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

*3 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOL 30" if you change to <**Low**> with the volume level set higher than "VOL 30."*

Mode

Initial: **Underlined**

Selectable items when the source is:

- **TUNER** : **Mono, SSM, Title Entry**
- **DISC, USB, CD-CH, iPod** : **Repeat, Random**
- **iPod** *1, *2 : **Repeat, Random, Audiobooks**
- **AV-IN, EXT-IN** : **Title Entry**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Mono	When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive, activate monaural mode for better reception. The MONO indicator lights up. ◆ **ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The MONO indicator lights up. ◆ **OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)	You can automatically preset 6 stations for each FM band. • Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.
Title Entry	You can assign titles (up to 16 characters) to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM), **AV-IN**, and **EXT-IN**. (For available characters, 48.) Press [**Enter**] to show the <**Title Entry**> screen. **[Store]** : Confirm the entry. **[◄/►]** : Move the cursor. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Cap]** : Change the letter case (upper/lower). **[A → 0 → Ä]** : Change the character set. **[Space]** : Enter a space.

*1 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (39)

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item

Repeat[*3]

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source	DISC					USB[*4]		CD-CH		iPod	iPod[*4]
Disc/file type / Repeat	DVD-Video	DVD-VR	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	JPEG	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	JPEG	CD	MP3	–	–
Chapter	●	●									
Title	●										
Program		●									
Disc								●	●		
Folder			●	●		●	●		●		
Track			●		●	●		●	●		
One										●	●
All										●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Chapter** : Repeats current chapter.
- **Title** : Repeats current title.
- **Program** : Repeats current program (for DVD-VR, not available during Playlist playback).
- **Disc** : Repeats all tracks of the current disc.
- **Folder** : Repeats all tracks of the current folder.
- **Track** : Repeats current track. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **One** : Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
- **All** : Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

Random[*3]

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source	DISC		USB[*4]	CD-CH		iPod	iPod[*4, *5]
Disc/file type / Random	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD	MP3	–	–
Folder	●		●		●		
Disc/USB (All)	●	●	●	●	●		
All				●	●		
Song						●	●
Album						●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Folder** : Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folders.
- **Disc/USB (All)** : Randomly plays all tracks. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **All** : Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs.
- **Song** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" [*6] of the iPod.
- **Albums** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

[*3] *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (39)

[*4] *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

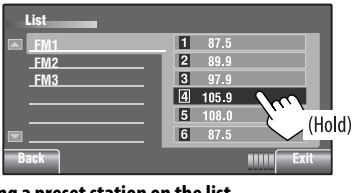
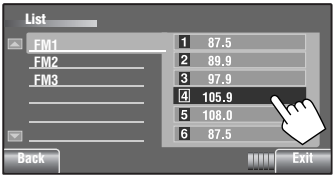
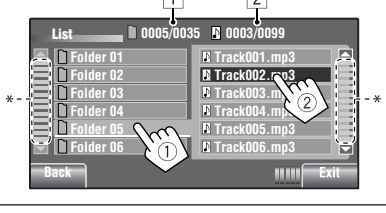
[*5] *Not applicable for video file.*

[*6] *You can activate* <**Shuffle Songs**> *in* <**Search Mode**> *menu.* (22)

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Audiobooks*7, *8	You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" audio file in your iPod. ♦ **Normal** : Plays at normal speed. ♦ **Faster** : Plays faster. ♦ **Slower** : Plays slower.

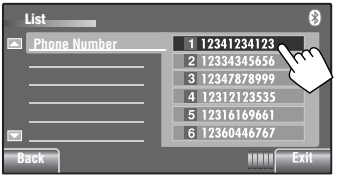
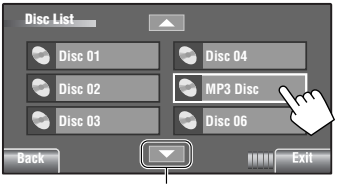
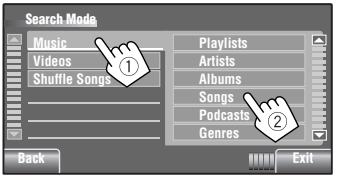
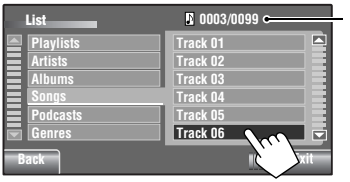
*7 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*
*8 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (39)

List

Source	Operation/setting
TUNER	• **Storing a preset station manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [⌃ / ⌄] to tune in to the station you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  The station selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset station on the list** 
DISC/USB *1	**Selecting a track on the list** If the device contains folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.  1 Current folder list number/ total folder list number 2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*

*1 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

Continued on the next page

Source	Operation/setting
Bluetooth PHONE	**Selecting a preset phone number on the list to make a call** 
CD-CH	**Selecting a disc on the list**  To go to the other list If an MP3 disc is selected, Folder/ Track List appear. Select a track to start playback.
iPod *2, *3	**Selecting a track/video from <Search Mode>**   Current track (video) number/total track (video) number ♦ **Music :** Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, Podcasts, Genres, Composers, Audiobooks ♦ **Videos :** Video Playlists, Movies, Music Videos, TV shows, Video Podcasts ♦ **Shuffle Songs :** Playback starts if this is selected.

*2 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724**.*

*3 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (39)

Bluetooth

Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source for operations.

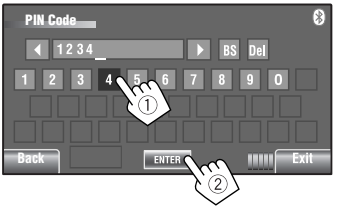
- Firstly, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to register and establish the connection with a device.

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Dial Menu *1	Select the method to make a call. ♦ **Redial** : Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. ♦ **Received Calls** : Shows the list of the received calls. ♦ **Phonebook** : Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. ♦ **Missed Calls** : Shows the list of the missed calls. ♦ **Phone Number** : Shows the phone number entry screen. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Preset]** : Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. **[Dial]** : Calls the entered number. ♦ **Voice Dialing** : Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system: → Speak the name you want to call.
Message *2	**If <Message Info> is set to <Manual>... (25)** Access the message list to read messages. ♦ **Unread** : Messages you have not read. ♦ **Read** : Messages you have read. ♦ **Unsent** : Messages you have not sent. ♦ **Sent** : Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.

*1 *Only for the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*2 *Selectable only when the source is "**Bluetooth PHONE**" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Open	**Preparation:** • Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function. • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Open**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. 2 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)*3. • You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).  You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only. [**BS**] : Erases the character before the cursor. [**Del**] : Erases the character on the cursor. [**Enter**] : Confirms the entry. 3 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen. Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit. • The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> or activate <**Auto Connect**> to connect the same device the next time.
Search	**Preparation:** • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Search**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.) 2 Select a device you want to connect. 3 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit. • Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code. 4 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

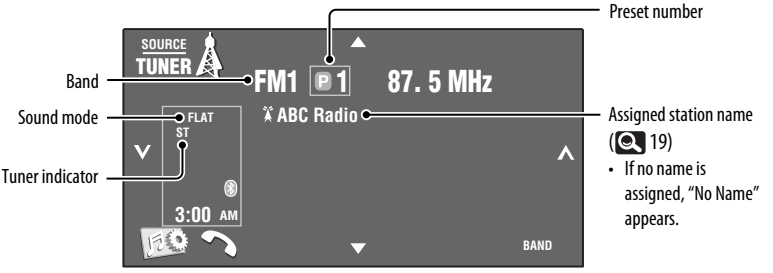
*3 *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item	
Special Device	Only for "NEW DEVICE." Select a device you want to connect from the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish the Bluetooth connection. Then, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to connect. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> the next time.	
Connect	Only for the registered devices. Select a device from the list of registered devices, establish the connection with it.	
Disconnect	Only for the connected devices. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.	
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Press <**Yes**> to confirm delete the registered devices.	
Settings Initial: **Underlined**	**Auto Connect***4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... ♦ **Off** : No Bluetooth device. ♦ **Last** : The last connected Bluetooth device. ♦ **Order** : The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer*5	♦ **Off** : The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. ♦ **On** : The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. ♦ **Reject** : The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info*5	♦ **Auto** : The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, 37. ♦ **Manual** : The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting*5	Adjust the volume of the microphone connected to the Bluetooth adapter. ♦ **01/02/03**
	Version	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." Not selectable when "NEW DEVICE" is selected.*

Listening to the radio



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].**

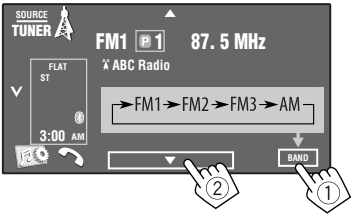
❷ **Press [BAND].** FM1 ➔ FM2 ➔ FM3 ➔ AM

❸ **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

Selecting a preset station

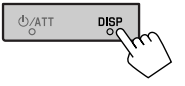
- Directly from the touch panel



You can also select a preset station using the remote controller (8, 9) and from the Preset List (21).

You can display the Preset List by pressing [P 1] or holding [▲/▼].

Changing the display information



(50)

- To improve the FM reception, 19.
- To automatically preset stations into memory, 19.
- To manually preset stations into memory, 21.
- To assignning titles to stations, 19.

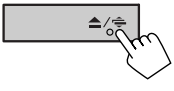
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, then playback starts (for some discs, the top menu of the disc appears).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

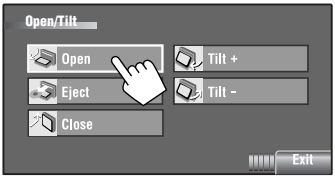
❶ Open the monitor panel.



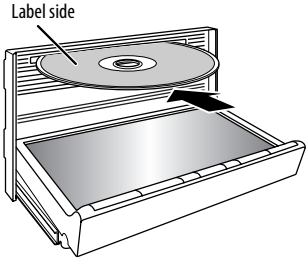
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷



❸ Insert a disc.

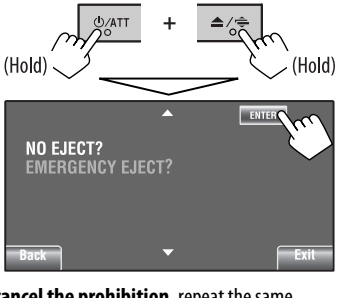


Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**Close**].

Caution:
Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.



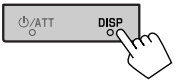
To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.
- Discs can be forcibly ejected. (🔍 3)

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (🔍 49)

- To select the playback mode, 🔍 20.
- To select tracks on the list, 🔍 21.

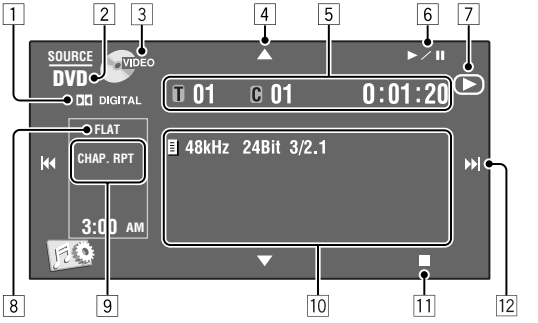
Continued on the next page

Changing the display information



Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (50)

Ex.: While playing a DVD Video



1 Audio format—Dolby Digital, MP3, WMA, WAV
2 Disc type—DVD, DVD-VR, VCD, CD
3 Video format—DivX, MPEG, VR-PRG (program), VR-PLAY (playlist), PBC
4 [▲/▼]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects title/program/playlist.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV:
  – Selects folder
  – Displays Folder/Track List (Hold)

5
- DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
- DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
- DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
- JPEG: Folder no./Track no.
- VCD/CD: Track no./Playing time

6 [►/❚❚]
Starts playback/pauses
7 Indicates the button pressed (►/❚❚/■)
8 Sound mode (17)
9 Playback mode (20)
10 Disc/track information
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG: Folder name/file name
- CD Text: Title/artist name/album name
  – "No Name" appears for conventional CDs or if not recorded
- MP3/WMA/WAV: Current folder name/current file name/tag data (current track title/artist name/album title) if it is recorded

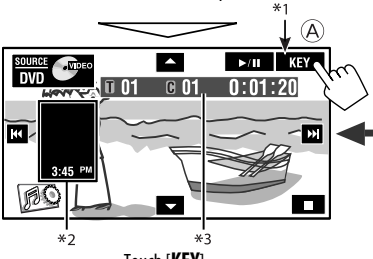
11 Stops playback
12 [|◄◄/►►|]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects chapter.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects track.
- DVD Video/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Operation buttons on the screen

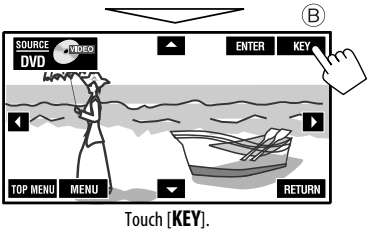
You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).

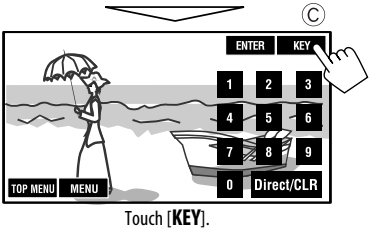
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To end the operations, touch the screen again.

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Displays <**Source Menu**> screen
[▲ ▼]	🔍 *28*
[► / ❚❚]	Starts playback/pause
[|◄◄ ►►|]	• Selects tracks • Reverse/forward search (Hold)
[ ]	Displays <**AV Menu**> screen
[■]	Stops playback

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD menu operation playback

[▲ ▼ ◄ ►]	Selects the menu items
[**ENTER**]	Confirms the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Returns to the previous menu or displays the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENTER**]	Enters numbers
[**Direct/CLR**]	• Switches between chapter/track entry and title/folder entry • Erases the last entry when you enter a wrong number

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENTER**]

*1 *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen*

*2 *Displays Short Cut icons. (🔍 7)*

*3 *Playback time. (🔍 28)*

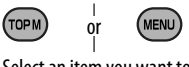
Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Button	DVD Video / DVD-VR	DivX/ MPEG/JPEG
■	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	• DivX/MPEG: Start play/Pause (if pressed during play) • JPEG: • Start play (Slide show: Each file is shown for a few seconds.) • Pause (if pressed during play).
◄◄ ►►	• Reverse/forward chapter search*1 (No sound can be heard.) • Slow motion*2 during pause (No sound can be heard.) – *DVD-VR: Reverse slow motion does not work.*	• DivX/MPEG: Reverse/forward track search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭	• Select chapter (during play or pause) • Reverse/fast-forward chapter search*3 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• DivX/MPEG: • Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*5 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold) • JPEG: Select file
▲ ▼	• DVD-Video: Select title (during play or pause) • DVD-VR: • Select program • Select playlist (during play or pause)	Select folder
◁ ▷	—	• DivX/MPEG: Skip back or forward the scenes by about 5 minutes
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	Select aspect ratio

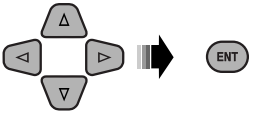
*1 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*2 *Slow motion speed:* ►1/32 ⇨ ►1/16 ⇨ ►1/8 ⇨ ►1/4 ⇨ ►1/2
*3 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10
*4 *Search speed:* ►► 1 ⇨ ►► 2 ⇨ ►► 3
*5 *Search speed:* ►► 1 ⇨ ►► 2

Using menu driven features... (DVD-Video)

1 Enter the menu screen.



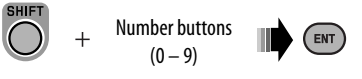
2 Select an item you want to start play.



Canceling the PBC playback... (VCD)

During stop...

1

2 

• To resume PBC, press TOP M/MENU.

Button	VCD	MP3/WMA/WAV	CD
■	Stop play	Stop play	Stop play
▶/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)
◀◀ ▶▶	Reverse/forward track search*6 • Forward slow motion*7 during pause. (No sound can be heard.) – *Reverse slow motion does not work.*	Reverse/forward track search*6	Reverse/forward track search*6
⏮ ⏭	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)
▲ ▼	—	Select folder	—
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	—	—

*6 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*7 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*8 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10

Searching for an item directly

1 While holding SHIFT, press DIRECT repeatedly to select the desired search mode.

DVD-Video: CHAP ➡ -- → TITLE ➡ -- → Canceled

DVD-VR: CHAP ➡ --- → PG/PL ➡ -- → Canceled

DivX/MPEG: TRACK ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

JPEG: FILE ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

MP3/WMA/WAV: Track Search --- → Folder Search --- → Canceled

VCD/CD: Track Search --- → Canceled

2 While holding SHIFT, press the number buttons (0 – 9) to enter the desired number.

3 Press ENT (enter) to confirm.

- For DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV, track is searched within the same folder.
- For DVD-VR, program/playlist search is possible during Original program playback (PG)/Playlist playback (PL).
- To erase a misentry, press CLR (clear) while holding SHIFT.
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

Continued on the next page

Using the list screens... (DVD-VR)

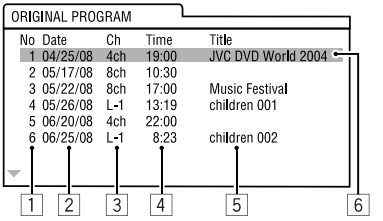
1 Display the Original Program screen.

Display the Playlist screen.

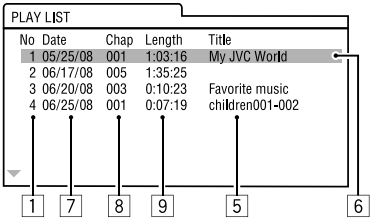
2 Select an item you want to start play.

Original Program/Playlist screen

- **Original Program**



- **Playlist**



1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

(DVD/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD)

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

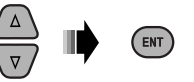
1 Show the on-screen bar (33).

(twice)

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...



- To cancel pop-up menu, press RETURN.
- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

Entering time/numbers

Press △/▽ to change the number, then press ◁/▷ to move to the next entry.

- Each time you press △/▽, the number increases/decreases by one value.
- After entering the numbers, press ENT (enter).
- It is not required to enter the zero and tailing zeros (the last two digits in the example below).

Ex.: Time search

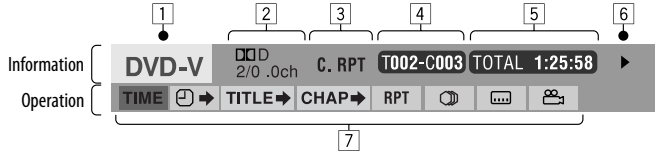
DVD: _:_ _:_ _ (Ex.: 1:02:00)

Press △ once, then ▷ twice to go to the third entry, △ twice, then press ENT (enter).

Removing the on-screen bar

On-screen bar

Ex.: DVD-Video



1 Disc type

2
- DVD-Video: Audio signal format type and channel
- VCD:PBC

3 Playback mode*1

DVD-Video:	**T. RPT**:	Title repeat
	C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
DVD-VR:	**C. RPT**:	Chapter repeat
	PG. RPT:	Program repeat
DivX/MPEG Video:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	F. RPT:	Folder repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random
	F. RND:	Folder random
JPEG:	**F. RPT**:	Folder repeat
VCD*2:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T002-C003	Current title/chapter
PG001 C002	Current program/chapter
PL001 C002	Current playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD-Video, elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist.)
T. REM	DVD-Video/DVD-VR: Remaining title/program/playlist time VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track*3
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track*3

6 Playback status

▶	Play
▶▶ / ◀◀	Forward/reverse search
I▶ / ◀I	Forward/reverse slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
◷➡	Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist or of the disc.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play*1
RND	Random play*1
	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
	Change or turn off the subtitle language
	Change the view angle

*1 *For repeat play/random play, 20.*

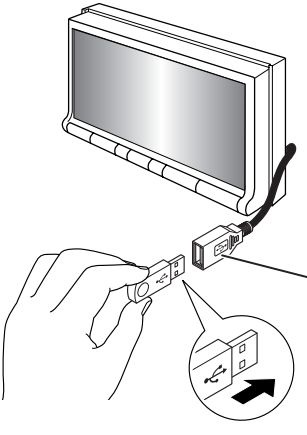
*2 *While PBC is not in use.*

*3 *Not applicable for DVD-VR.*

USB operations (for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724)

You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect the iPod to the USB terminal of the unit. For details of the operations, 39, 40.

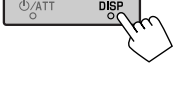


This unit can play JPEG/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV files stored in USB mass storage class device.

- You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on discs.
- All tracks in the USB device will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously when you reconnect the same USB device again.

- To select the playback mode, 20.
- To select tracks on the list, 22.

Changing the display information



(50)

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while “Now Reading” is shown on the screen.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, 46.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

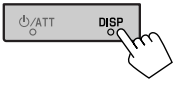
Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

- To register a device using <**Open**> or <**Search**>, 24.
- To connect a special device, 25.
- To connect/disconnect/delete a device, 25.

Changing the display information



(50)

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only).

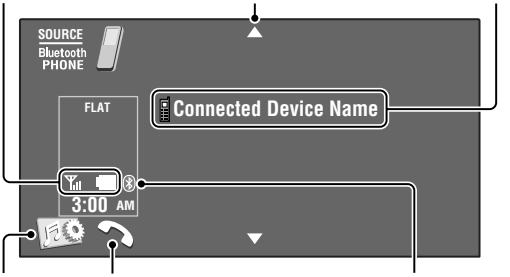
Continued on the next page

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

Status of the device
- Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device).

[▲/▼]: Selects the other registered device.

Connected device name
- When a cellular phone with audio function is registered/connected, appears.



Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (Hold)

Display <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Appears on any source information screen when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

Bluetooth icon
- Lights up when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].

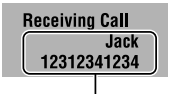
2 Press [ ].

3 Press [Bluetooth].

4 Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu). (23 – 25)

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "**Bluetooth PHONE**" automatically.



Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...

The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (25)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...

To answer the incoming call
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

To end the call
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

- You can adjust the microphone volume, 25.

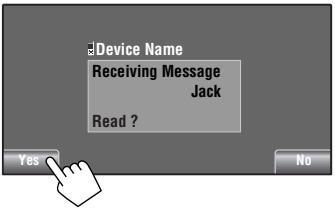
To make a call, use <**Dial Menu**>. (23)

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (25)



To read the message, press [**Yes**].
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press [**No**].

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (23)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages, 23.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

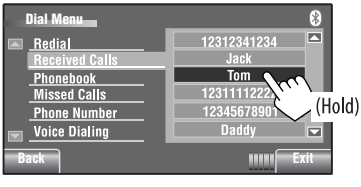
Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

Presetting the phone numbers

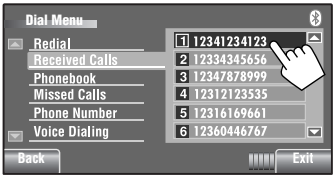
You can preset up to 6 phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>. (23)

2 Select a telephone number to store.



3 Select a preset number.

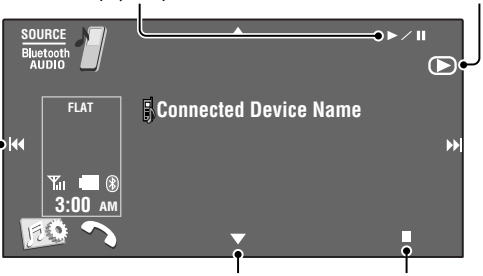


Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

To call a preset number, 22.

Continued on the next page

Using the Bluetooth audio player



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].**

❷ **Start playback.**
If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

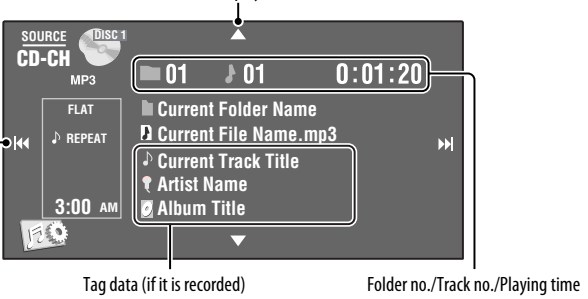
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
• You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (16)

Ex.: While playing an MP3 disc

• [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects track
• [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold) [▲/▼]: Displays Disc List.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].**

❷ **Press [ ].**

❸ **Press [List].**

❹ **Select a disc to start playing.**

To select the playback mode, 20.

Listening to the iPod/iPhone

You can connect the iPod/iPhone using the following cable or adapter:

To	Cable/adapter	To operate
Listen to the music	***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724:*** USB 2.0 cable (accessory of the iPod/iPhone) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below.
	Interface Adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the interface adapter" on page 40.
Watch the video	***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724:*** USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone, KS-U30 (not supplied) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below. • Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 15.

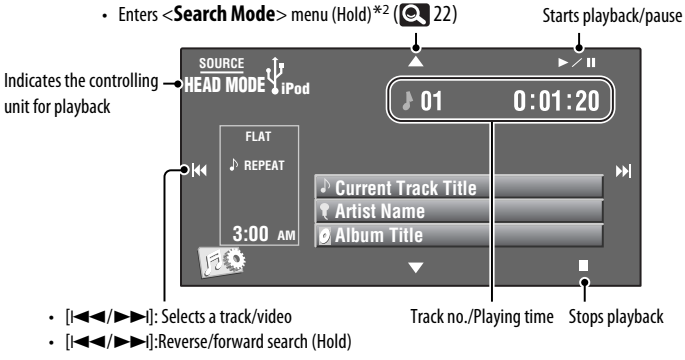
When connected with the USB cable

There are 2 control modes in "iPod" source.

- "HEAD MODE" : Control by this unit.
- "iPod MODE" : Control by the connected iPod/iPhone.
  KS-U30: Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 15.

- Press and hold iPod to switch between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE."

The operation explained below are under "HEAD MODE."



*1 [▲ / ▼] *may not function depending on how you select the current track/video.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."*

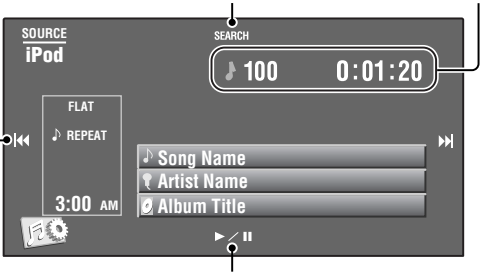
Continued on the next page

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod ⚲].**
Playback starts automatically.
- When you connect the iPod to the USB terminal, "⚲ **iPod**" is selected as the source and playback starts automatically.

❷ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select a track/video.**
You cannot resume playback for video sources.

The following operations/settings are only available in "HEAD MODE."
- To display the <**iPod Artwork**>, 🔍 14.
- To select track/video from <**Search Mode**>, 🔍 22.
- To select the playback mode, 🔍 20.
- To change the play speed of the audio books, 🔍 21.

When connected with the interface adapter



Starts playback/pause

- [|◄◄/►►|]: Selects tracks
- [|◄◄/►►|]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (🔍 16)

❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].**
Playback starts automatically.

❷ **Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select a track.**

Selecting a track from the main menu

1 Press [SEARCH] to enter the main menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to select the desired item.
- Skips 10 items at a time if there are more than 10 items. (Hold)

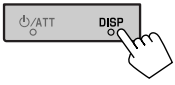
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [► / II] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [SEARCH].

To select the playback mode, 20.

Changing the display information

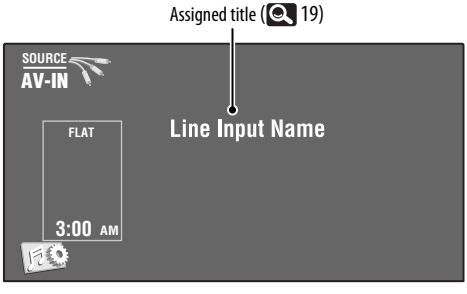


(50)

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN jacks.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].**
For ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625/KW-AVX624***: You can also press **AV-IN** on the monitor panel.

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons while watching the playback picture, 29.

Continued on the next page

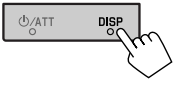
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN jack so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (15)

To view the navigation screen

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (50)

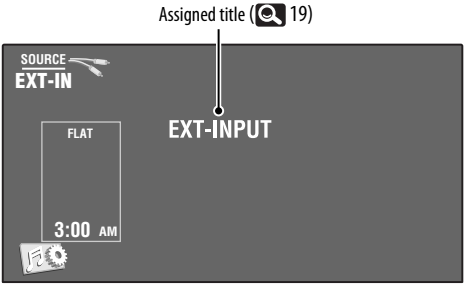


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (13)

When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**> (15)
- You can use the source "**AV-IN**" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN jacks.

EXT-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter, KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter, KS-U58 (not supplied).

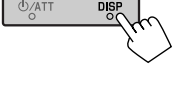


Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (16)

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].

2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.

Changing the display information

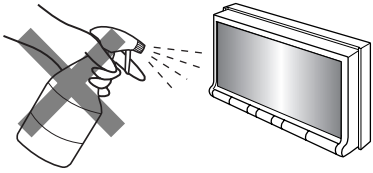


(50)

Maintenance

Caution on cleaning the unit

Do not use any solvent (for example, thinner, benzine, etc.), detergent, or insecticide. This may damage the monitor or the unit.



Recommended cleaning method:
Gently wipe the panel with a soft, dry cloth.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, “Cannot play this disc Check the disc” appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If “No Disc“ appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.

* *<.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders. The MPEG2 files with the <.mod> extension code cannot be played back when stored on a USB mass storage class device.*

- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- This unit can play back JPEG files that are at 32 × 32 to 8 192 × 7 680 resolution.
  It may take time to display the file depending on its resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

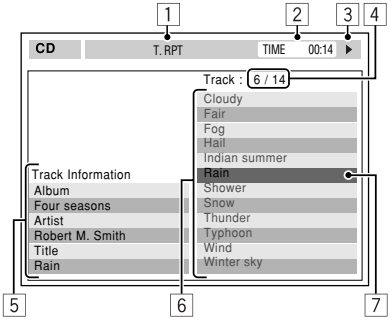
Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

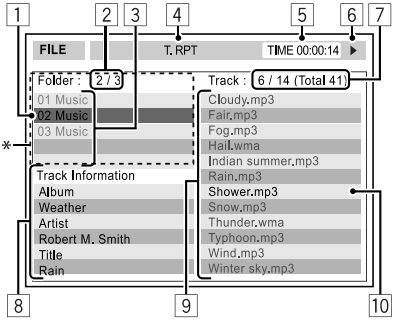
- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

Continued on the next page

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**



1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

USB operations

(for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724*)

- If "No USB Device" appears after removing a device, reattach a device or select another playback source.
- When the USB device has no playable files, or has not been formatted correctly, "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.
- This unit cannot recognize a USB device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with two or more partitions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect only one USB device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- This unit may not recognize a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- When connecting with a USB cable, use the USB 2.0 cable.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of the devices.
- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- For MPEG1/2 files: The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 2 Mbps.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**:
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (25)
- **Error**:
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**:
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**:
  The unit is updating the phone book or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**:
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset08**:
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

: Cellular phone

: Household phone

: Office

: General

: Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (22), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

iPod/iPhone operations

- You can control the following types of iPod/iPhone:
  (A) Connected with the USB cable:
  (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***)
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)*1, *2, *3
  – iPod classic*1, *2
  – iPod nano*2, *3
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod Touch*1, *2
  – iPod Touch(2nd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPhone/iPhone 3G*1, *2
  (B) Connected with the interface adapter:
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)
  – iPod classic
  – iPod nano
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*4

*1 *To watch the video with its audio, connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*

*2 *"iPod MODE" is available,* *39.*

*3 *To listen to the sound in "iPod MODE," connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*

*4 *It is not possible to charge the battery through this unit.*

- If the iPod does not play correctly, update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.

Continued on the next page

- The text information scrolls on the monitor. This unit can display up to 40 characters when using the interface adapter and up to 128 characters when using the USB 2.0 cable or USB Audio and Video cable, KS-U30.

Notice:
When operating an iPod/iPhone, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

For the USB connection:
When <**iPod Artwork**> is set to <**On**>:
Do not press any keys during the first 5 seconds or more of playing back any track containing an Artwork*. It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
* *The picture displayed on the iPod's/iPhone's screen while playing back a track.*

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

JVC bears no responsibility for any loss of data in an iPod/iPhone and/or USB mass storage class device while using this unit.

Characters you can enter for titles

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (19)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (13)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (13)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ł	Ĺ	Ij	ð								

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ŀ	ı	ij		

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- DTS sound cannot be emitted.
- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (14)

Playback disc \ <D. Audio Output>		Output signals		
		<Stream>	<Dolby D>	<PCM>
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

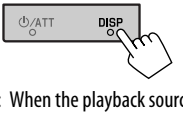
Continued on the next page

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

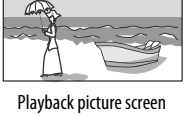
Display information

- Available display information varies among the playback sources.



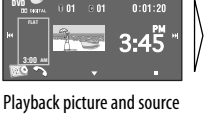
Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex.: When the playback source is a DVD video disc



Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen



Playback picture and source information screen*1

Navigation screen*2

*1 *When the source is "iPod," the Artwork of the song is shown if the song has an Artwork data. (14)*
While MP3/WMA file is played, "Jacket picture" is shown if the file has the tag data including "Jacket picture."

*2 When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (15)*

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX® is a registered trademark of DivX, Inc., and is used under license.
- Plays DivX® video:
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified or DivX Ultra Certified device that plays DivX video.
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX® Certified device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. First generate the DivX VOD registration code for your device and submit it during the registration process. [Important: DivX VOD content is protected by a DivX DRM (Digital Rights Management) system that restricts playback to registered DivX Certified devices. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- "Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- "Works with iPhone" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied with the adapters used for the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).
- Messages (enclosed in “ ”) in the tables below are shown in the language selected on <**Language**>. (🔍 13) Messages described here are in the language of this manual.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (🔍 12)
	• “Position Error Push Open Key” appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press [**OPEN/TILT**].
	• “Mecha Error Push Reset” appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (🔍 3)
	• “No Signal” appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN jack. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only VOL +/– and ⏏/⇕ work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (🔍 3)
	• The touch panel does not respond properly. • <**Illumination**> function does not work properly.	• Keep your hands and the touch panel clean and dry. • Eliminate static electricity and do not place magnetic items near the unit. • Leave the unit until the temperature becomes stable in the car. • A rubber mat on the floor may cause this symptom. In this case, do not use the rubber mat.
TUNER	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (🔍 21)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (27)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (12)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
USB (for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724*)	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• "Now Reading..." keeps flashing on the screen.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Copy tracks to the USB device.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, 48.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks are not properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again, and try again.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device.
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (25)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit (supplied with Bluetooth Adapter) position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped while using a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "NEW DEVICE" cannot be selected for "**Bluetooth AUDIO**."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "NEW DEVICE," disconnect it. (25)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
iPod/iPhone	• The iPod/iPhone does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version of the iPod/iPhone. • Charge the battery of the iPod/iPhone. • Check whether "HEAD MODE" or "iPod MODE" is correctly selected. (39) • Reset the iPod/iPhone.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/iPhone.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod/iPhone.
	• No operations are available when playing back a track containing Artwork.	Operate the unit after the Artwork is loaded. (14)
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
	• "Restricted Device" appears on the screen.	Check whether the connected iPod is compatible with this unit. (47)
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (12)

Specifications

AMPLIFIER		
Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 1.0% total harmonic distortion
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
	Level:	±10 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
Audio Output Level: • LINE OUT (REAR) • SUBWOOFER (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***)	Line-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
Color System:		NTSC/PAL
Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
Other Terminals:	Input:	• LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Antenna input • USB input (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***)
	Output:	VIDEO OUT
	Others:	CD changer, DIGITAL OUT (optical), POSITION OUT

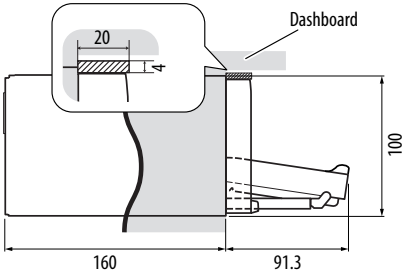
FM/AM TUNER		
Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	9.3 dBf (0.8 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
	Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:	40 dB
AM Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/40 dB
DVD/CD		
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
	VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:		96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
USB (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/KW-AVX724***)		
USB Standards:	USB 2.0 Full Speed	
Data Transfer Rate	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
	Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
Max. Current:	DC 5 V ⎓ 500 mA	

Continued on the next page

MONITOR		
Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Storage Temperature:		−10°C to +60°C
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	178 mm × 100 mm × 160 mm
	Panel Size (approx.):	184 mm × 112 mm × 23 mm
Mass (approx.):		2.7 kg

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Operation index

General

Reset 3, 5
Volume 5, 6
AV Menu 5, 11
Source 5, 6
Short Cut 7
RM-RK252 ..... 7, 8, 9, 30, 31
Clock 10, 13
Display demonstration 10, 12

Tuner

Listen to the radio (FM/AM) 5, 9, 26
Auto/manual search 8, 26
Select preset station 8, 21, 26
Store station (automatically/manually) 19, 21
Improve FM reception 19
Assign title 19

Disc

Open/close 6, 27
Eject 3, 6
Lock/unlock disc 27
Playable disc type 4
Display information 28
Repeat/random play 20
Select track/folder 8, 21, 30, 31
Select title/program/playlist 8, 30
Start/stop/pause/resume playback 9, 30, 31
Search/skip 8, 9, 30, 31
OSD 32, 33
PBC playback 9, 30

USB

Attach/detach 34
Start/pause playback 13, 34
Repeat/random play 20

Bluetooth

Connect/disconnect/delete 24, 25, 35
Make a call 22, 23
Answer/end call 9, 25, 36
Read SMS 23, 37
Microphone volume 25
Preset phone number 37

CD changer

Start playback 22, 38
Repeat/random play 20

iPod

Connect 39, 40
Start/pause playback 9, 39
Head Mode/iPod Mode 5, 39
Repeat/random play 20
Audiobooks 21
Select track 8, 22, 39, 40

External component

AV-INPUT 41
EXT-INPUT 42

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

JVC

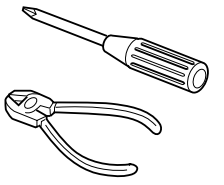
EN

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0109DTSMDTJEIN

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊



GET0605-007A
[U/UT]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  – This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery’s negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.
- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car’s chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

中文

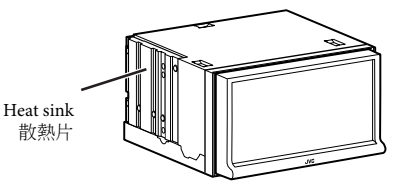
本機僅可使用**直流 12 V 、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。.

警告

- 切勿在以下位置安裝本機或連接電纜；
  – 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置，否則可能引發交通事故。
  – 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置，否則可能引發致命的交通事故。
  – 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在操作方向盤的過程中操作本機，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 駕駛時，駕駛員切勿緊盯顯示器。這可能會導致疏忽並引發事故。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方，否則可能引發交通事故。
- 若手剎車未嚙合，“Parking Brake”字樣在顯示器上出現，且無法播放圖片。
  – 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，拔開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。
- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

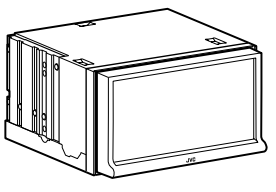
進行電路連接時注意：
- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω – 8 Ω**。
  如果最大功率少於 50 W，請調校 <Amplifier Gain> 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 18 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住未使用電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。



Parts list for installation and connection
If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

用於安裝和連接的零件清單
若發現缺少任何一件零件，請即刻聯絡您的 JVC 汽車音響分銷商。

Main unit
主機



Power cord
電路連接用的配線束

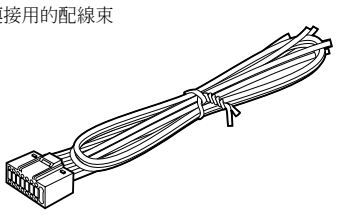
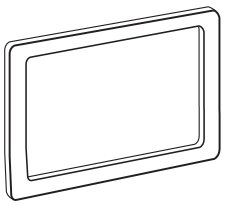
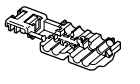


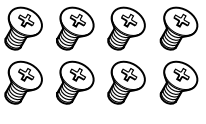
Plate for use with a Nissan car
用於日產汽車的框



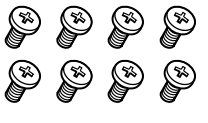
Crimp connector
夾子接頭



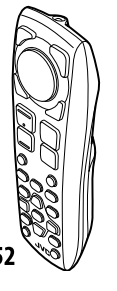
Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
平頭螺絲（M5 × 8 mm）



Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
圓頭螺絲（M5 × 8 mm）



Remote controller
遙控器



RM-RK252

Batteries
電池

R03/LR03/AAA

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

安裝（裝設、固定在儀表板內）

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。但是在實際安裝時，您應該根據您的汽車作適當的調整。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。
- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

安裝本機之前

- 當裝上本機時，必須按照指示使用配備的螺絲釘。如果使用其它的螺絲釘，相關零件可能會鬆脫或損壞。
- 當鎖緊螺絲釘或螺栓時，切記不要壓擠到任何連接電線。
- 當安裝上後，切記不要阻擋到後面板的風扇以維持適當的通風。

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 – 6.

4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step **1**.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

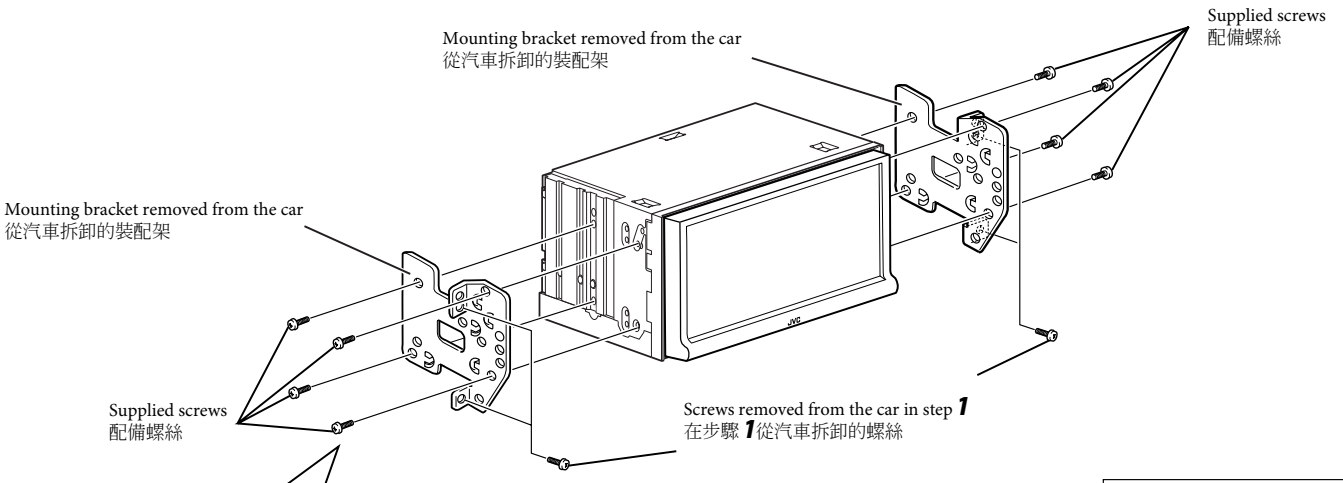
1 拆卸原本安裝在汽車內的音響系統，以及其裝配架。
注意：請務必保留所有從您汽車拆卸的螺絲和零件做日後使用。

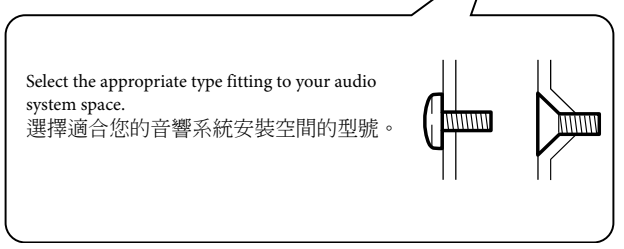
2 將 (從汽車拆卸的) 裝配架安上本機 (參閱下圖)。

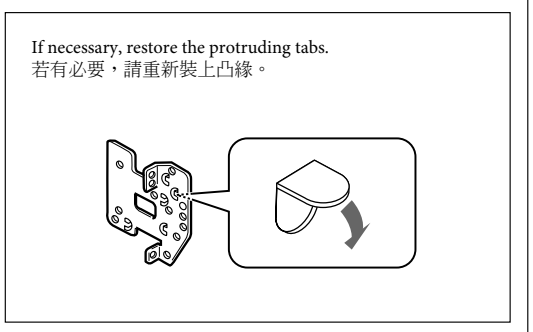
3 執行必要的電路連接。
- 參閱第 3 至 6 頁。

4 使用在步驟 **1** 拆卸的螺絲安裝本機。

以下以豐田（Toyota）汽車安裝為例。請聯絡您的 JVC 汽車音響分銷商有關更多細節。

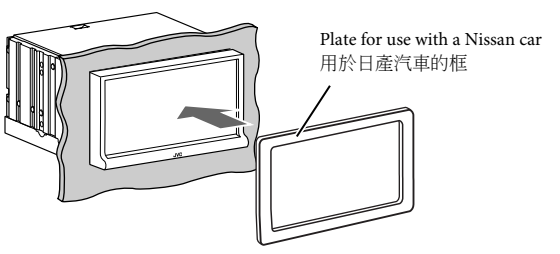




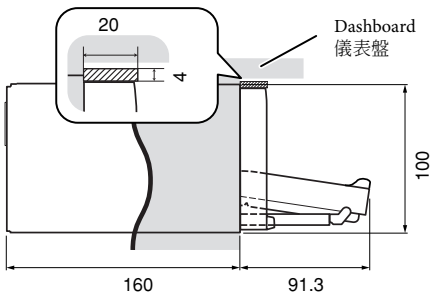


Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
注意： 安裝本機進裝配架時，請務必使用配備的螺絲（M5×8mm）。若使用比較長的螺絲，有關螺絲可能會損壞本機。.

When installing the unit in a Nissan car
當安裝本機於日產汽車時

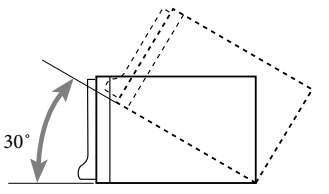


Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
安裝和顯示器退出所需的空間



Unit: mm
單位：mm（毫米）

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
將本機安裝在少於 30˚ 的角度，您必須考慮到屏幕可以在使用時退出。



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

電路連接

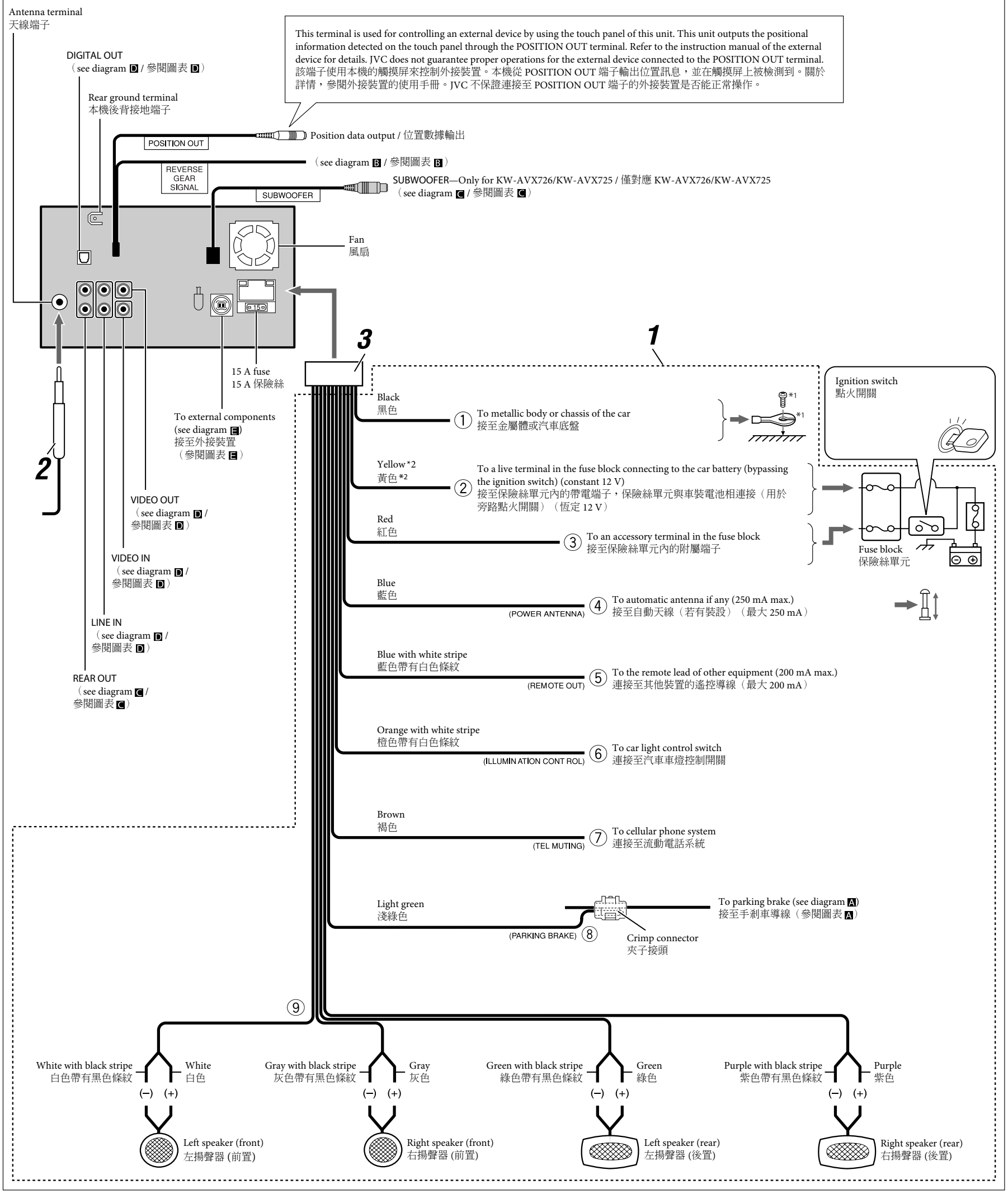
Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1. 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。
2. 將天線的電線連接起來。
3. 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 不隨本機提供。
*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

ENGLISH

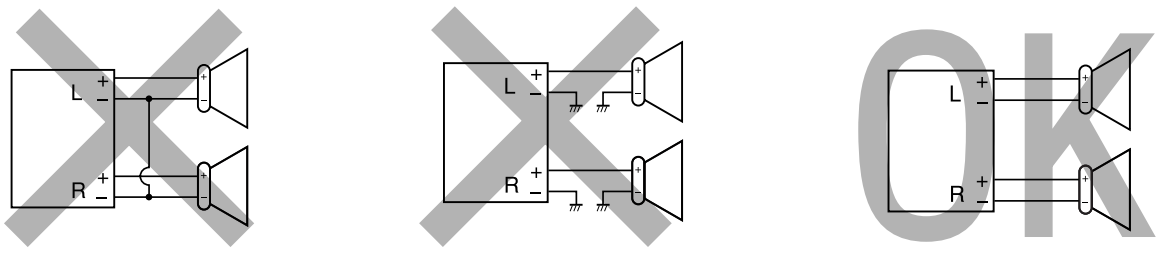
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

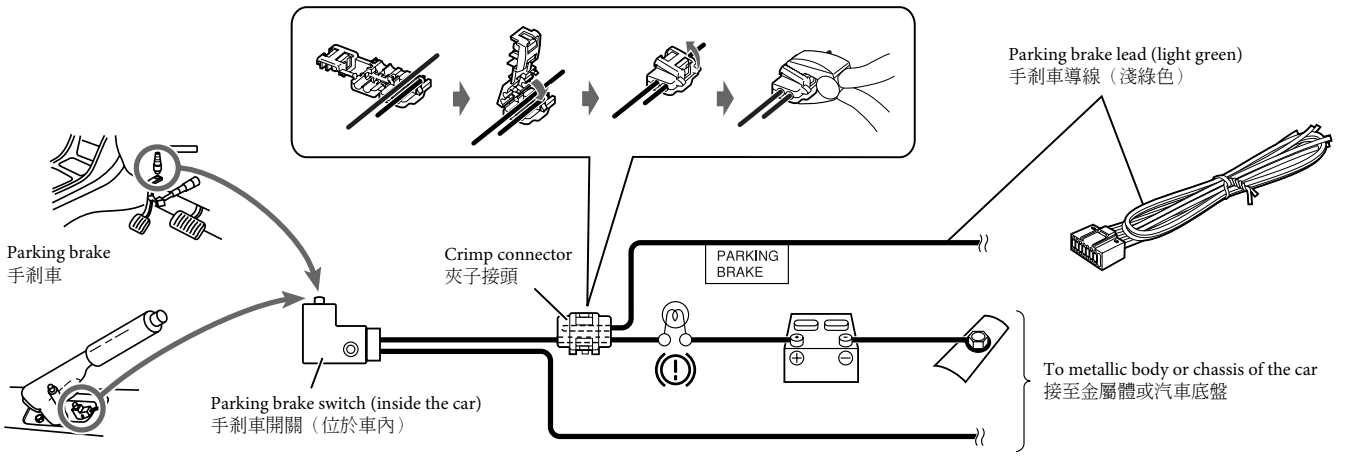
中文

電源和揚聲器接線注意事項：

- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

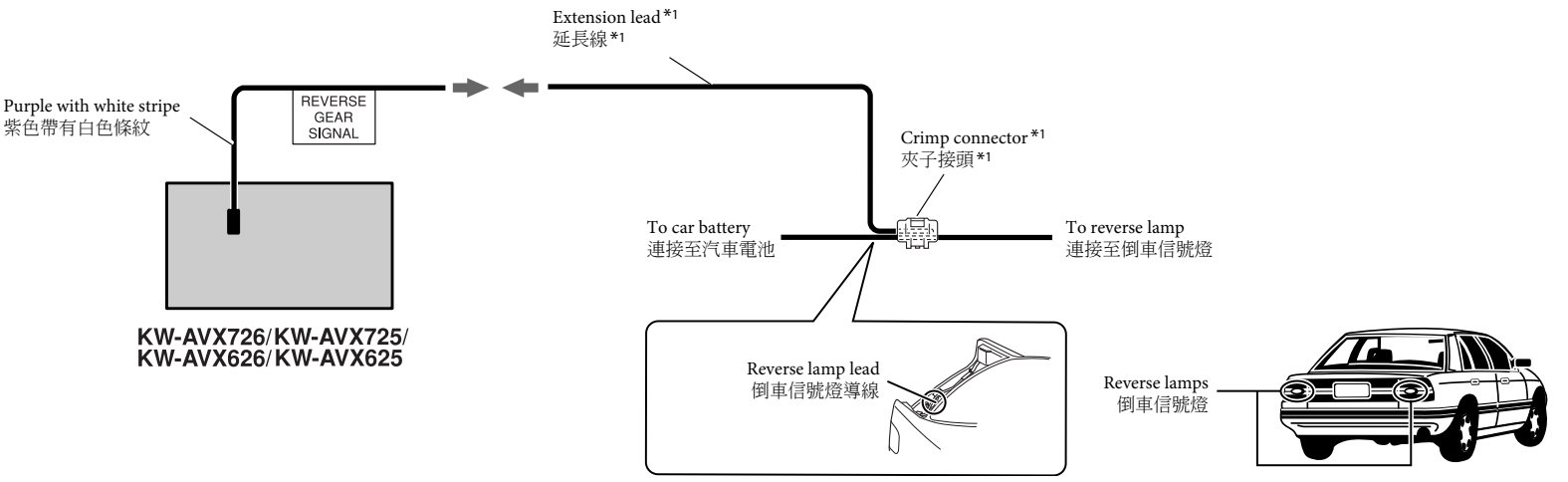


A Connecting the parking brake lead / 連接至手剎車導線



B Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / 連接反向變速器信號導線（對應後視照相機）

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.
找出後車箱的倒車信號燈導線。



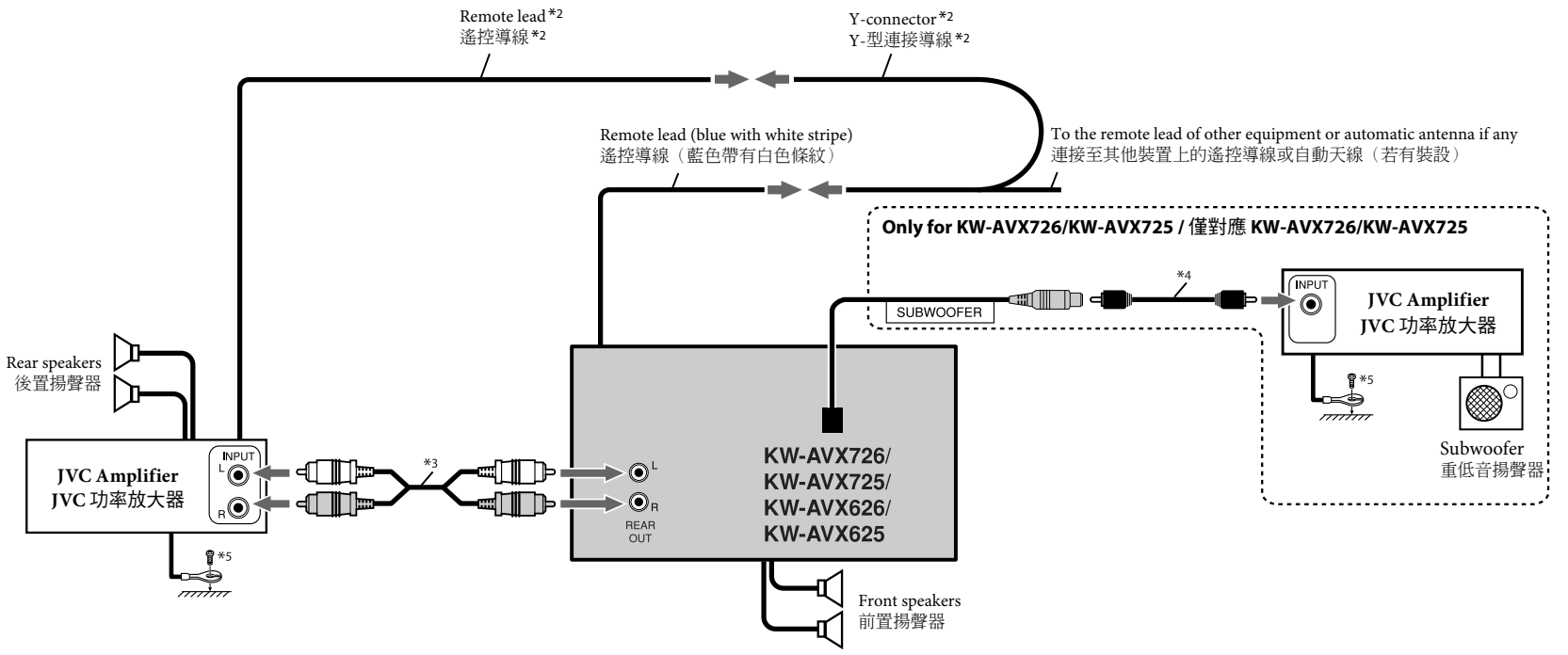
*1 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 不隨本機提供。

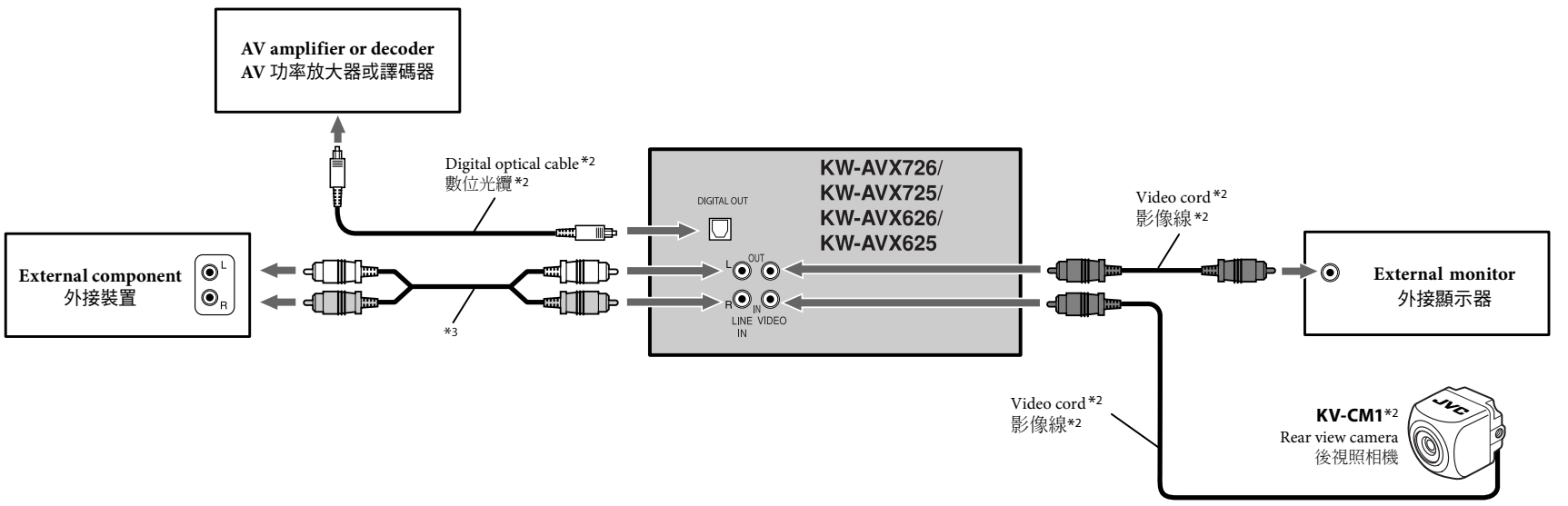
C Connecting the external amplifier and/or subwoofer / 連接至外接功率放大器和 / 或重低音揚聲器

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

您可以連接功率放大器以提昇尊車的音響系統。
- 將遙控導線（藍色帶有白色條紋）和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以從本機進行遙控。
- **將揚聲器和本機拔開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。**

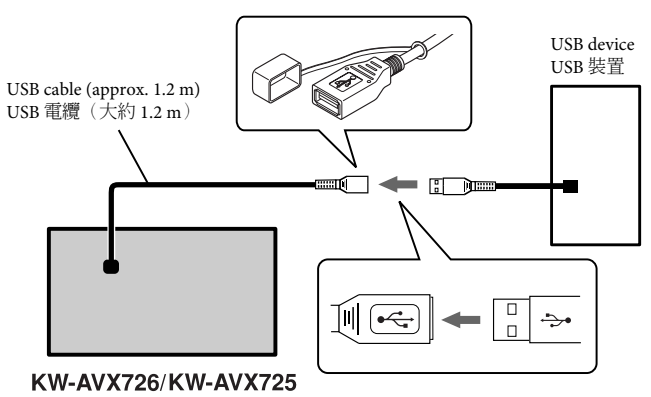


D Connecting the external components / 連接其他外接裝置



Only for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725 / 僅對應 KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725

Connecting the USB devices / 連接 USB 裝置

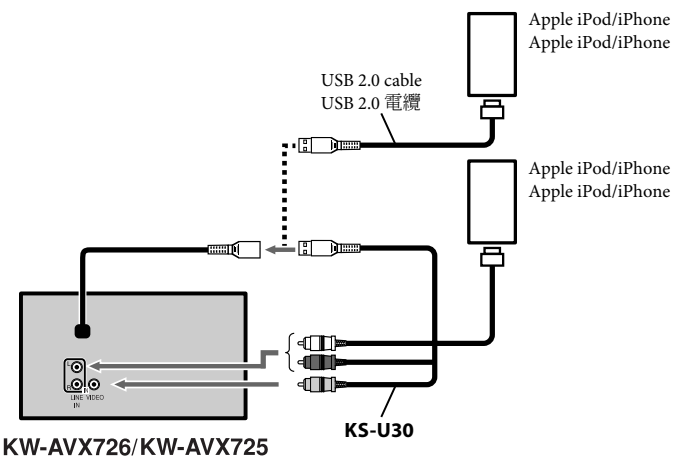


You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
您無法將電腦連接至本機的 USB（⭠）端子。

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / 連接 iPod/iPhone 至 USB 端子

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:
- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied with the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied) *6

您可以使用下列電纜連接 iPod/iPhone 至 USB 端子：
- 想要聆聽音樂： USB 2.0 電纜（隨 iPod/iPhone 附帶）
- 想要觀看視訊：iPod/iPhone 的 USB 聲音和影像電纜—KS-U30（另購）*6



iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod 是 Apple Inc.（蘋果公司）在美國及其他國家註冊的商標。

iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone 是 Apple Inc.（蘋果公司）的商標。

*2 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*4 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*6 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 15 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*2 不隨本機提供。
*3 信號導線（不隨本機提供）。
*4 聲音導線（不隨本機提供）。
*5 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。
*6 當使用電纜時，確定為 <AV Input> 選擇 <iPod (Off)>（參閱使用說明書的第 15 頁）。

E Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / 連接外接裝置至 CD 換碟器插孔

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

連接外接裝置時，另請參閱裝置及轉換器之使用手冊。

小心：
連接外接裝置之前，請確定關閉本機。

您可以將以下 JVC 裝置連接到 CD 換碟器插孔。

JVC 裝置	型號名稱
CD 換碟器（CD-CH）	CH-X1500，等

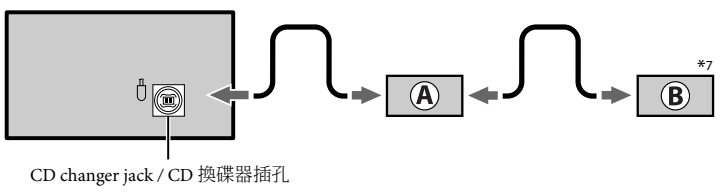
您也可透過各種 JVC 轉換器連接以下裝置。
- 連接線可能需要單獨購置。

裝置	轉換器	型號名稱
藍牙裝置	藍牙轉換器	KS-BTA200
iPod	iPod 介面轉換器	KS-PD100
帶線性輸出插孔的手提式音頻播放器	線性輸入轉換器	KS-U57
帶 3.5 mm 立體聲迷你型插孔的手提式音頻播放器	AUX 輸入轉換器	KS-U58

當連接多個裝置時（最多：2），建議您依下方所示串聯裝置。

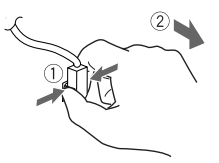
When connecting two components in series
當串聯兩個裝置時

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/
KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / 拆開連接器



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
抓緊連接器上部（①），然後將之拉出（②）。

*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 16 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*7 要使用這些裝置，請正確設定外接輸入（參閱使用說明書的第 16 頁）。

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**
* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？

- **電源不能接通。**
* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？

- **揚聲器沒有聲訊。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？

- **聲訊失真。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左（*L*），右（*R*）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？

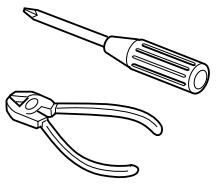
- **噪音干擾音響。**
* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？

- **本機發熱。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左（*L*），右（*R*）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？

- **本機完全不能正確操作。**
* 您有沒有重置本機？

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan



GET0605-009A
[UN]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN, IN
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

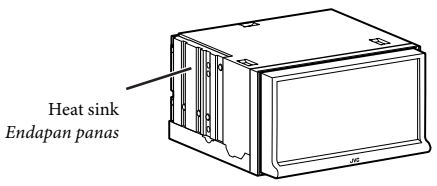
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery’s negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car’s chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



INDONESIA

Unit ini didesain untuk beroperasi hanya pada sistem listrik **12 V DC yang di-ground NEGATIVE**. *Jika kendaraan Anda tidak dilengkapi sistem ini, maka diperlukan alat pembalik tegangan yang dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.*

PERINGATAN

- *JANGAN menginstal unit apa pun atau menjalin kabel apa pun pada lokasi di mana;*
  - *unit dapat menghalangi pengoperasian roda kemudi dan tuas persneling, karena dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.*
  - *unit dapat menghalangi pengoperasian alat keselamatan seperti kantung udara, karena hal ini dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan yang fatal.*
  - *ini dapat menghalangi pandangan.*
- *JANGAN mengoperasikan unit apa pun sewaktu mengendalikan roda kemudi, karena hal ini dapat mengakibatkan kecelakaan lalu lintas.*
- *Pengemudi tidak boleh menonton ke monitor sewaktu mengemudi. Ini dapat mengakibatkan kecerobohan dan menyebabkan kecelakaan.*
- *Jika Anda harus mengoperasikan unit selagi mengemudi, pastikan Anda melihat ke sekeliling dengan cermat, karena kalau tidak, Anda bisa terlibat kecelakaan lalu lintas.*
- *Jika rem parkir tidak bekerja, terlihat tulisan “Parking Brake” muncul pada monitor dan tidak ada pemutaran gambar yang akan ditunjukkan.*
  - *Peringatan ini hanya muncul apabila kabel rem parkir terhubung ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang dalam mobil.*

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang unit.

- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan unit ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Catatan mengenai sambungan listrik:

- *Ganti sekring dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekring sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.*
- *Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi* **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω***).*
  Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan <Amplifier Gain> (“PENAMBAH PENGUAT”) untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 18 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).
- *Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.*
- *Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan unit ini.*

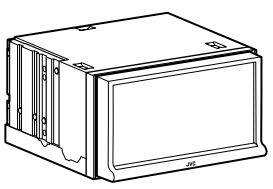
Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

Jika ada item yang hilang, segera hubungi dealer audio mobil JVC anda.

Main unit
Unit utama



Power cord
Kabel listrik

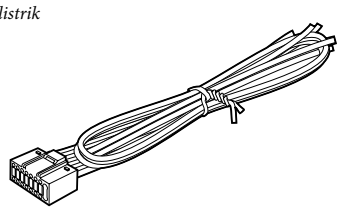
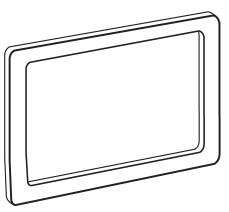
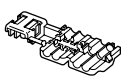


Plate for use with a Nissan car
Pelat untuk digunakan dengan mobil Nissan



Crimp connector
Konektor kerut



Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Sekrup-sekrup kepala datar (M5 × 8 mm)

Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Sekrup-sekrup kepala bulat (M5 × 8 mm)

Remote controller
Remote kontrol

RM-RK252

Batteries
Baterai

R03/LR03/AAA

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

PEMASANGAN (DALAM BINGKAI TEMPATNYA)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan pemasangan yang khas. Namun, Anda harus melakukan penyesuaian pada mobil tertentu. Jika ada pertanyaan atau perlu informasi mengenai kit pemasangan, tanyakan kepada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau perusahaan yang menyediakannya.
- *Jika Anda tidak tahu pasti cara memasang unit ini dengan benar, serahkan pemasangan kepada teknisi yang memenuhi syarat.*

Sebelum memasang unit

- *Apabila memasang unit, pastikan Anda menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang tersedia sebagaimana yang diinstruksikan. Jika menggunakan sekrup lain, komponen bisa menjadi longgar atau rusak.*
- *Sewaktu mengencangkan sekrup-sekrup atau baut, hati-hati, jangan sampai menjepit kabel sambungan yang manapun.*
- *Pastikan tidak ada yang menghalangi kipas pada panel belakang untuk menjaga aliran udara yang baik apabila kipas ini dipasang.*

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 – 6.

4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step **1**.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

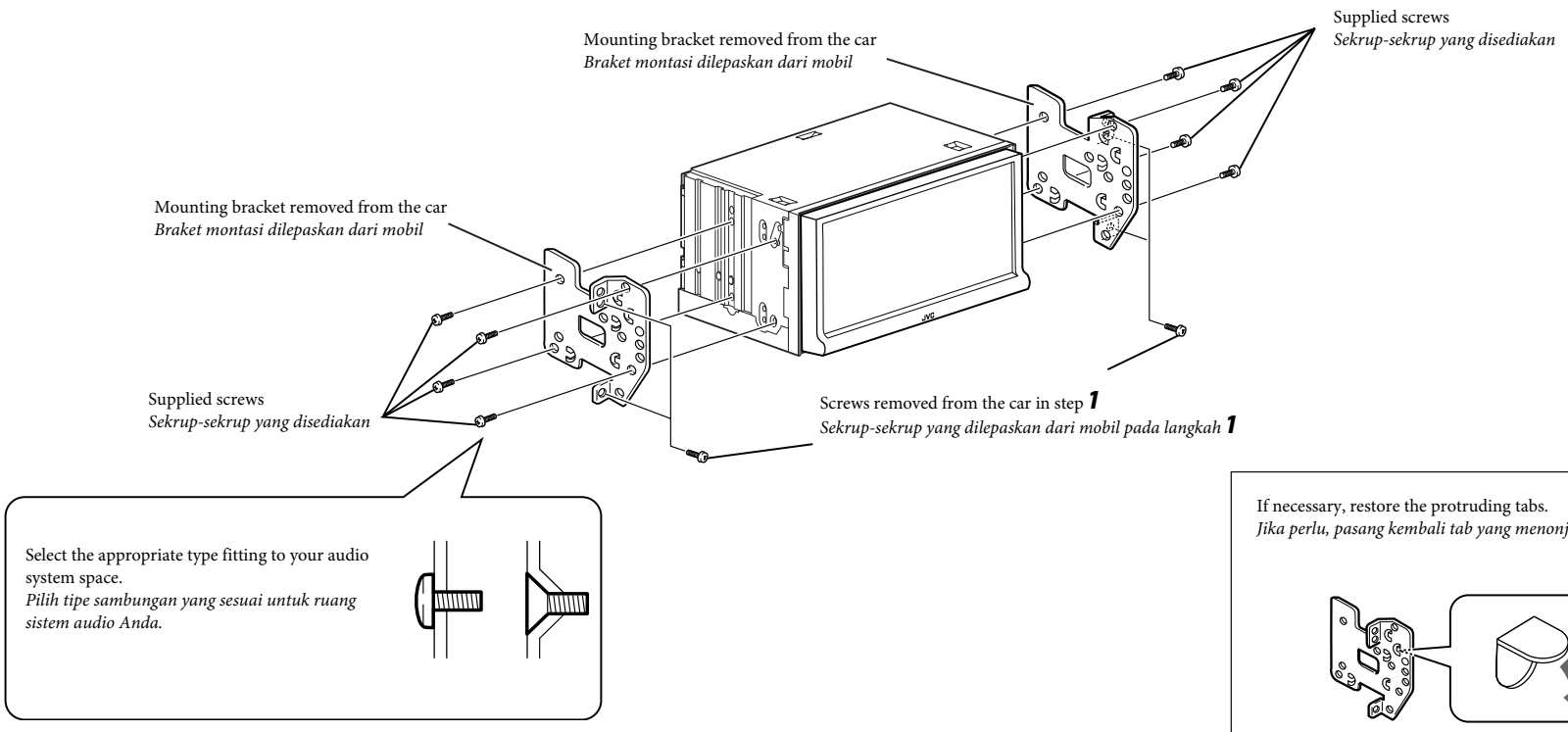
1 *Copot sistem audio yang aslinya terpasang dalam mobil berikut braket montasi.*
Catatan: *Pastikan Anda menyimpan semua sekrup-sekrup dan komponen yang dilepaskan dari mobil untuk penggunaan di kemudian hari.*

2 *Pasangkan braket montasi (yang dilepaskan dari mobil) ke unit ini (lihat di bawah).*

3 *Lakukan koneksi listrik yang diperlukan.*
- *Lihat halaman 3 – 6.*

4 *Pasang unit ini dengan menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang dilepaskan pada langkah* **1.**

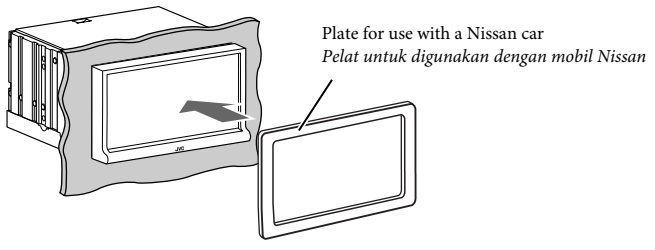
Berikut adalah contoh pemasangan pada mobil Toyota. Untuk rincian lebih lanjut, tanyakan kepada penyalur audio mobil JVC.



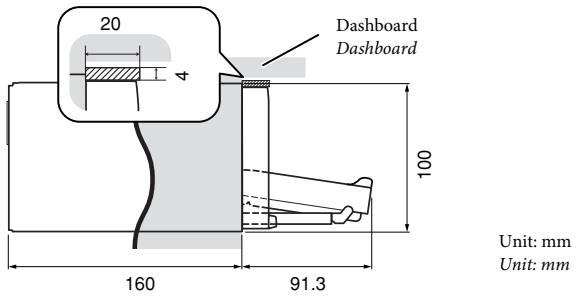
Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Catatan : *Apabila memasang unit pada braket montasi, pastikan Anda menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang disediakan (M5 × 8 mm). Jika menggunakan sekrup-sekrup yang lebih panjang, bisa merusak unit.*

When installing the unit in a Nissan car
Apabila memasang unit dalam mobil Nissan

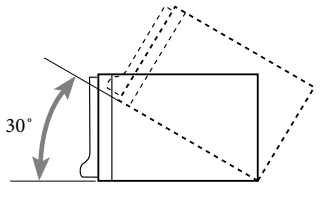


Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
Diperlukan ruang untuk penginstalan dan pengeluaran monitor



Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

Pasang unit tersebut pada sudut kurang dari 30˚, perhitungkan bahwa monitor akan keluar ketika sedang digunakan.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

Typical connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

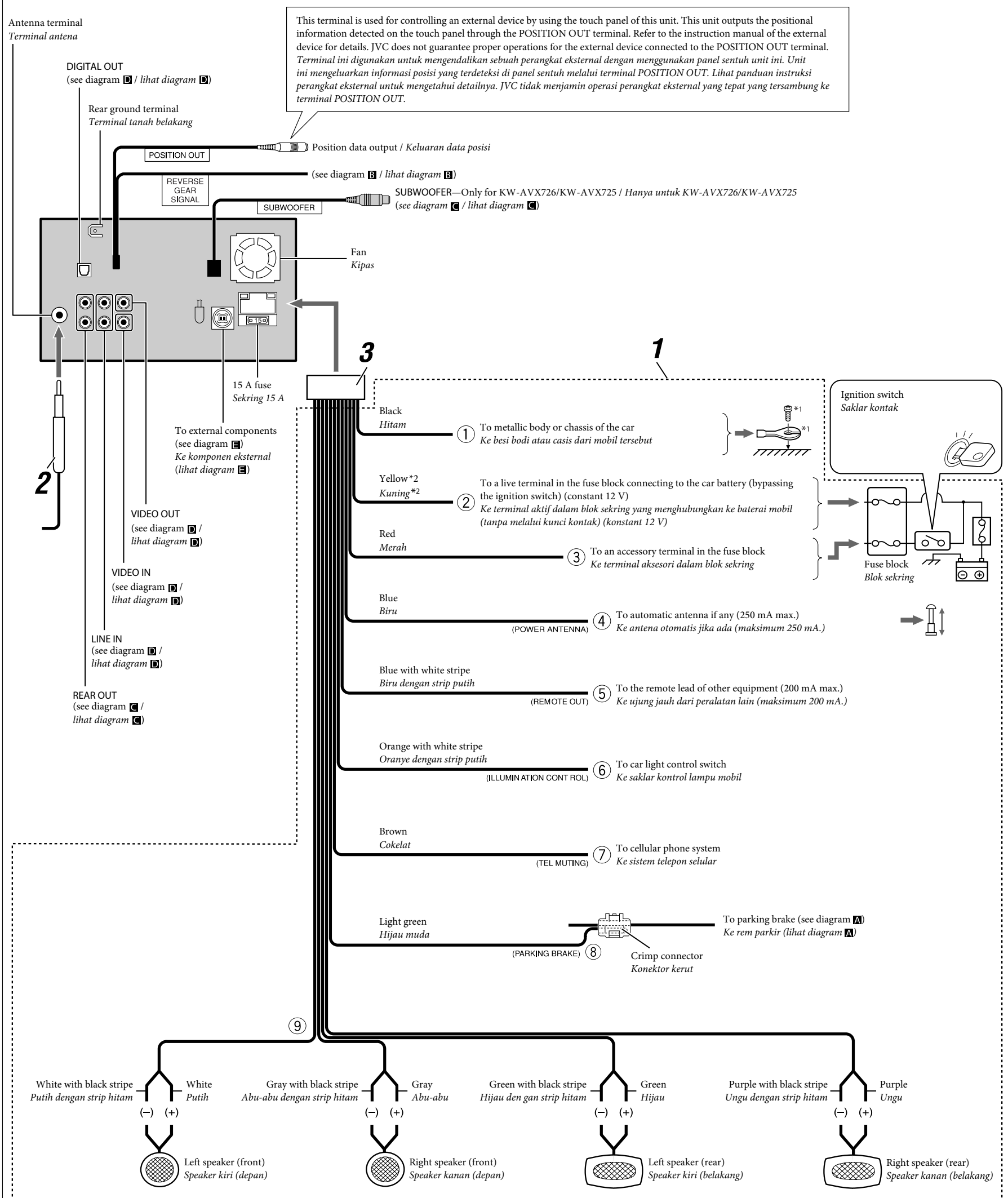
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Sebelum penyambungan: *Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada unit.*
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

1 *Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.*

2 *Sambungkan kabel antena.*

3 *Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke unit.*



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*
*2 *Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari unit ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.*

ENGLISH

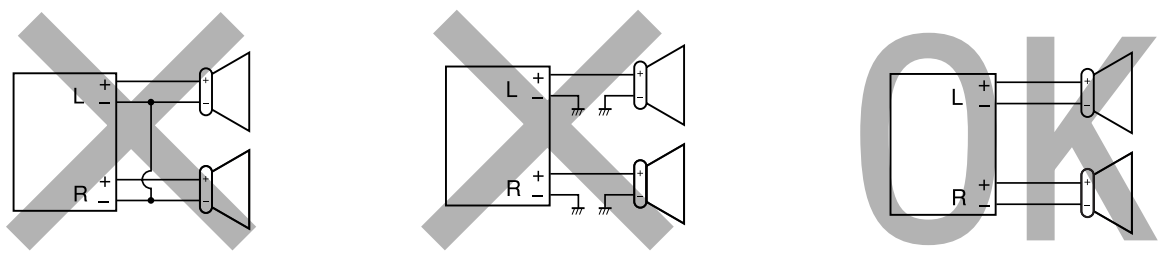
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

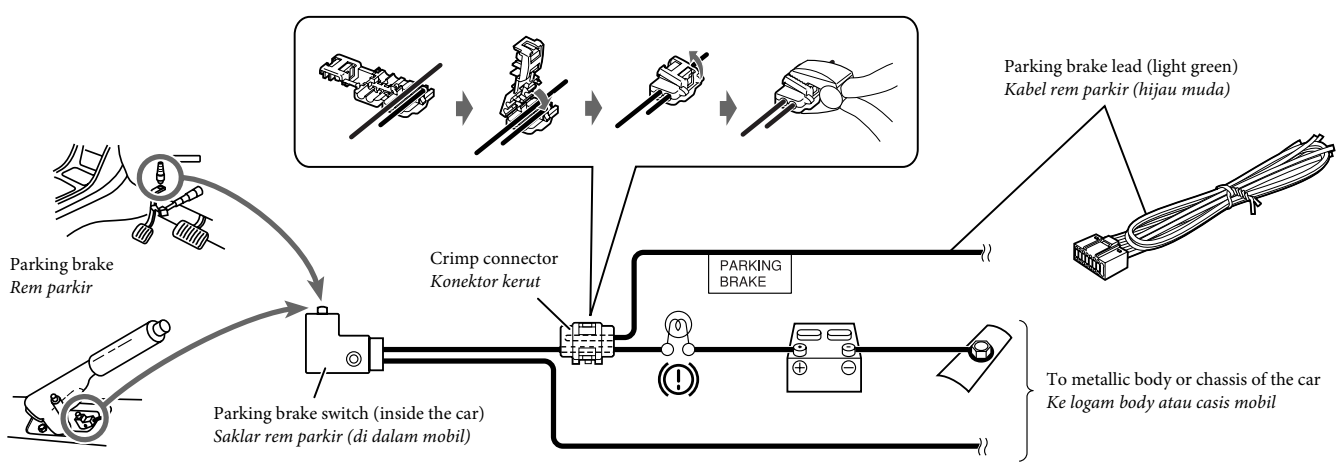
INDONESIA

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, unit tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- *SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil Anda.*

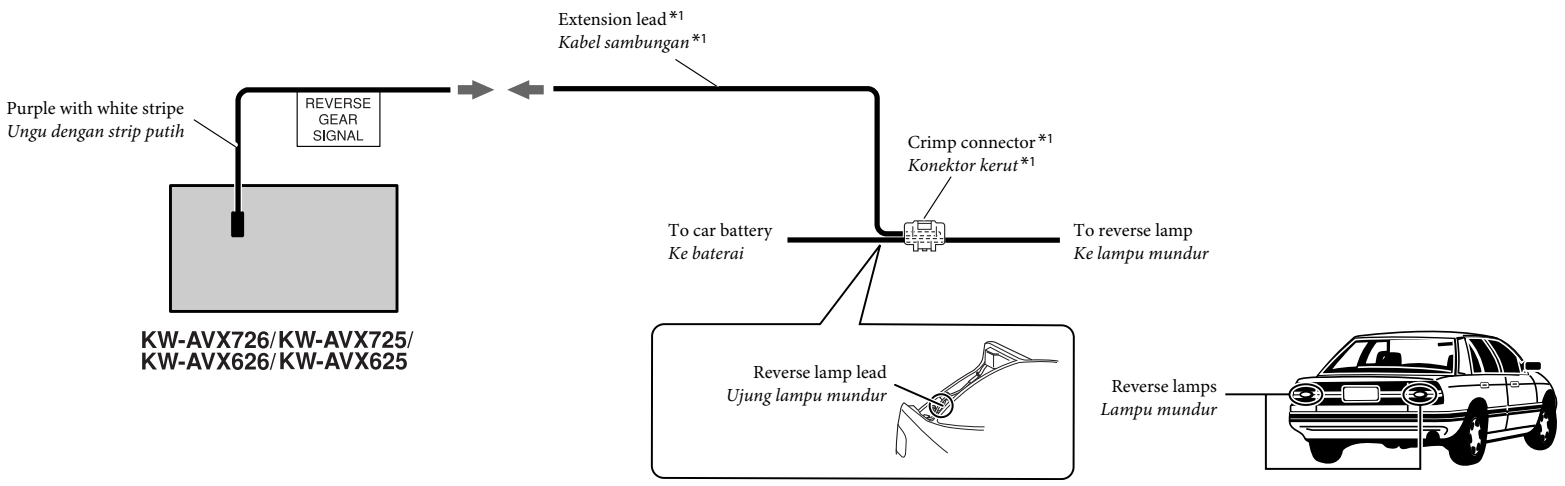


A Connecting the parking brake lead / Menyambung kabel rem parkir



B Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / Menghubungkan timbal sinyal persneling mundur (untuk kamera tampilan belakang)

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.
Tempatkan kabel kamera belakang ke dalam bagasi mobil.



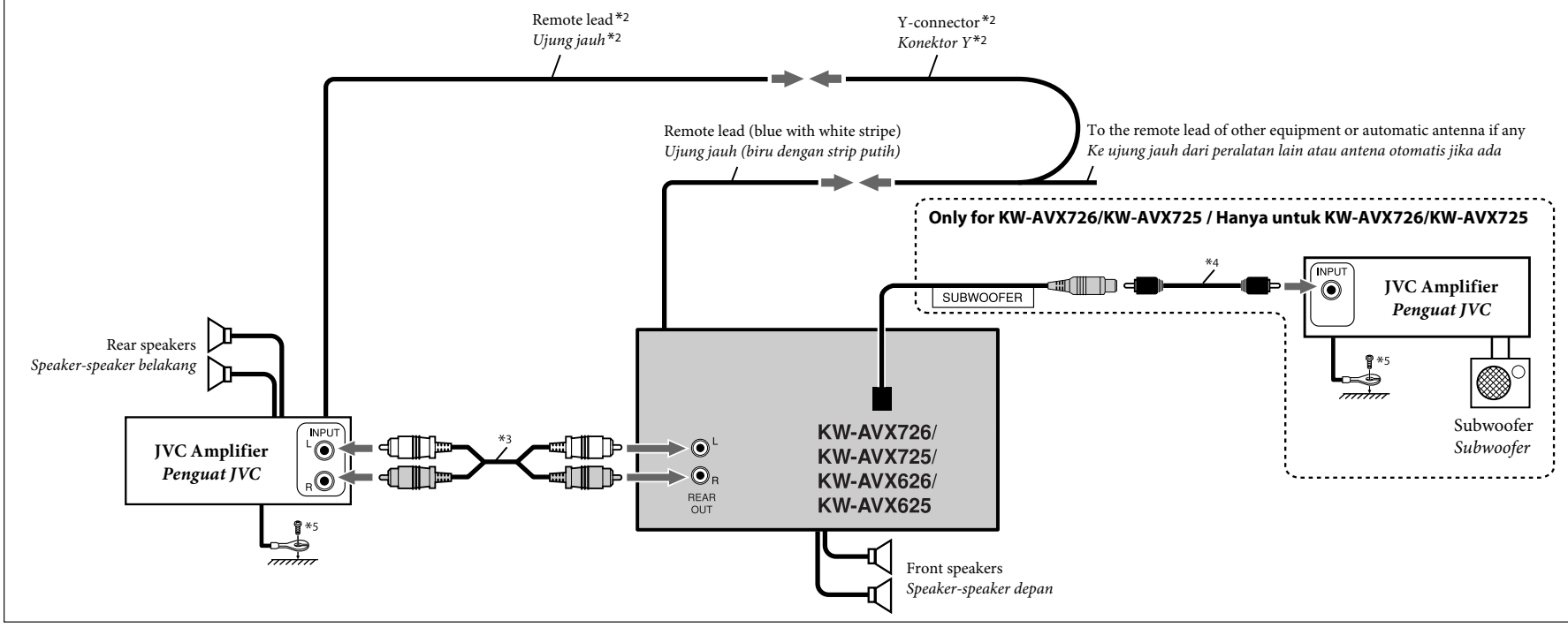
*1 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*

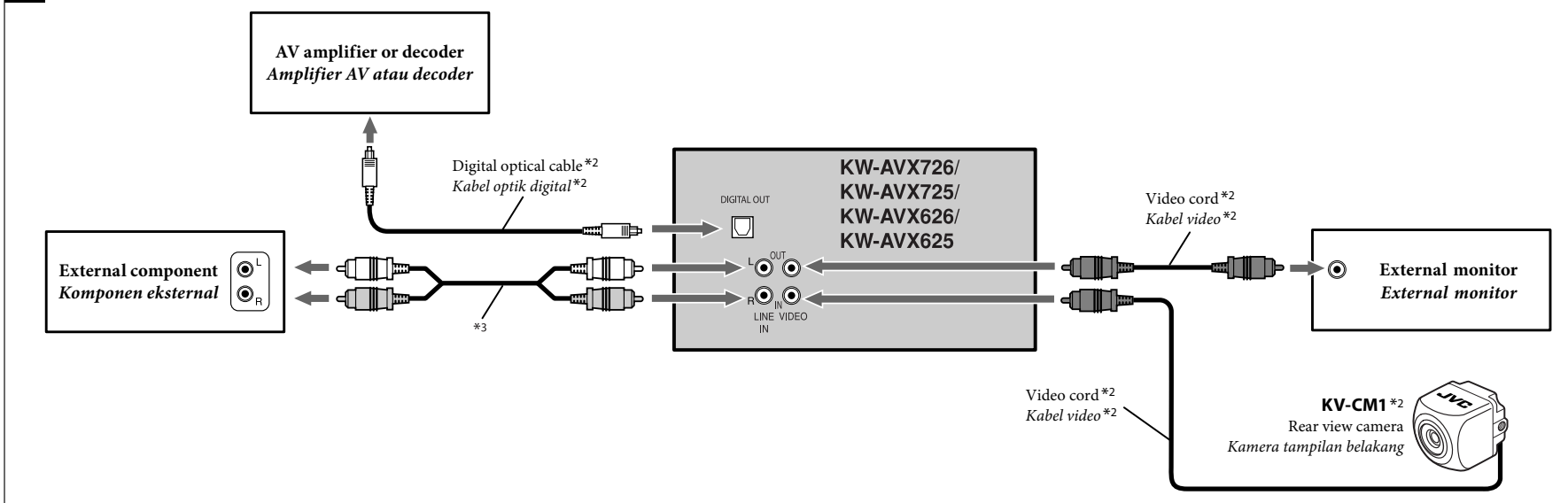
C Connecting the external amplifier and/or subwoofer / Penyambungan penguat eksternal dan/atau subwoofer

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.
- *Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui unit ini.*
- **Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari unit ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari unit ini tidak digunakan.**

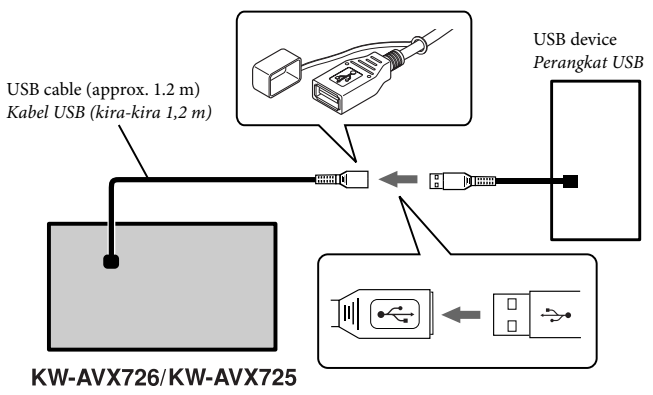


D Connecting the external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal



Only for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725 / Hanya untuk KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725

Connecting the USB devices / Menghubungkan Perangkat USB

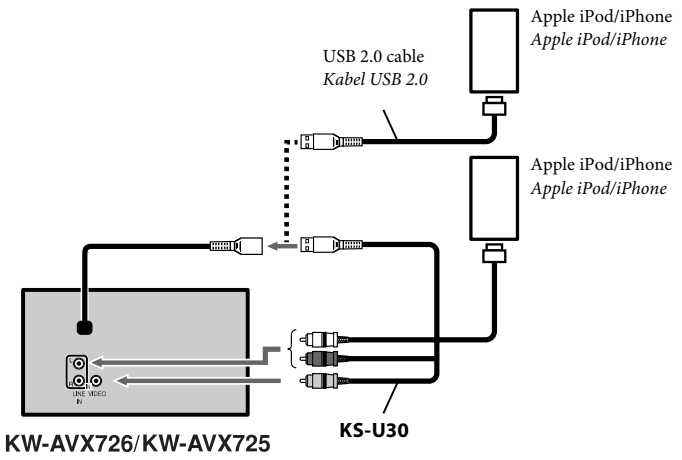


You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
Anda tidak dapat menghubungkan komputer ke terminal USB (⭠) pada unit.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / Menghubungkan iPod/iPhone ke terminal USB

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:
- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied with the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied) *6

Anda dapat menghubungkan iPod/iPhone ke terminal USB dengan menggunakan kabel berikut ini:
- *Untuk mendengarkan musik: Kabel USB 2.0 (disediakan untuk iPod/iPhone)*
- *Untuk menonton video: Kabel Audio dan Video USB untuk iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (tidak disediakan)* *6



iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Inc., terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan di negara-negara lain.

iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone adalah merek dagang dari Apple Inc.

*2 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*4 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*6 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 15 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*2 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*
*3 *Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk unit ini).*
*4 *Kabel audio (tidak disediakan untuk unit ini).*
*5 *Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada alat penerima tersebut.*
*6 *Bila menggunakan kabel, pastikan <iPod (Off)> yang dipilih untuk <AV Input> (lihat halaman 15 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*

E Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / Menghubungkan komponen eksternal ke jack CD changer

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Bila menghubungkan komponen eksternal, rujuk juga buku petunjuk yang dibekalkan untuk komponen dan adaptor.

PERINGATAN:
Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa unit sudah dimatikan.

Anda dapat menghubungkan komponen JVC berikut ini ke jack CD changer.

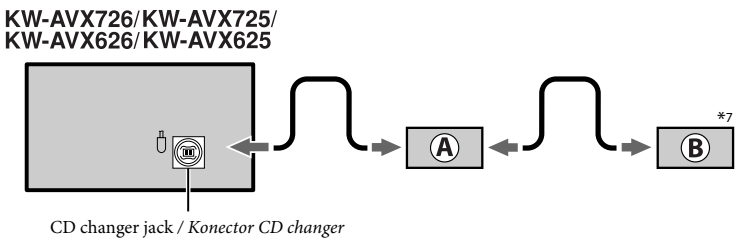
Komponen JVC	Nama model
CD changer (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, dsb.*

Anda juga dapat menghubungkan komponen berikut ini melalui berbagai adaptor JVC.
- *Kabel koneksi mungkin harus dibeli secara terpisah.*

Komponen	Adaptor	Nama model
Perangkat Bluetooth	*Adaptor Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptor interface untuk iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Audio player portabel dengan jack line output	*Adaptor line input*	*KS-U57*
Audio player portabel dengan jack stereo mini 3,5 mm	*Adaptor AUX input*	*KS-U58*

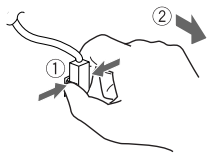
Bila menghubungkan beberapa komponen (maksimum: dua), dianjurkan agar anda menghubungkan komponen dalam rangkaian seperti dijelaskan di bawah.

When connecting two components in series
Bila menghubungkan dua komponen dalam rangkaian



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / *Untuk memutuskan konektor*



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Pegang erat konektor (①) lalu tarik keluar (②).

*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 16 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*7 *Untuk menggunakan komponen ini, lakukan pengaturan masukan eksternal yang benar (lihat halaman 16 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

- **Sekring meledak.**
* *Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?*

- **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
* *Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?*

- **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?*

- **Suara terdistorsi.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*

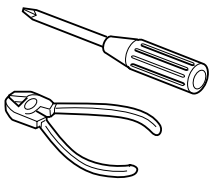
- **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
* *Apakah terminal tanahan belakang tersambung ke casis mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?*

- **Unit menjadi panas.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*

- **Unit ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
* *Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) unit anda?*

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX724/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX624

Installation/Connection Manual



GET0605-010A
[A/UI]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

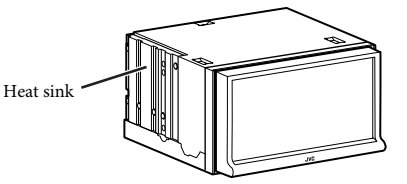
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  – This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

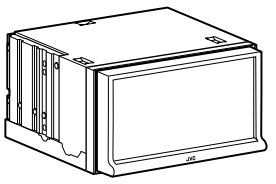
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

Main unit



Power cord

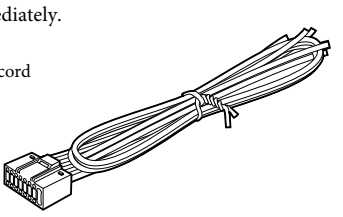
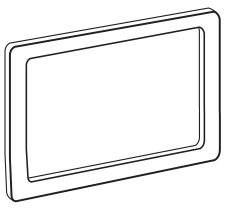
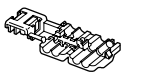


Plate for use with a Nissan car

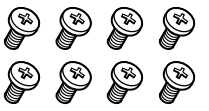


Crimp connector

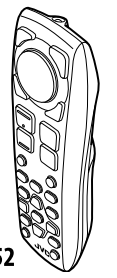


Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)

Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)



Remote controller



RM-RK252

Batteries

R03/LR03/AAA

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

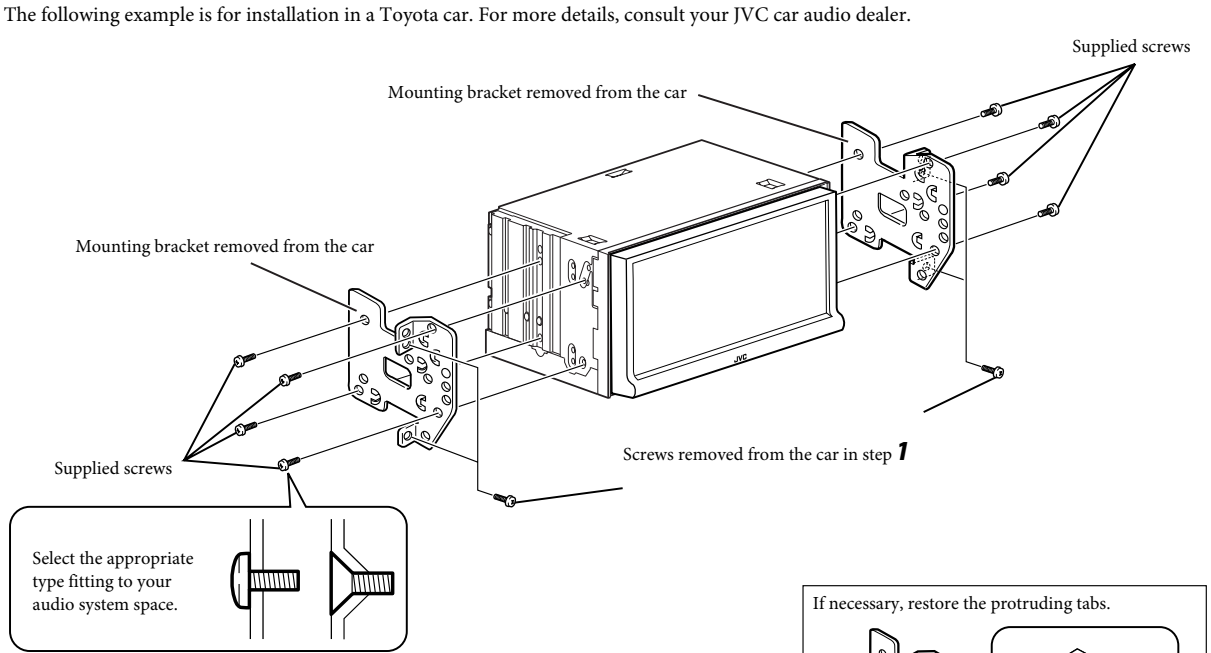
1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Attach the mounting brackets (removed from the car), to this unit (see below).

3 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 2 – 4.

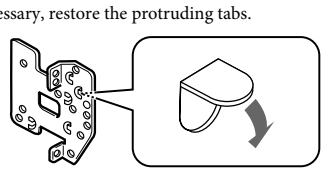
4 Install this unit using the screws removed in step ***1***.

The following example is for installation in a Toyota car. For more details, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

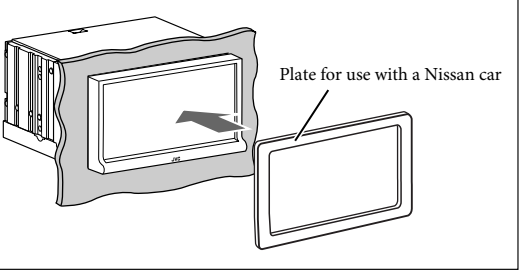


Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the supplied screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

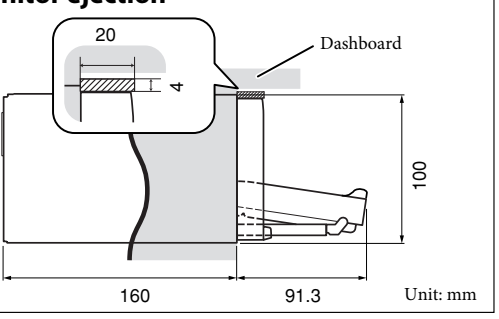
If necessary, restore the protruding tabs.



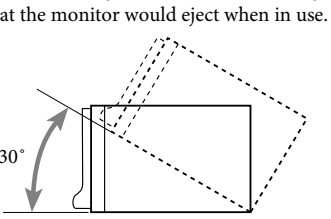
When installing the unit in a Nissan car



Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



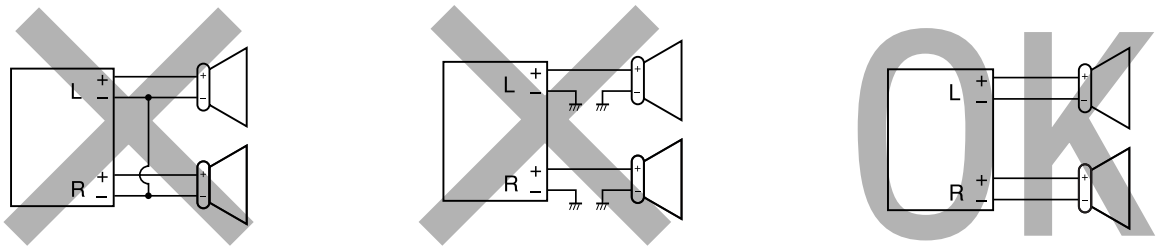
Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



Typical connections

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antenna terminal

DIGITAL OUT (see diagram D)

Rear ground terminal

This terminal is used for controlling an external device by using the touch panel of this unit. This unit outputs the positional information detected on the touch panel through the POSITION OUT terminal. Refer to the instruction manual of the external device for details. JVC does not guarantee proper operations for the external device connected to the POSITION OUT terminal.

POSITION OUT — Position data output

REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL — (see diagram B)

SUBWOOFER — SUBWOOFER—Only for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX724 (*see diagram* C)

Fan

15 A fuse

To external components (see diagram E)

VIDEO OUT (see diagram D)

VIDEO IN (see diagram D)

LINE IN (see diagram D)

REAR OUT (see diagram C)

1 To metallic body or chassis of the car — Black

2 To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V) — Yellow*2

3 To an accessory terminal in the fuse block — Red

4 To automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.) — Blue (POWER ANTENNA)

5 To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.) — Blue with white stripe (REMOTE OUT)

6 To car light control switch — Orange with white stripe (ILLUMINATION CONTROL)

7 To cellular phone system — Brown (TEL MUTING)

8 To parking brake (see diagram A) — Light green (PARKING BRAKE) — Crimp connector

Ignition switch — Fuse block

9

White with black stripe (–) — White (+) — Left speaker (front)

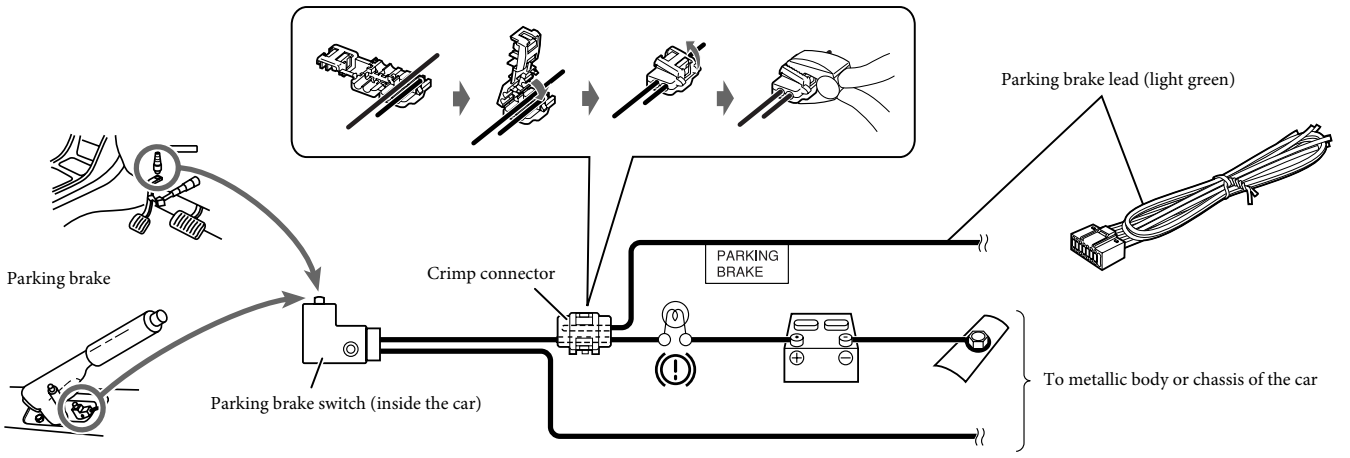
Gray with black stripe (–) — Gray (+) — Right speaker (front)

Green with black stripe (–) — Green (+) — Left speaker (rear)

Purple with black stripe (–) — Purple (+) — Right speaker (rear)

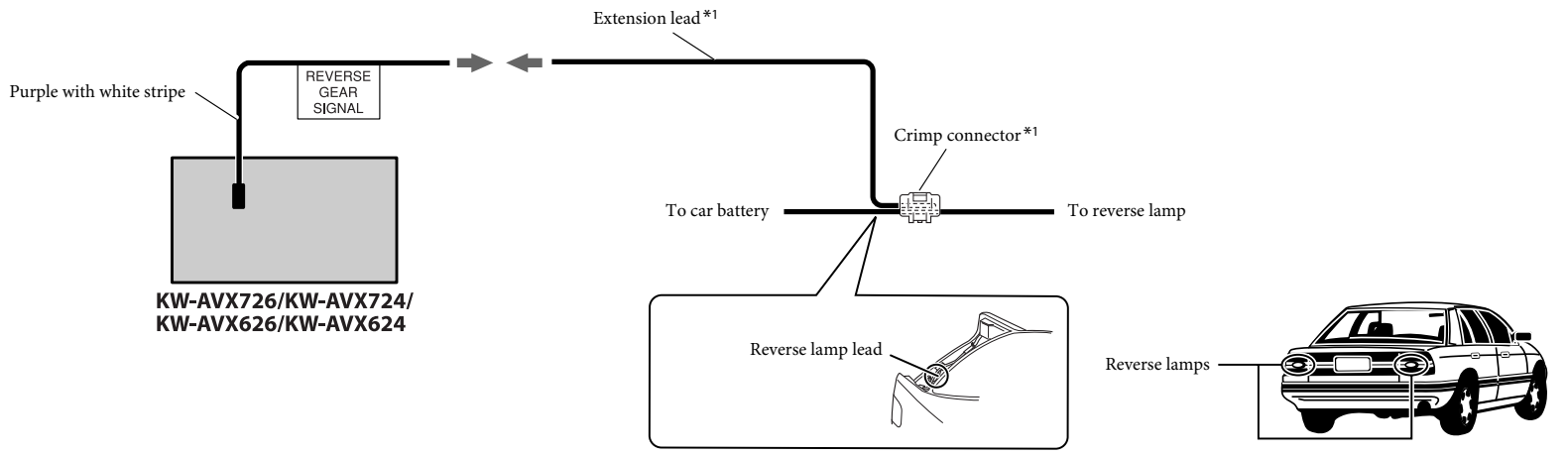
*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

A Connecting the parking brake lead



B Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera)

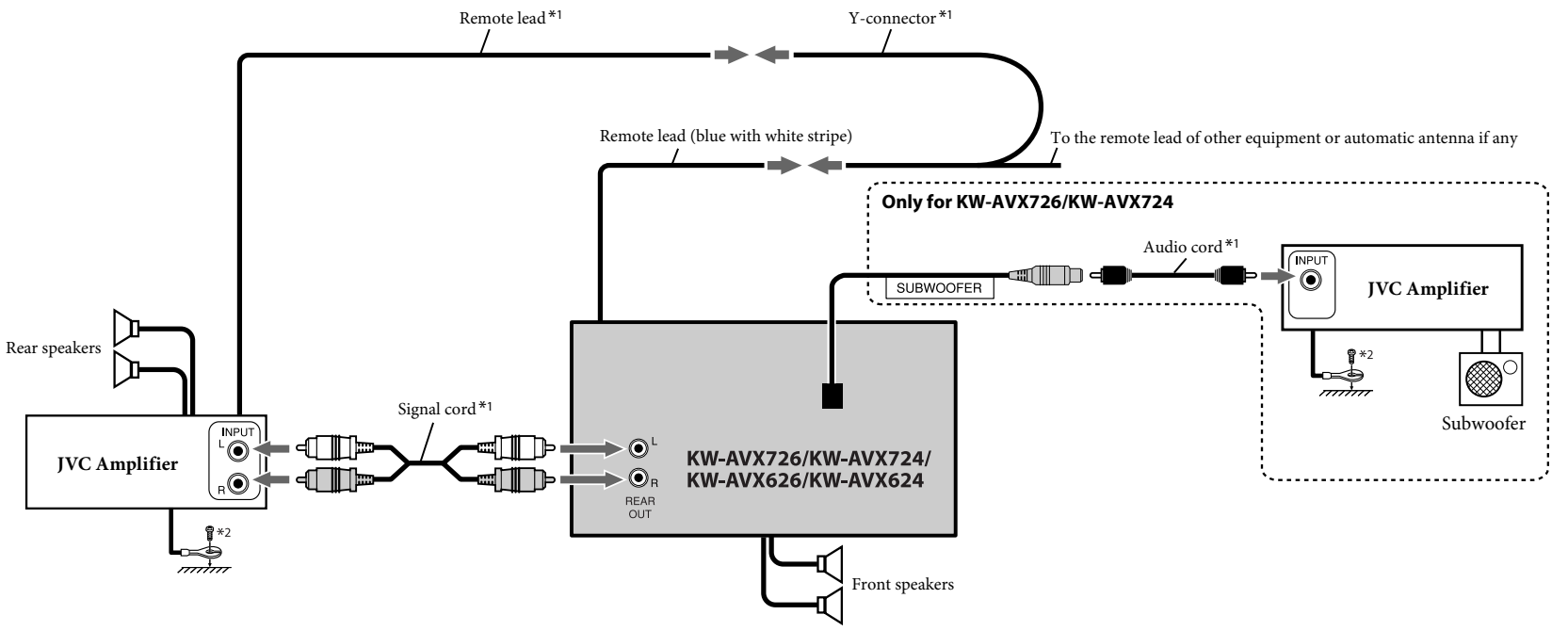
Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.



C Connecting the external amplifier and/or subwoofer

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

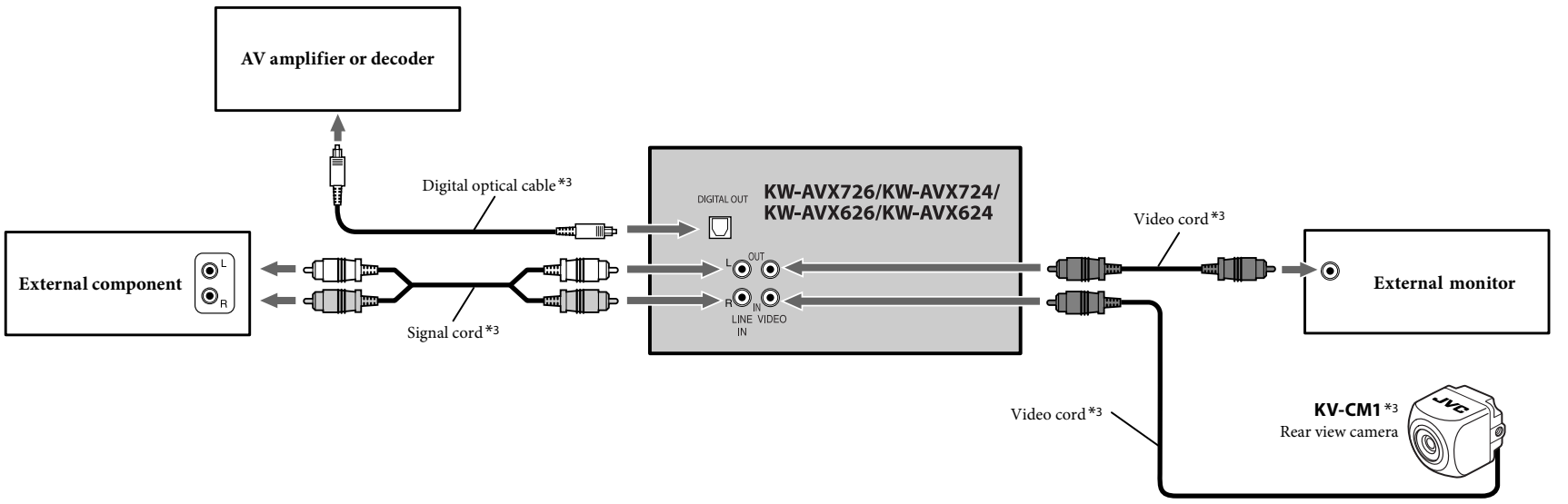


*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

TROUBLESHOOTING

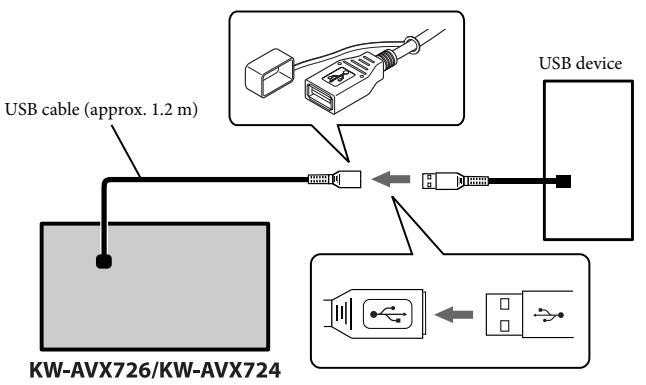
- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

D Connecting the external components



Only for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX724

Connecting the USB devices



You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.

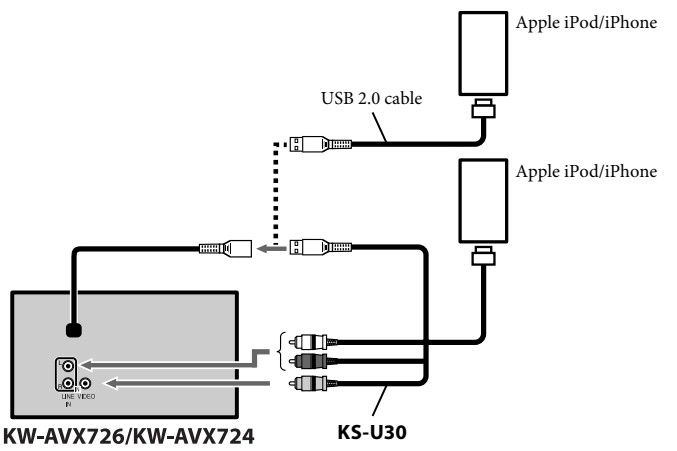
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:

- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied with the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied) *4



E Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

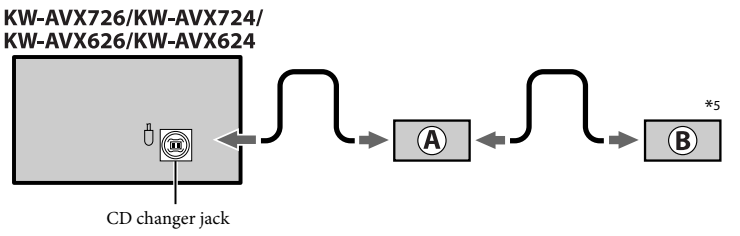
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

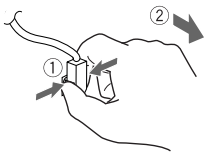
When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*5 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).

*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 15 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*5 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 16 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

JVC

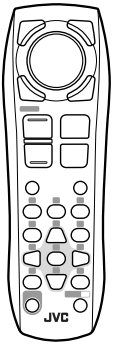
ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

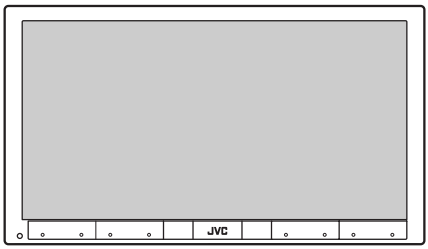
РУССКИЙ

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR
ПРИЙМАЧ ТА ПРОГРАВАЧ DVD-ДИСКІВ ІЗ МОНІТОРОМ

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625



MP3 WMA WAV



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 12.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 12.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 12.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ

GET0605-005A
[EU]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL OPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

[European Union only]

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

WARNINGS:
(To prevent accidents and damage)

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

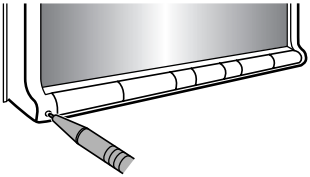
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

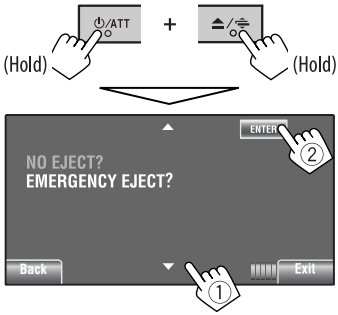
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device). (🔍 28, 40)*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *You can forcibly eject the loaded disc even if the disc is locked. To lock/unlock the disc, 🔍 32.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

How to read this manual

- < > is used to indicate the variable screens/menus/operations/settings that appear on the touch panel.
- [ ] is used to indicate the buttons on the touch panel.
- (🔍 page number) is used to indicate the reference page number of the related topics/operations/settings.
- The operations below are only for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***:
  – Radio Data System
  – DAB tuner
  – USB
  – USB iPod
- **Operation index:** To locate easily the desired operations/functions. (🔍 65)
- **Indication language:** English indications are used for the purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language from the <**AV Menu**>. (🔍 15)

ENGLISH

Playable disc type

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc	Playable
DVD • DTS sound cannot be reproduced.	DVD-Video (Region Code: 2) *1 ALL 2 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD-Audio/DVD-ROM	✗NO
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW *2, +R/+RW *3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD-Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4/DVD+VR/DVD-RAM	✗NO
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DTS-CD/SVCD (Super Video CD)/CD-ROM/CD-I (CD-I Ready)	✗NO
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4	✗NO

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs). DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.*

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs. "DVD" is selected as its disc type when a +R/+RW disc is loaded. +RW double layer discs are not playable.*

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

CONTENTS

How to read this manual 3
How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3
Playable disc type 4

INTRODUCTIONS

Basic operations 6
- Using the monitor panel/touch panel 6
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 9

Preparation 12

AV MENU

AV Menu operations 13

OPERATIONS

Listening to the radio 30
Disc operations 32
- Operation buttons on the screen 34
- Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 35

USB operations (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***) 39

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 40
- Connecting a new Bluetooth device 40
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 41
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 43

Listening to the CD changer 43
Listening to the DAB tuner (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***) 44
Listening to the iPod/iPhone 45
- When connected with the USB cable 45
- When connected with the interface adapter 46

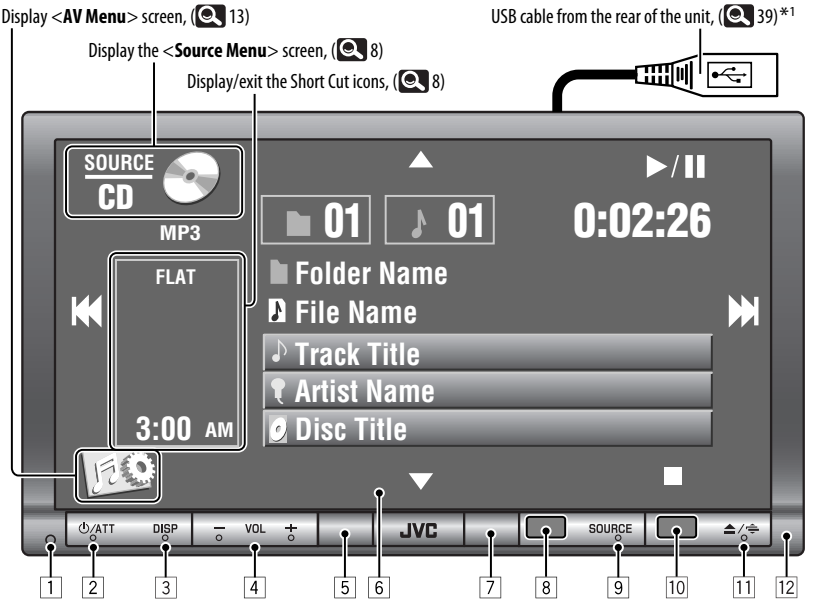
Using other external components 47
- AV-INPUT 47
- EXT-INPUT 48

REFERENCES

Maintenance 49
More about this unit 50
Troubleshooting 59
Specifications 63
Operation index 65

Basic operations

Using the monitor panel/touch panel



1 Resets the unit (3).

2
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound (if the power is on).
- Turns off the power. (Hold)

3 Changes the display information.*2

4
- Adjusts the volume.
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.*3

5 Remote sensor

6 Touch panel (see the following pages).
- Most of the touch panel operations are explained unless mentioned otherwise.
- The screen will turn off if no operation is done for about 10 seconds (depends on the <**Illumination**> setting). (19)

7 Motion sensor

8
- ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***:
  TP/PTY :
  – Activates/deactivates TA Standby Reception.*4
  – Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (Hold)
- ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625***:
  MENU : Displays <**AV Menu**> screen.

9
- Selects the source.*5
  TUNER → DAB*1 **→ DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) → USB***1/**iPod***1 **→ CD-CH/iPod/EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN →** (back to the beginning)
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Displays the <**Dial Menu**> screen.*6 (Hold)

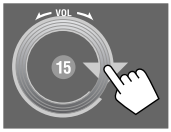
*1 – *6 : 7

10 • ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***:
iPod :
– Selects "**USB/ iPod**" as the source.
– Switches the setting between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE" (Hold)
• ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625***:
AV-IN : Selects "**AV-IN**" as the source.

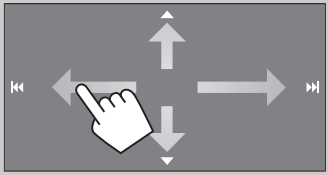
11 • Displays <**Open/Tilt**> screen.*7
[**Open**] : Opens the monitor panel.
[**Eject**] : Ejects the disc.
[**Close**] : Closes the monitor panel.
[**Tilt +**] : Tilts open the monitor panel.
[**Tilt –**] : Tilts close the monitor panel.
• Ejects the disc and display <**Open/Tilt**> screen. (Hold)
• Closes the monitor panel if the panel is opened.

12 Monitor panel

*1 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*
*2 *Available display information varies among the playback sources. (56)*
*3 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of other sources.*
*4 *The TP indicator lights up when activated; flashes when the unit tune into another station providing Radio Data System signals.*
When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby Reception also searches for DAB services.
*5 *Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made. (18)*
*6 *Only when Bluetooth phone is connected.*
*7 *Shaded items cannot be used.*



You can also adjust the volume by moving your finger on the touch panel as illustrated.



When you drag your finger on the touch panel, it functions in the same way as touching [▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭].

Touch panel and button illumination

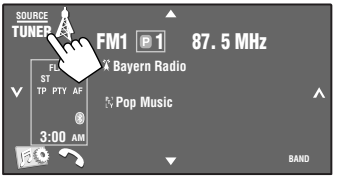
Dependable on the <**Illumination**> setting. (19)
• Turned off:
When no operation is done for about 10 seconds.
• Turned on again:
– When you touch the touch panel or move your hand nearby.
– When you use the remote controller.
– When a call/SMS comes in (for Bluetooth cellular phone).
– When the source automatically changed by receiving the Traffic Announcement /PTY programme.
– When the signal from the rear view camera comes in.
• Always turned on:
– When <**AV Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Source Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Open/Tilt**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Illumination**> is set to <**Normal**>.

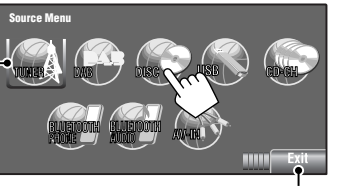
ENGLISH

Continued on the next page

<Source Menu> screen

You can also select the source using the touch panel.



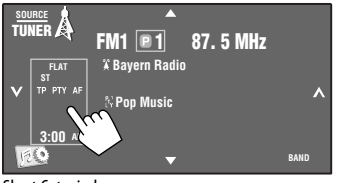


Current source

Exit

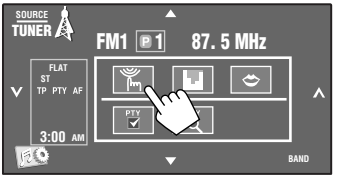
Short Cut icons

You can easily access some frequently used functions by using the Short Cut icons.

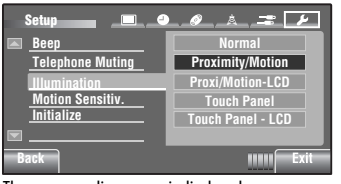


Short Cut window appears.

- To exit from the window, press the button again.



Press a Short Cut icon.



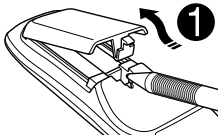
The corresponding screen is displayed.

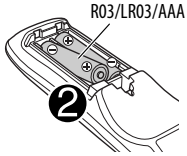
Available icons vary among the sources.

	Displays <**Illumination**> menu. (19)
	Changes the sound mode. (20)
	Turns on or off Track/Chapter Repeat. (24)
	Displays <**Aspect**> menu. (15)
PTY	Activates PTY Standby Reception. (23)
ANN	Activates Announcement Standby Reception. (23)
PTY	Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (31)
	Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (27)
	Displays <**Redial**> menu. (27)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the batteries





Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

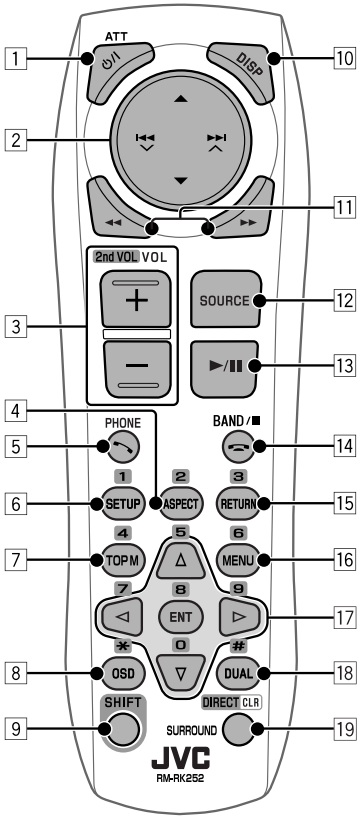
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



The following describes all the available operations for all the sources.

- USB/ iPod/DAB/Radio Data System operations are only applicable for ***KW-AVX726/ KW-AVX725***.
- To easily locate the available operations between different type of files, 35, 36.

1 **⏻/I ATT button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **▲/▼ buttons**

- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the preset stations/ services.

Continued on the next page

- **DISC/USB**:
  – DVD-Video: Selects the title.
  – DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  – **USB**/other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders if included.
- **CD-CH:**
  – Selects the folders if included.
- **iPod**:
  – ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲/▼/ |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ work as menu selecting buttons.)
    ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
    ▼: Confirms the selection.
  – ▼: Pauses or resumes playback.

|◄◄ ∨ / ►►| ∧ buttons

- **TUNER/DAB**:
  – Searches for stations/ensembles automatically if pressed briefly.
  – Searches for stations/ensembles manually if pressed and held.
- **DISC/USB/CD-CH**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.

  In menu selecting mode:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.

3 **VOL** (volume) **+ / – buttons**
- Adjusts the volume level.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**:
  – Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.

2nd VOL (volume) **buttons**
- Not applicable for this unit.

4* **ASPECT button**
- Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

5 **PHONE button**

Applicable only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

6* **SETUP button**
- Not applicable for this unit.

7* **TOP M** (menu) **button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

8 **OSD** (on-screen display) **button**
- Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "⚹."

9 **SHIFT button**
- Functions with other buttons.

10 **DISP** (display) **button**
- Changes the display information.

11 **◄◄/►► buttons**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Reverse search/forward search.

12 **SOURCE button**
- Selects the source.

13 ► (play) / ❚❚ (pause) **button**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Starts playback/pauses.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Answers incoming calls.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Starts playback.

14 (end call) **button**
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Ends the call.

BAND button
- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the bands.

■ (stop) **button**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Stops playback.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Pauses.

15* **RETURN button**
- VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16* **MENU button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

17* △/▽ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- **CD-CH**: Changes discs in the magazine.

◁/▷ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- DivX/MPEG Video: Skips back or forward by about 5 minutes.

ENT (enter) **button**
- Confirms selection.

18 **DUAL button**
- Not applicable for this unit.
- Does not function as "#."

19 **DIRECT button**
- **DISC/USB**: Enters direct search mode for chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track when pressed with SHIFT button (36).

CLR (clear) **button**
- **DISC/USB**: Erases the misentry when pressed with SHIFT button.

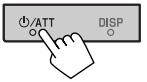
SURROUND button
- Not applicable for this unit.

* *Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.*
– **DISC/USB***: Enters chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track number after entering search mode by pressing SHIFT and DIRECT.* (36)
– **TUNER/DAB***: (Number 1 to 6) : Enters preset station/service number.*

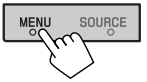
Preparation

Canceling the display demonstration and setting the clock

1 Turn on the power.



2 Display <AV Menu> screen.



(For *KW-AVX626/ KW-AVX625*)

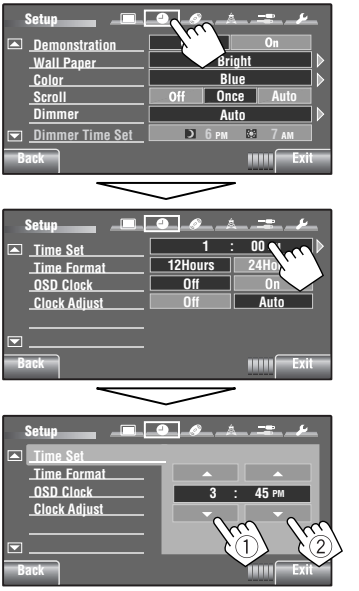
or

3 Display <Setup> screen.

4 Cancel the demonstration.

Select [**Off**].

5 Set the clock.



6 Finish the procedure.

AV Menu operations

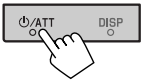
You can use the <**AV Menu**> for most of the operations and settings. The available menu items shown on the touch panel, depends on the selected source.

- Non-available items will be shaded.

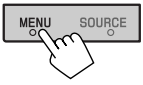
The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures.

- You can perform the operations/change the settings by following these steps unless mentioned otherwise.

❶ Turn on the power.

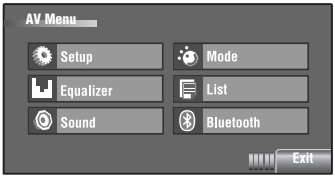


❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.



(For ***KW-AVX626/ KW-AVX625***)

or



Setup	:	14 – 19
Equalizer	:	20
Sound	:	21
Mode	:	22 – 25
List	:	25 – 26
Bluetooth	:	27 – 29

❸ Press the desired icon/item to perform the desired operations/settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

Indicates the next hierarchy level/setting item exists

Returns to the previous screen.

Indicates the remaining time before the current screen exit automatically.

Moves to the succeeding menu page

- Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting screen, but just selecting an option will change the setting.
- To exit from the setting, press [**Exit**].

Continued on the next page

Setup

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Demonstration**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen. (12)
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. ♦ **Bright, Future, Horizon, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. ♦ **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Once** : Scrolls the displayed information once. ♦ **Auto** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • Touching the information bar scrolls the text regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates dimmer. ♦ **Auto** : Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. *1 ♦ **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting (see below).
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On ( )/Off ( ) times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. ♦ **01** (bright), **02** (middle), **03** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust the brightness of the screen. ♦ **–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust *2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (common) and the other for "**AV-IN**." Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. (**–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**) ♦ **Bright** : Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. ♦ **Contrast** : Adjust the contrast. ♦ **Color** : Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. ♦ **Tint** : Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural, only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>. (15)

*1 *The ILLUMINATION CONTROL lead connection is required. (See the Installation/Connection Manual.)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (the media must contain pictures or videos) or "**AV-IN**."*

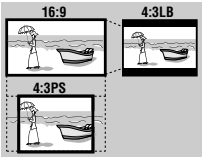
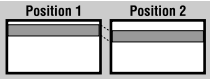
Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Aspect** *3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.

	Aspect ratio of the incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Panorama: For viewing 4:3 pictures naturally on the wide screen		
Auto:	• For "**DISC**": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

Display	**Language** *4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. ♦ **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português,** 简体中文**,** 繁體中文**,** 한국어**,** ภาษาไทย**, Türkçe,** عربي **,** فارسی • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. (56)
Display	**NTSC/PAL** *4, *5	Select the color system of the external monitor connected. ♦ **NTSC, PAL**
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **0:00** (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***), **1:00AM** (for ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625***)
Clock	**Time Format**	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. (12) ♦ **12 Hours, 24 Hours;** Initial **24 Hours** (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***), **12 Hours** (for ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625***)
Clock	**OSD Clock**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : The clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
Clock	**Clock Adjust** *6	♦ **Auto** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the Radio Data System signal. ♦ **Off** : Cancels.

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*
*4 *Turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*
*5 *For **KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625**.*
*6 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
	Menu Language *7	Select the menu language; Initial **English** (🔍 57)
	Audio Language *7	Select the audio language; Initial **English** (🔍 57)
	Subtitle *7	Select the subtitle language or erase the subtitle <**Off**>.; Initial **English** (🔍 57)
	Monitor Type *7 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. ◆ **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. ◆ **4:3LB** (Letterbox)/ **4:3PS** (Pan Scan) : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3.
	OSD Position *7 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. (🔍 38) ◆ **1** : Higher position. ◆ **2** : Lower position.
Disc	**File Type** *7	Select the playback file type when a disc/USB contains different types of files. You can store this setting separately for each source—"**DISC/USB**." *8 ◆ **Audio** : Plays back audio files. ◆ **Still Picture** : Plays back JPEG files. ◆ **Video** : Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. ◆ **Audio&Video** : Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration) *7	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	iPod Artwork *8, *9	While playing back a track (in "HEAD MODE"), Artwork recorded for the track is displayed on the monitor. ◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates Artwork display. To display the artwork, press DISP repeatedly. • It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.

*7 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*8 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

*9 *Skip the track so that your setting takes effect.*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Disc	**D.** (Digital) **Audio Output** *10	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (55) ♦ **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. ♦ **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. ♦ **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio.
	Down Mix *10	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks. ♦ **Dolby Surr.** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. ♦ **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) **Range Compres.** (Compression) *10	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. ♦ **Auto** : Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. ♦ **On** : Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	♦ **Auto** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ♦ **Wide** : Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional *11	When the received signals from the current station become weak, you can change the Network-Tracking Reception. (50) • When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to <**DAB AF**>, 18. ♦ **Off** : Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. ♦ **AF Reg.** (Regional) : Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. ♦ **AF** : Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up).

*10 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*
*11 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

Continued on the next page

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Tuner	**TA Volume** *12	When you activate TA Standby Reception (6), the unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. You can preset the TA volume level. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current volume level is lower than the preset level. ♦ **VOL 00** to **30** (or **50**) *13; Initial **VOL 15**
	Program Search *12, *14	Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in. If the signals from the FM Radio Data System preset station are not strong enough, this unit uses the AF data to tune in to another station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals. ♦ **On** : Select to activate. ♦ **Off** : Cancels.
	DAB AF *12, *15	**While receiving a DAB service:** When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM Radio Data System station broadcasting the same programme. **While receiving an FM Radio Data System station:** When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM Radio Data System station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service. ♦ **On** : Select to activate. ♦ **Off** : Cancels.
Input	**AV Input** *16	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. (47) ♦ **Off** : Select when no component is connected ("**AV-IN**" is skipped while selecting the source). ♦ **iPod (Off)** *12 : Select when connecting the iPod/iPhone using the USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone. (45) ♦ **Audio&Video** : Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. ♦ **Audio** : Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. ♦ **Camera** *17 : Select when connecting a rear view camera to display the picture (as it is taken). ♦ **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System. (48)

*12 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

*13 *Depends on the amplifier gain control settings.*

*14 *The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.*

*15 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*16 *Not selectable when "**AV-IN**" is selected as the source.*

*17 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <**Full**> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the monitor panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Input	**External Input** *18, *19	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. ♦ **Changer/iPod** *20 : CD changer, (43), iPod, (45). ♦ **External** : Any other than the above, (47).
Others	**Beep**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting *21	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Muting1, Muting2** : Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Illumination	You can turn off the screen and the light of the buttons on the monitor panel while turning on the unit. (7)

	Buttons on the monitor panel	Screen
Normal:	Always lights.	Always lights.
Proximity/Motion:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Always lights.
Proxi/Motion-LCD:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.
Touch Panel:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Always lights.
Touch Panel-LCD:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.

	Motion Sensitiv.	Change the sensitivity of the sensor for <**Illumination**> above. ♦ **Low, Mid, High**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. (3)

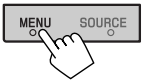
*18 *Not required for Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner. They are automatically detected.*
*19 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*
*20 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*
*21 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Equalizer

Selects a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- **Flat** (Initial), **Hard Rock, R&B, Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User1, User2, User3**

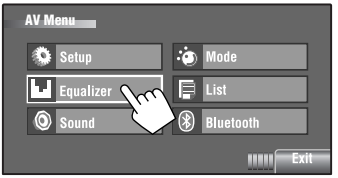
1 Display <AV Menu> screen.



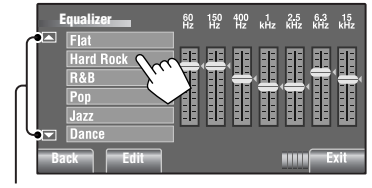
(For *KW-AVX626/ KW-AVX625*)

or

2 Display <Equalizer> screen.



3 Select a sound mode.



Moves to the other 6 sound modes.

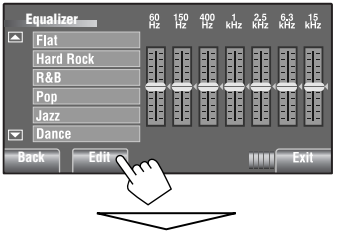
Ex.: When <**Hard Rock**> is selected

Storing your own adjustments

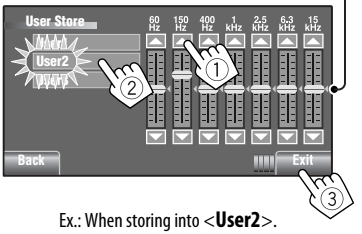
You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 above to enter the <Equalizer> screen.

2 Adjust the settings, then store.



Make adjustments by moving each bar directly.



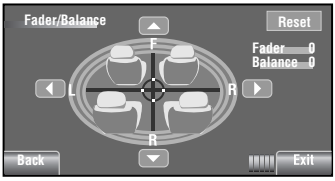
Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Fader/Balance	**Fader** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. • When using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0." ♦ **F6** to **R6;** Initial **0** **Balance** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. ♦ **L6** to **R6;** Initial **0** Press [▲/▼/◄/►] to adjust. 
Volume Adjust *1	Adjust and store the auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • <**Fix**> appears if "**TUNER/Bluetooth PHONE**" is selected as the source. ♦ **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00**
Subwoofer Level *2	Adjust the subwoofer output level. ♦ **–06 to +08;** Initial **00**
High Pass Filter *2	♦ **Through** : Select when the subwoofer is not connected. ♦ **On** : Select when the subwoofer is connected.
Crossover *2	Select the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. ♦ **80Hz, 120Hz, 150Hz**
Amplifier Gain *3	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. ♦ **Off** : Deactivates the built-in amplifier. ♦ **Low** : VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) ♦ **High** : VOL 00 to 50

*1 *For "**DISC/USB**": You can make the adjustments separately depending on the audio format—Dolby digital/MPEG Audio and the others.*

*2 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

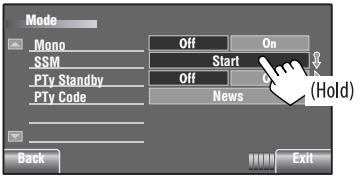
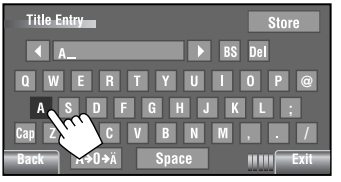
*3 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOL 30" if you change to <**Low**> with the volume level set higher than "VOL 30."*

Mode

Initial: **Underlined**

Selectable items when the source is:

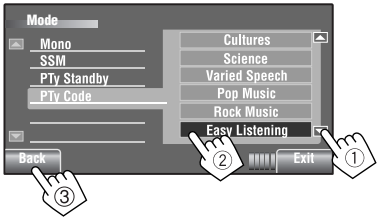
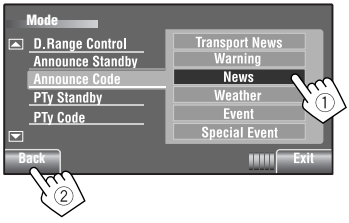
- **TUNER** : **Mono, SSM, Title Entry, PTy Standby** *2, **PTy Code** *2
- **DAB** *2 : **D.** (Dynamic) **Range Control, Announce Standby, Announce Code, PTy Standby, PTy Code**
- **DISC, USB** *2, **CD-CH, iPod** : **Repeat, Random**
- **iPod** *2, *3 : **Repeat, Random, Audiobooks**
- **AV-IN, EXT-IN** : **Title Entry**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Mono	When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive, activate monaural mode for better reception. ♦ **ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The MONO indicator lights up. ♦ **OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)	You can automatically preset 6 stations for each FM band. • Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band. 
Title Entry	You can assign titles (up to 16 characters) to 30 station frequencies *1 (FM and AM), **AV-IN**, and **EXT-IN**. (For available characters, 56.) Press [**Enter**] to show the <**Title Entry**> screen.  **[Store]** : Confirm the entry. **[◄/►]** : Move the cursor. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Cap]** : Change the letter case (upper/lower). **[A → 0 → Ä]** : Change the character set. **[Space]** : Enter a space.

*1 *For **KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625**.*

*2 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

*3 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
PTy Standby *4, *5	PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM. ♦ **ON** : Activate PTY Standby Reception. (The PTY indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another station providing the Radio Data System signals.) ♦ **OFF** : Cancels.
PTy Code *4	You can change the PTY code (50) for PTY Standby Reception. 
D. (Dynamic) **Range Control** *4	Some DAB services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy. • The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals. As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger. ♦ **OFF/DRC 1/DRC 2/DRC 3**
Announce Standby *4	Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite DAB service (announcement type) from any source other than FM/AM. ♦ **ON** : Activate Announce Standby Reception. (The ANN indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another service providing the related signals.) ♦ **OFF** : Cancels.
Announce Code *4	You can change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception. ♦ **Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News** 

*4 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

*5 *When a DAB tuner is connected, PTY Standby Reception also searches for DAB services.*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item

Repeat[*6]

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Repeat	DISC					USB[*7]		CD-CH		iPod	iPod[*7]
	DVD-Video	DVD-VR	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	JPEG	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	JPEG	CD	MP3	—	—
Chapter	●	●									
Title	●										
Program		●									
Disc								●	●		
Folder			●	●		●	●		●		
Track			●		●	●		●	●		
One										●	●
All										●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Chapter** : Repeats current chapter.
- **Title** : Repeats current title.
- **Program** : Repeats current program (for DVD-VR, not available during Playlist playback).
- **Disc** : Repeats all tracks of the current disc.
- **Folder** : Repeats all tracks of the current folder.
- **Track** : Repeats current track. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **One** : Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
- **All** : Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

Random[*6]

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Random	DISC		USB[*7]	CD-CH		iPod	iPod[*7,*8]
	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD	MP3	—	—
Folder	●		●		●		
Disc/USB (All)	●	●	●	●	●		
All				●	●		
Song						●	●
Album						●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Folder** : Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folders.
- **Disc/USB (All)** : Randomly plays all tracks. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **All** : Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs.
- **Song** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" [*9] of the iPod.
- **Albums** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

[*6] *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

[*7] *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

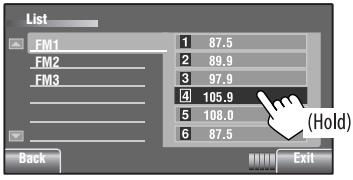
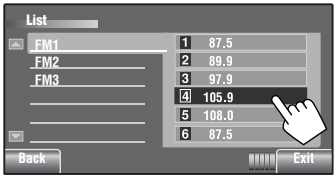
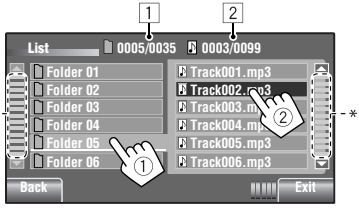
[*8] *Not applicable for video file.*

[*9] *You can activate <**Shuffle Songs**> in <**Search Mode**> menu. (26)*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Audiobooks*10, *11	You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" audio file in your iPod. ♦ **Normal** : Plays at normal speed. ♦ **Faster** : Plays faster. ♦ **Slower** : Plays slower.

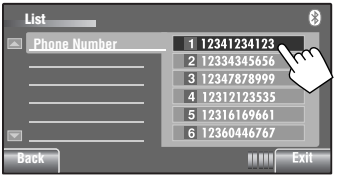
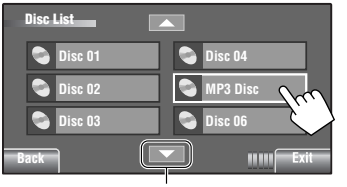
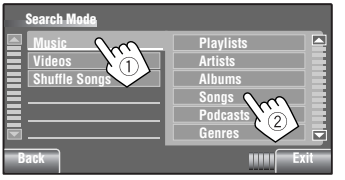
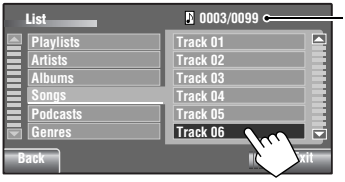
*10 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*
*11 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

List

Source	Operation/setting
TUNER/DAB*1	• **Storing a preset station/service manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [∧ / ∨] to tune in to the station you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  Ex.: Storing FM station in to preset number 4 The station selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset station/service on the list**  Ex.: Selecting a preset FM station
DISC/USB*1	**Selecting a track on the list** If a device contains folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.  1 Current folder list number/ total folder list number 2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*

*1 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

Continued on the next page

Source	Operation/setting
Bluetooth PHONE	**Selecting a preset phone number on the list to make a call** 
CD-CH	**Selecting a disc on the list**  To go to the other list If an MP3 disc is selected, Folder/ Track List appear. Select a track to start playback.
iPod *2, *3	**Selecting a track/video from <Search Mode>**  ◆ **Music :** Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, Podcasts, Genres, Composers, Audiobooks ◆ **Videos :** Video Playlists, Movies, Music Videos, TV shows, Video Podcasts ◆ **Shuffle Songs :** Playback starts if this is selected.  Current track (video) number/total track (video) number

*2 *For **KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725**.*

*3 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

Bluetooth

Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source for operations.

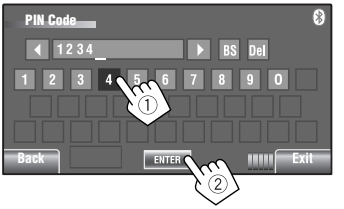
- Firstly, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to register and establish the connection with a device.

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Dial Menu *1	Select the method to make a call. ◆ **Redial** : Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. ◆ **Received Calls** : Shows the list of the received calls. ◆ **Phonebook** : Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. ◆ **Missed Calls** : Shows the list of the missed calls. ◆ **Phone Number** : Shows the phone number entry screen. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Preset]** : Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. **[Dial]** : Calls the entered number. ◆ **Voice Dialing** : Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system: → Speak the name you want to call.
Message *2	**If <Message Info> is set to <Manual>... (29)** Access the message list to read messages. ◆ **Unread** : Messages you have not read. ◆ **Read** : Messages you have read. ◆ **Unsent** : Messages you have not sent. ◆ **Sent** : Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.

*1 *Only for the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*2 *Selectable only when the source is "**Bluetooth PHONE**" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Open	**Preparation:** • Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function. • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Open**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. 2 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)*3. • You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).  You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only. [**BS**] : Erases the character before the cursor. [**Del**] : Erases the character on the cursor. [**Enter**] : Confirms the entry. 3 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen. Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit. • The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> or activate <**Auto Connect**> to connect the same device the next time.
Search	**Preparation:** • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Search**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.) 2 Select a device you want to connect. 3 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit. • Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code. 4 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

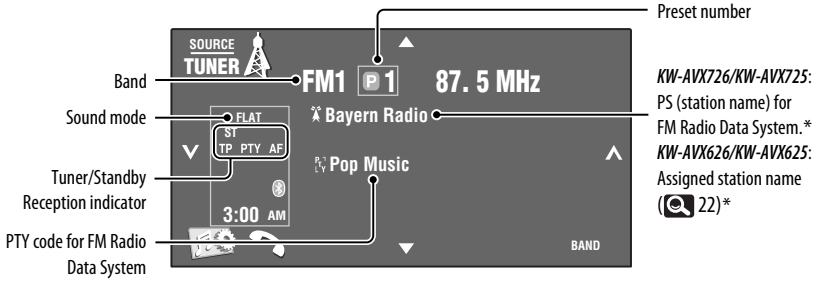
*3 *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item	
Special Device	Only for "NEW DEVICE." Select a device you want to connect from the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish the Bluetooth connection. Then, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to connect. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> the next time.	
Connect	Only for the registered devices. Select a device from the list of registered devices, establish the connection with it.	
Disconnect	Only for the connected devices. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.	
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Press <**Yes**> to confirm delete the registered devices.	
Settings Initial: **Underlined**	**Auto Connect***4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... ♦ **Off** : No Bluetooth device. ♦ **Last** : The last connected Bluetooth device. ♦ **Order** : The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer*5	♦ **Off** : The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. ♦ **On** : The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. ♦ **Reject** : The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info*5	♦ **Auto** : The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, 42. ♦ **Manual** : The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting*5	Adjust the volume of the microphone connected to the Bluetooth adapter. ♦ **01/02/03**
	Version	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." Not selectable when "NEW DEVICE" is selected.*

Listening to the radio



1 Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].

2 Press [BAND]. → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

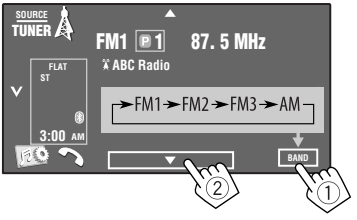
3 Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

* *If no PS signal comes in/no name is assigned, "No Name" appears.*

Selecting a preset station

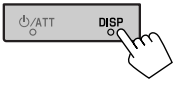
- Directly from the touch panel



You can also select a preset station using the remote controller (9) and from the Preset List (25).

You can display the Preset List by pressing [P 1] or holding [▲/▼].

Changing the display information



(56)

- To improve the FM reception, 22.
- To automatically preset stations into memory, 22.
- To manually preset stations into memory, 25.
- ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625***: To assign titles to stations, 22.

For *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725*:
The following features are available only for FM Radio Data System stations.

Searching for FM Radio Data System programme—PTY Search

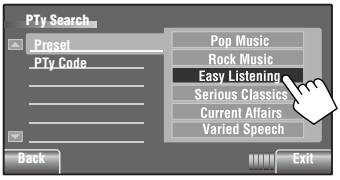
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code of your favorite programmes.

1 Display <PTy Search> menu.

2 Select a PTY code.

In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.

If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes. (🔍 50)



PTY Search starts.

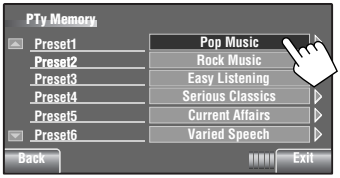
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

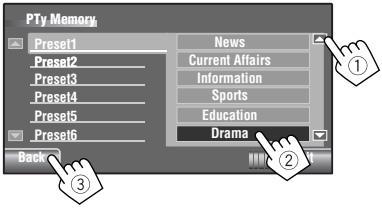
Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.

Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>

1





2

- To activate/deactivate PTY Standby Reception, 🔍 23.
- To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception, 🔍 23.
- To trace the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception, 🔍 17.
- To automatically select station—Programme Search, 🔍 18.

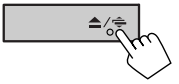
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, then playback starts (for some discs, the top menu of the disc appears).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

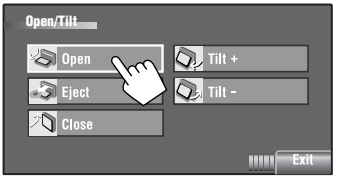
❶ Open the monitor panel.



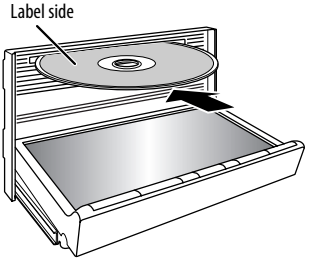
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷



❸ Insert a disc.

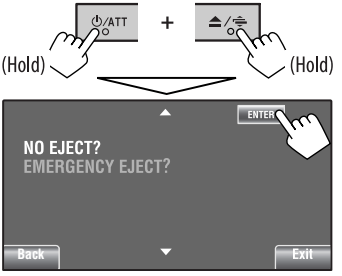


Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**Close**].

Caution:
Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

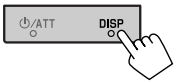


To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.
- Discs can be forcibly ejected. (🔍 3)

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (🔍 55)

- To select the playback mode, 🔍 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 🔍 25.

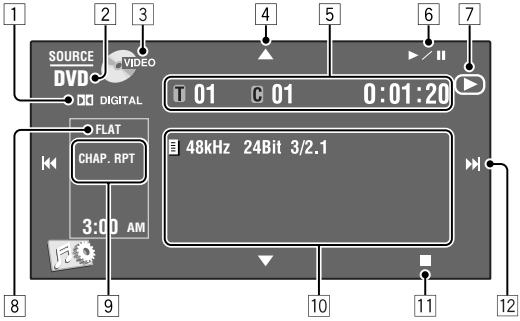
Changing the display information



Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (56)

ENGLISH

Ex.: While playing a DVD Video



1 Audio format—Dolby Digital, MP3, WMA, WAV
2 Disc type—DVD, DVD-VR, VCD, CD
3 Video format—DivX, MPEG, VR-PRG (program), VR-PLAY (playlist), PBC
4 [▲/▼]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects title/program/playlist.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV:
  – Selects folder
  – Displays Folder/Track List (Hold)

5
- DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
- DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
- DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
- JPEG: Folder no./Track no.
- VCD/CD: Track no./Playing time

6 [►/❚❚]
Starts playback/pauses
7 Indicates the button pressed (►/❚❚/■)
8 Sound mode (21)
9 Playback mode (24)
10 Disc/track information
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG: Folder name/file name
- CD Text: Title/artist name/album name
  – "No Name" appears for conventional CDs or if not recorded
- MP3/WMA/WAV: Current folder name/current file name/tag data (current track title/artist name/album title) if it is recorded

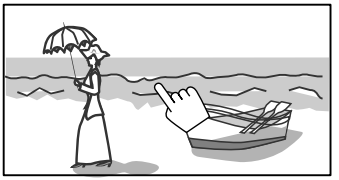
11 Stops playback
12 [|◄◄/►►|]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects chapter.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects track.
- DVD Video/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Continued on the next page

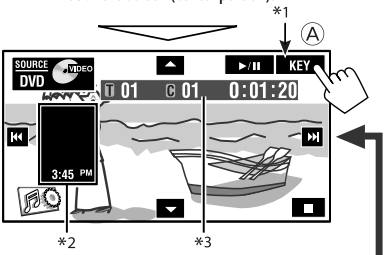
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

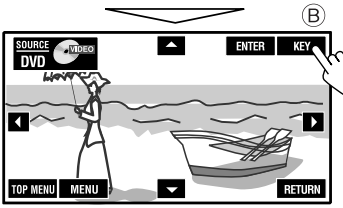
- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



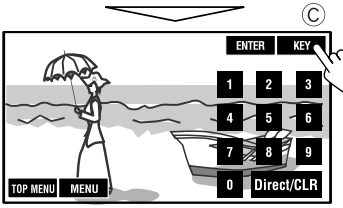
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To end the operations, touch the screen again.

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Displays <**Source Menu**> screen
[▲ ▼]	33
[► / ❚❚]	Starts playback/pause
[⏮ ⏭]	• Selects tracks • Reverse/forward search (Hold)
[ ]	Displays <**AV Menu**> screen
[■]	Stops playback

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD menu operation playback

[▲ ▼ ◄ ►]	Selects the menu items
[**ENTER**]	Confirms the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Returns to the previous menu or displays the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENTER**]	Enters numbers
[**Direct/CLR**]	• Switches between chapter/track entry and title/folder entry • Erases the last entry when you enter a wrong number

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENTER**]

*1 *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen*

*2 *Displays Short Cut icons. (8)*

*3 *Playback time. (33)*

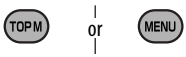
Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Button	DVD Video / DVD-VR	DivX/ MPEG/JPEG
■	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	• DivX/MPEG: Start play/Pause (if pressed during play) • JPEG: • Start play (Slide show: Each file is shown for a few seconds.) • Pause (if pressed during play).
◄◄ ►►	• Reverse/forward chapter search*1 (No sound can be heard.) • Slow motion*2 during pause (No sound can be heard.) – *DVD-VR: Reverse slow motion does not work.*	• DivX/MPEG: Reverse/forward track search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭	• Select chapter (during play or pause) • Reverse/fast-forward chapter search*3 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• DivX/MPEG: • Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*5 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold) • JPEG: Select file
▲ ▼	• DVD-Video: Select title (during play or pause) • DVD-VR: • Select program • Select playlist (during play or pause)	Select folder
◁ ▷	—	• DivX/MPEG: Skip back or forward the scenes by about 5 minutes
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	Select aspect ratio

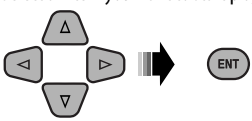
*1 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*2 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*3 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10
*4 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2 ⇨ ▶▶ 3
*5 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2

Using menu driven features... (DVD Video)

1 Enter the menu screen.



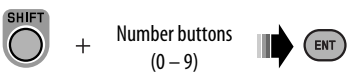
2 Select an item you want to start play.



Canceling the PBC playback... (VCD)

During stop...

1

2 

- To resume PBC, press TOP M/MENU.

Continued on the next page

Button	VCD	MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD
■	Stop play	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)
◄◄ ►►	Reverse/forward track search*6 • Forward slow motion*7 during pause. (No sound can be heard.) – *Reverse slow motion does not work.*	Reverse/forward track search*6	Reverse/forward track search*6
⏮ ⏭	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)
▲ ▼	—	Select folder	—
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	—	—

*6 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*7 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*8 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10

Searching for an item directly

1 While holding SHIFT, press DIRECT repeatedly to select the desired search mode.

DVD-Video: CHAP ➡ --- → TITLE ➡ --- → Canceled

DVD-VR: CHAP ➡ --- → PG/PL ➡ --- → Canceled

DivX/MPEG: TRACK ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

JPEG: FILE ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

MP3/WMA/WAV: Track Search --- → Folder Search --- → Canceled

VCD/CD: Track Search --- → Canceled

2 While holding SHIFT, press the number buttons (0 – 9) to enter the desired number.

3 Press ENT (enter) to confirm.

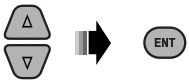
- For DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV, track is searched within the same folder.
- For DVD-VR, program/playlist search is possible during Original program playback (PG)/Playlist playback (PL).
- To erase a misentry, press CLR (clear) while holding SHIFT.
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

Using the list screens... (DVD-VR)

1 Display the Original Program screen.

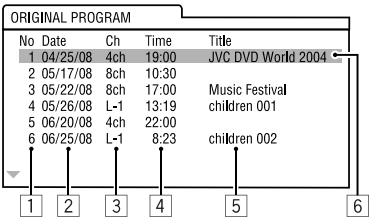
Display the Playlist screen.

2 Select an item you want to start play.

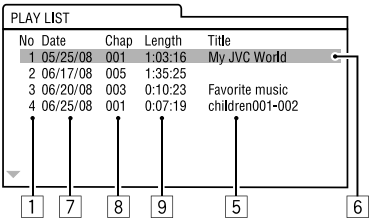


Original Program/Playlist screen

- **Original Program**



- **Playlist**



1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

(DVD/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD)

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

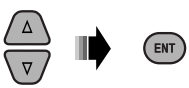
1 Show the on-screen bar (38).

(twice)

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...



- To cancel pop-up menu, press RETURN.
- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

Entering time/numbers

Press △/▽ to change the number, then press ◁/▷ to move to the next entry.

- Each time you press △/▽, the number increases/decreases by one value.
- After entering the numbers, press ENT (enter).
- It is not required to enter the zero and tailing zeros (the last two digits in the example below).

Ex.: Time search

DVD: _:_ _:_ _ (Ex.: 1:02:00)

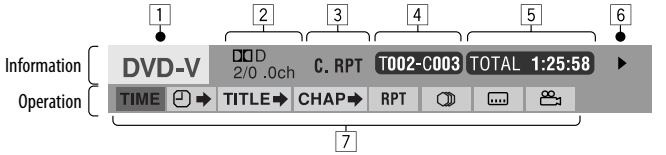
Press △ once, then ▷ twice to go to the third entry, △ twice, then press ENT (enter).

Removing the on-screen bar

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar

Ex.: DVD-Video



1 Disc type

2
- DVD-Video: Audio signal format type and channel
- VCD:PBC

3 Playback mode*1

DVD-Video:	**T. RPT**:	Title repeat
	C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
DVD-VR:	**C. RPT**:	Chapter repeat
	PG. RPT:	Program repeat
DivX/MPEG Video:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	F. RPT:	Folder repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random
	F. RND:	Folder random
JPEG:	**F. RPT**:	Folder repeat
VCD*2:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T002-C003	Current title/chapter
PG001 C002	Current program/chapter
PL001 C002	Current playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD-Video, elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist.)
T. REM	DVD-Video/DVD-VR: Remaining title/program/playlist time VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track*3
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track*3

6 Playback status

▶	Play
▶▶ / ◀◀	Forward/reverse search
I▶ / ◀I	Forward/reverse slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
	Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist or of the disc.)
TITLE	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play*1
RND	Random play*1
	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
	Change or turn off the subtitle language
	Change the view angle

*1 *For repeat play/random play, 24.*

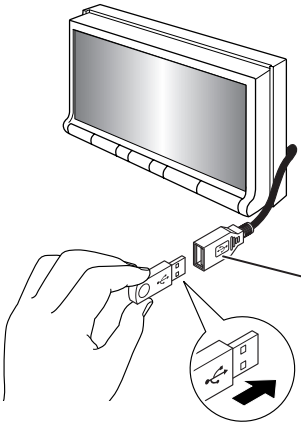
*2 *While PBC is not in use.*

*3 *Not applicable for DVD-VR.*

USB operations (for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725)

You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect the iPod to the USB terminal of the unit. For details of the operations, 45 – 46.

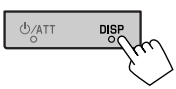


This unit can play JPEG/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV files stored in USB mass storage class device.

- You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on discs.
- All tracks in the USB device will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously when you reconnect the same USB device again.

- To select the playback mode, 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 25.

Changing the display information



(56)

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Now Reading" is shown on the screen.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, 53.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.
- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

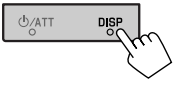
Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.
- Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

- To register a device using <**Open**> or <**Search**>, 28.
- To connect a special device, 29.
- To connect/disconnect/delete a device, 29.

Changing the display information



(56)

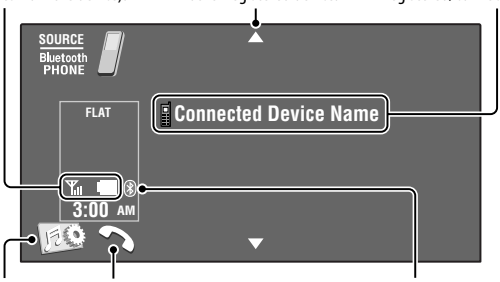
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only).

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

Status of the device
- Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device).

[▲/▼]: Selects the other registered device.

Connected device name
- When a cellular phone with audio function is registered/connected, appears.



Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (Hold)

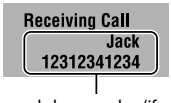
Display <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Appears on any source information screen when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

Bluetooth icon
- Lights up when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [Bluetooth].**
4. **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu). (27 – 29)**

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "**Bluetooth PHONE**" automatically.



Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...
The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (29)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...
To answer the incoming call
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

To end the call
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

- You can adjust the microphone volume, 29.

To make a call, use <**Dial Menu**>. (27)

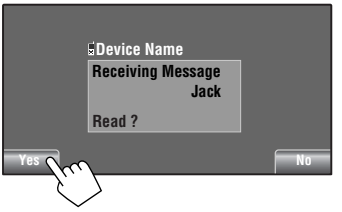
Continued on the next page

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (29)



To read the message, press [**Yes**].
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press [**No**].

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (27)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages, 27.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

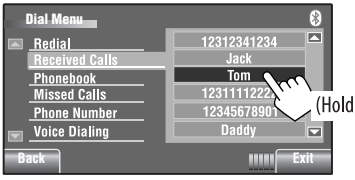
Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

Presetting the phone numbers

You can preset up to 6 phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>. (27)

2 Select a telephone number to store.

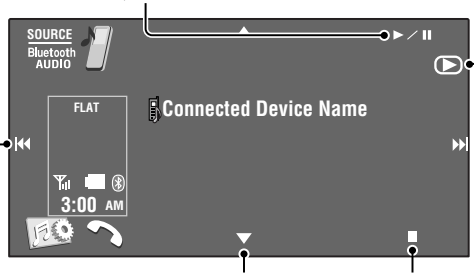


3 Select a preset number.

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

To call a preset number, 26.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



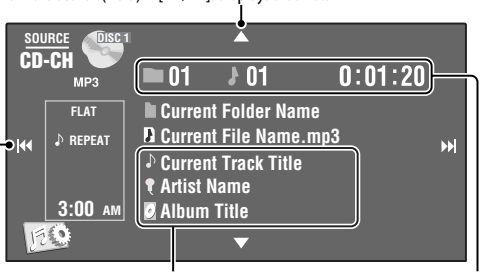
1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].**
2. **Start playback.**
   If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

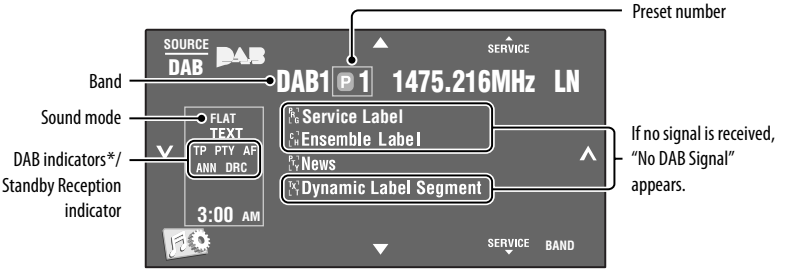
Ex.: While playing an MP3 disc
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects track
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold) [▲/▼]: Displays Disc List.



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [List].**
4. **Select a disc to start playing.**

To select the playback mode, 24.

Listening to the DAB tuner (for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725)



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3
3. **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**
   - Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
4. **Press [▲ SERVICE] or [SERVICE ▼] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

* *While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

- To improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy, 23.
- To manually preset services into memory, 25.
- To select a preset service, 25.
- To activate/deactivate TA/PTY Standby Reception, 6, 23.
  (You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.)
- To activate/deactivate Announcement Standby Reception, 23.
- To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception, 23.
- To trace the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF), 18.

Listening to the iPod/iPhone

You can connect the iPod/iPhone using the following cable or adapter:

To	Cable/adapter	To operate
Listen to the music	***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725:*** USB 2.0 cable (accessory of the iPod/iPhone) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below.
	Interface Adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the interface adapter" on page 46.
Watch the video	***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725:*** USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone, KS-U30 (not supplied) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below. • Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 18.

When connected with the USB cable

There are 2 control modes in "iPod" source.

- "HEAD MODE" : Control by this unit.
- "iPod MODE" : Control by the connected iPod/iPhone.
  Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**> when using KS-U30 to connect. (18)

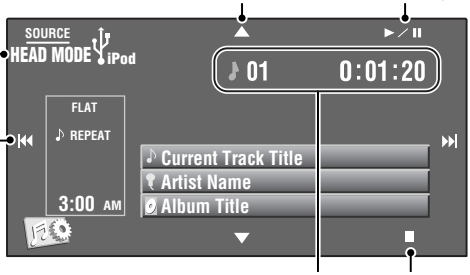
- Press and hold iPod to switch between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE."

The operation explained below are under "HEAD MODE."

- [▲ / ▼]: Moves to the previous/next item of a category*1
- Enters <**Search Mode**> menu (Hold)*2 (26)

Starts playback/pause

Indicates the controlling unit for playback



- [|◀◀/▶▶|]: Selects a track/video
- [|◀◀/▶▶|]:Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Track no./Playing time

Stops playback

*1 [▲ / ▼] *may not function depending on how you select the current track/video.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."*

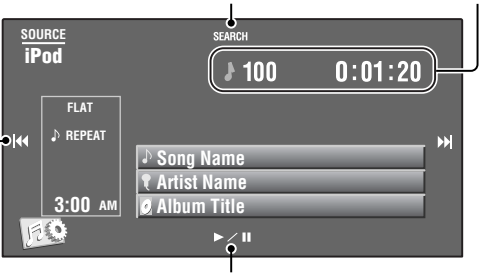
Continued on the next page

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.
- When you connect the iPod to the USB terminal, "iPod" is selected as the source and playback starts automatically.

2 Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to select a track/video.
You cannot resume playback for video sources.

The following operations/settings are only available in "HEAD MODE."
- To display the <**iPod Artwork**>, 16.
- To select track/video from <**Search Mode**>, 26.
- To select the playback mode, 24.
- To change the play speed of the audio books, 25.

When connected with the interface adapter



- [I◄◄/►►I]: Selects tracks
- [I◄◄/►►I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.

2 Press [I◄◄] or [►►I] to select a track.

Selecting a track from the main menu

1 Press [SEARCH] to enter the main menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select the desired item.
- Skips 10 items at a time if there are more than 10 items. (Hold)

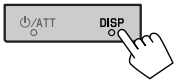
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [► / ❚❚] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [SEARCH].

To select the playback mode, 🔍 24.

Changing the display information

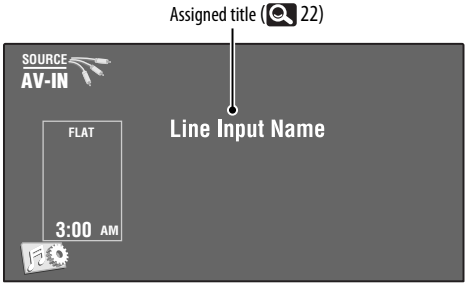


(🔍 56)

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN jacks.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].**

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons while watching the playback picture, 🔍 34.

Continued on the next page

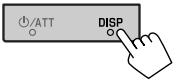
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN jack so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)

To view the navigation screen

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (56)

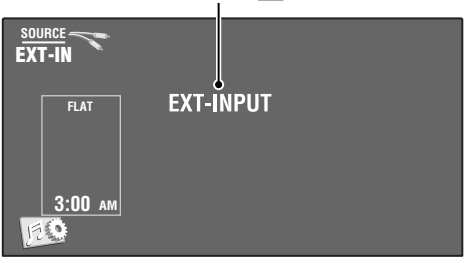


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (15)

When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**> (18)
- You can use the source "**AV-IN**" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN jacks.

EXT-INPUT

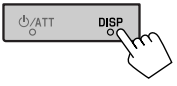
You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter, KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter, KS-U58 (not supplied).



Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].**
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

Changing the display information

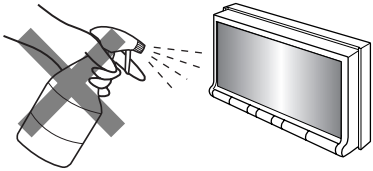


(56)

Maintenance

Caution on cleaning the unit

Do not use any solvent (for example, thinner, benzine, etc.), detergent, or insecticide. This may damage the monitor or the unit.



Recommended cleaning method:
Gently wipe the panel with a soft, dry cloth.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

Storing stations in memory

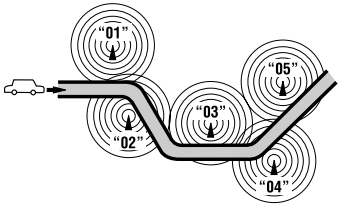
- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

FM Radio Data System operations

(for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725*)

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of Radio Data System signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- **Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception:**
  When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM Radio Data System station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (18)
- Available PTY codes:
  News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No Disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.

* *<.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders. The MPEG2 files with the <.mod> extension code cannot be played back when stored on a USB mass storage class device.*

- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- This unit can play back JPEG files that are at 32 × 32 to 8 192 × 7 680 resolution.
  It may take time to display the file depending on its resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

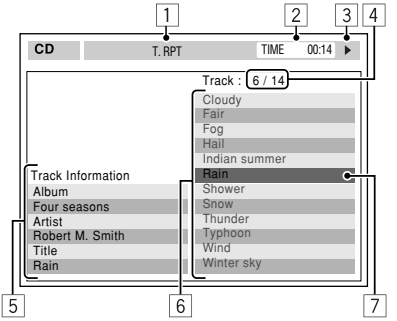
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Continued on the next page

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

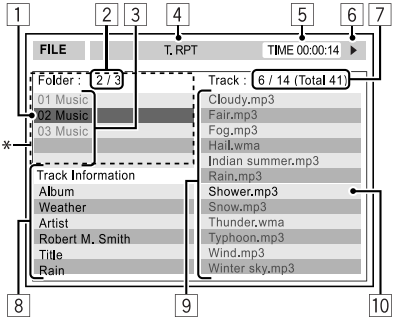
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**



1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

USB operations

(for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725*)

- If "No USB Device" appears after removing a device, reattach a device or select another playback source.
- When the USB device has no playable files, or has not been formatted correctly, "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.
- This unit cannot recognize a USB device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with two or more partitions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect only one USB device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- This unit may not recognize a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- When connecting with a USB cable, use the USB 2.0 cable.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of the devices.
- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- For MPEG1/2 files: The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 2 Mbps.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**:
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (🔍 29)
- **Error**:
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**:
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**:
  The unit is updating the phone book or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**:
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset08**:
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Continued on the next page

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

: Cellular phone
: Household phone
: Office
: General
: Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (26), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB (for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725*)

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod/iPhone operations

- You can control the following types of iPod/iPhone:
  (A) Connected with the USB cable:
  (for ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725***)
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)*1, *2, *3
  – iPod classic*1, *2
  – iPod nano *2, *3
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation) *2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod Touch*1, *2
  – iPod Touch (2nd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPhone/iPhone 3G*1, *2
  (B) Connected with the interface adapter:
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)
  – iPod classic
  – iPod nano
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)
  – iPod nano (4th Generation) *4

*1 *To watch the video with its audio, connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*2 *"iPod MODE" is available,* 45.
*3 *To listen to the sound in "iPod MODE," connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*4 *It is not possible to charge the battery through this unit.*

- If the iPod does not play correctly, update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the monitor. This unit can display up to 40 characters when using the interface adapter and up to 128 characters when using the USB 2.0 cable or USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30).

Notice:
When operating an iPod/iPhone, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

For the USB connection:
When <**iPod Artwork**> is set to <**On**>:
Do not press any keys during the first 5 seconds or more of playing back any track containing an Artwork*. It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
* *The picture displayed on the iPod's/iPhone's screen while playing back a track.*

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- DTS sound cannot be emitted.
- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (17)

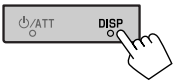
Playback disc \ <D. Audio Output>		Output signals		
		<Stream>	<Dolby D>	<PCM>
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Continued on the next page

Display information

- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

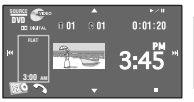


Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex.: When the playback source is a DVD video disc

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen



Playback picture and source information screen*1

Navigation screen*2

*1 *When the source is "iPod," the Artwork of the song is shown if the song has an Artwork data. (16)*
While MP3/WMA file is played, "Jacket picture" is shown if the file has the tag data including "Jacket picture."

*2 *When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)*

Characters you can enter for titles

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (22)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ł	Ĺ	Ij	ð								

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ł	ı	ij		

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

JVC bears no responsibility for any loss of data in an iPod/iPhone and/or USB mass storage class device while using this unit.

Continued on the next page

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX® is a registered trademark of DivX, Inc., and is used under license.
- Plays DivX® video:
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified or DivX Ultra Certified device that plays DivX video.
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX® Certified device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. First generate the DivX VOD registration code for your device and submit it during the registration process. [Important: DivX VOD content is protected by a DivX DRM (Digital Rights Management) system that restricts playback to registered DivX Certified devices. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- "Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- "Works with iPhone" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied for the adapters used with the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).
- Messages (enclosed in “ ”) in the tables below are shown in the language selected on <**Language**>. (15) Messages described here are in the language of this manual.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (14)
	• “Position Error Push Open Key” appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press [**OPEN/TILT**].
	• “Mecha Error Push Reset” appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• “No Signal” appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN jack. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only VOL +/– and ⏏/⇕ work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• The touch panel does not respond properly. • <**Illumination**> function does not work properly.	• Keep your hands and the touch panel clean and dry. • Eliminate static electricity and do not place magnetic items near the unit. • Leave the unit until the temperature becomes stable in the car. • A rubber mat on the floor may cause this symptom. In this case, do not use the rubber mat.
TUNER	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (25)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (32)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (14)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
USB (for *KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725*)	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• "Now Reading..." keeps flashing on the screen.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Copy tracks to the USB device.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, 56.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks are not properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again, and try again.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device.
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (29)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit (supplied with Bluetooth Adapter) position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped while using a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "NEW DEVICE" cannot be selected for "**Bluetooth AUDIO**."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "NEW DEVICE," disconnect it. (29)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (🔍 3)
DAB tuner (for *KW-AVX726/ KW-AVX725*)	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit.(🔍 3)
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod /iPhone	• The iPod/iPhone does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version of the iPod/iPhone. • Charge the battery of the iPod/iPhone. • Check whether "HEAD MODE" or "iPod MODE" is correctly selected. (🔍 45) • Reset the iPod/iPhone.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• No operations are available when playing back a track containing Artwork.	Operate the unit after the Artwork is loaded. (🔍 16)
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
	• "Restricted Device" appears on the screen.	Check whether the connected iPod is compatible with this unit. (🔍 54)
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (🔍 14)

Specifications

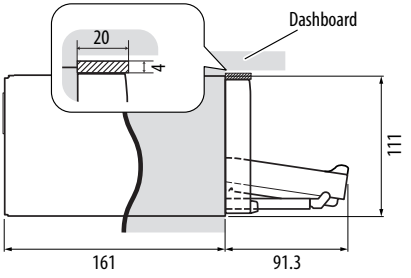
AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 1.0% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level: • LINE OUT (REAR) • SUBWOOFER (for ***KW-AVX726/ KW-AVX725***):	Line-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:	• ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725:*** NTSC/PAL • ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625:*** PAL	
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	• LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input • USB input (for ***KW-AVX726/ KW-AVX725***)
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, DIGITAL OUT (optical), POSITION OUT
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	• ***KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725:*** (MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz • ***KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625:*** 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	9.3 dBf (0.8 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	40 dB
	AM/MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/40 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 μV

Continued on the next page

DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
USB (for KW-AVX726/ KW AVX725)	USB Standards:	USB 2.0 Full Speed	
	Data Transfer Rate	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
	Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
	Max. Current:	DC 5 V ⎓ 500 mA	
MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 161 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 22 mm
	Mass (approx.):		3.3 kg (including trim plate and sleeve)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Operation index

General

Reset 3, 6
Volume 6, 7
AV Menu 6, 13
Source 6, 8
Short Cut 8
RM-RK252 ..... 9, 10, 11, 35, 36
Clock 12, 15
Display demonstration 12, 14

Tuner

Listening to the radio (FM/AM) 6, 11, 30
Auto/manual search 10, 22
Select preset station 9, 25
Store station (automatically/manually) 22, 25
Improve FM reception 22
Assign title 22
PTY Search 31
Store programme type 31
PTY Standby Reception 23
PTY codes 23, 50
Network-Tracking Reception 17
Programme Search 18

Disc

Open/close 7, 32
Eject 3, 7
Lock/unlock disc 32
Playable disc type 4
Display information 33
Repeat/random play 24
Select track/folder 10, 25, 35, 36
Select title/program/playlist 10, 35
Start/stop/pause/resume playback 11, 35, 36
Search/skip 10, 11, 35, 36
OSD 37, 38
PBC playback 11, 35

USB

Attach/detach 39
Start/pause playback 11, 39
Repeat/random play 24

Bluetooth

Connect/disconnect/delete 28, 29, 40
Make a call 27, 41, 42
Answer/end call 10, 11, 29, 41
Read SMS 29, 42
Microphone volume 29
Preset phone number 42

CD changer

Start playback 26, 43
Repeat/random play 24

DAB

Listening to the DAB service 44
Improve listening 23
Preset service 25
TA/PTY Standby Reception 6, 23
Announcement Standby Reception 23
DAB AF 18

iPod

Connect 45, 46
Start/pause playback 11, 45
Head Mode/iPod Mode 7, 45
Repeat/random play 24
Audiobooks 25
Select track 10, 26, 46

External component

AV-INPUT 47
EXT-INPUT 48

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

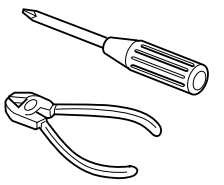
JVC

EN, FR, RU

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0109DTSMDTJEIN

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625



Installation/Connection Manual
Manuel d'installation/raccordement
Руководство по установке/подключению

GET0605-011A
[EU]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN, FR, RU
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

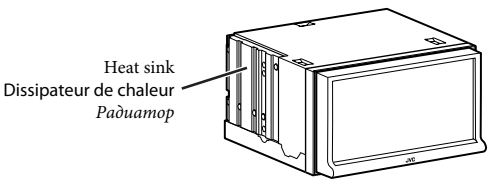
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:
  - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
  - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
  - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.
- Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein à main n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake" (Frein à Main) s'affiche sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.
  - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**).
  Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez <Amplifier Gain> pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 21 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. *Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.*

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

- *НЕ устанавливайте устройства и не прокладывайте провода в местах, где:*
  - *возникает препятствие для функционирования руля и рычага переключения скоростей, так как это может привести к аварии;*
  - *возникает препятствие срабатыванию устройств безопасности, например, пневмоподушки, что может привести к несчастному случаю со смертельным исходом;*
  - *может ухудшиться обзор.*
- *НЕ используйте устройство, когда управляете рулем; это может привести к аварии.*
- *Водителю не следует смотреть на монитор во время вождения. Это может быть опасно и может стать причиной аварии.*
- *Если данное устройство используется во время поездки на автомобиле, следует, не отвлекаясь, следить за дорогой, иначе может произойти дорожно-транспортное происшествие.*
- *Если стояночный тормоз не включен, на мониторе появляется сообщение "Parking Brake" и изображение воспроизведения отображаться не будет.*
  - *Это предупреждение появляется только в том случае, если провод стояночного тормоза подключен к стояночной тормозной системе автомобиля.*

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания по электрическим подключениям:

- *Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.*
- *Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от* **4 Ω до 8 Ω***).*
  Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим <Amplifier Gain>, чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 21).
- *Для предотвращения ороткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.*
- *Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.*

Parts list for installation and connection

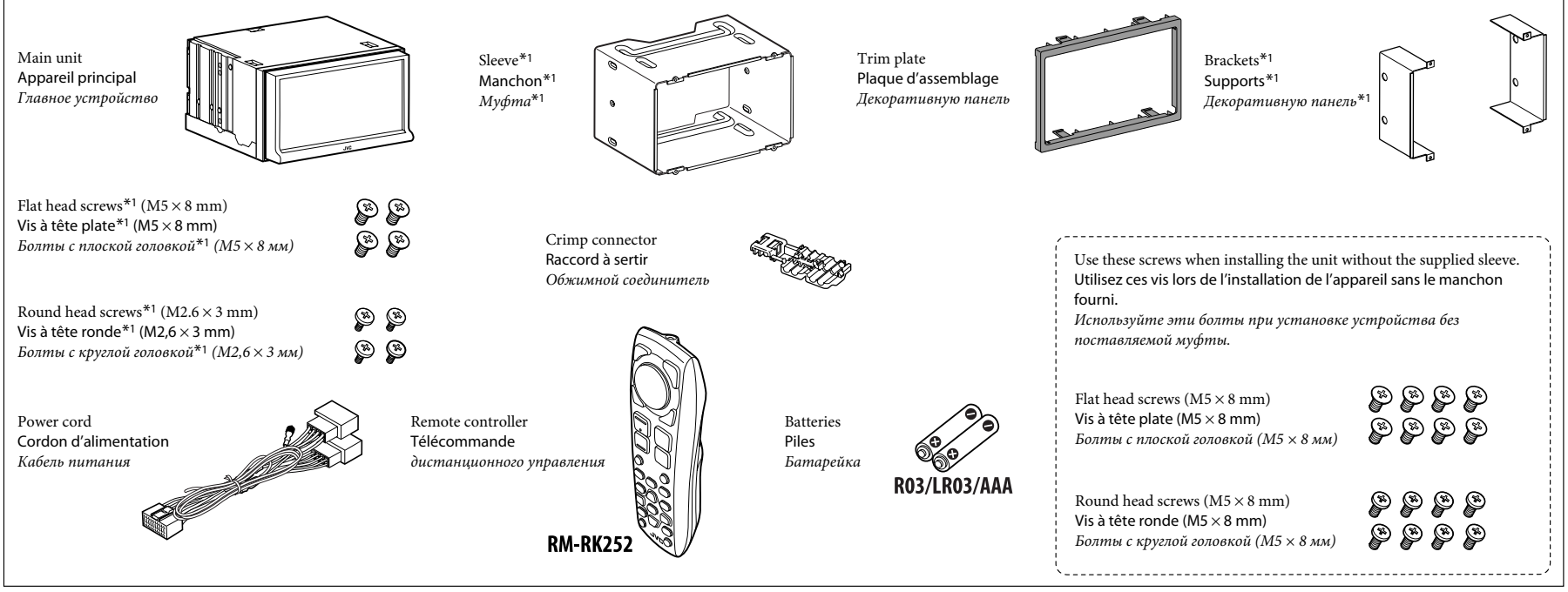
If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

Список деталей для установки и подключения

При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.



*1 Fitted to the main unit when shipped.

*1 Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.

*1 *Закреплено на основном устройстве при поставке.*

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.

2 Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.

3 Attach the brackets to the main unit.
- Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

4 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 – 6.

5 Install the main unit in the sleeve.

6 Attach the trim plate.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.
- Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.
- Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.

1 Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.
Remarque: Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.

2 Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.

3 Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.
- Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis— (M5 × 8 mm). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.

4 Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.
- Référez-vous aux pages 3 – 6.

5 Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.

6 Fixez la plaque d'assemblage.

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Однако необходимо выполнить настройки, соответствующие конкретному автомобилю. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобильных систем JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- *Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.*

Предостережение во время установки

- *При установке устройства используйте только прилагаемые болты в соответствии с инструкцией. В случае использования других болтов существует вероятность, что детали могут быть ненадежно закреплены или повреждены.*
- *Аккуратно затягивайте болты,чтобы не пережать соединительные кабели.*
- *При установке для обеспечения правильной вентиляции не закрывайте вентилятор на задней панели.*

1 *Извлеките аудиосистему, изначально установленную в автомобиле, вместе с монтажными кронштейнами.*
Примечание: *Не теряйте винты и детали, извлеченные из автомобиля, поскольку они будут использоваться в дальнейшем.*

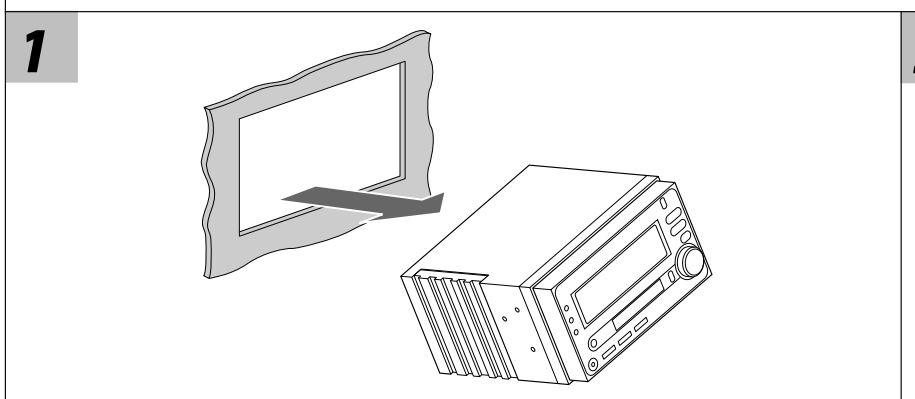
2 *Вмонтируйте муфту в приборную панель автомобиля.*

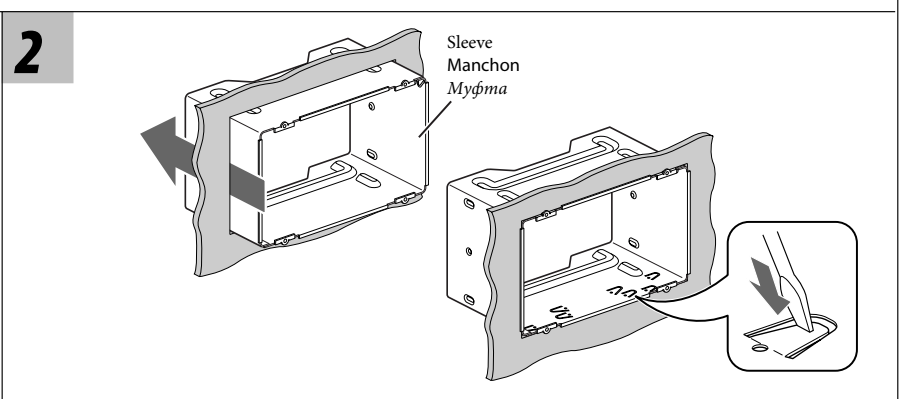
3 *Прикрепите кронштейны к главному устройству.*
- *Используйте болты с плоской головкой (M5 × 8 мм), которые входят в комплект поставки. При использовании более длинных болтов можно повредить устройство.*

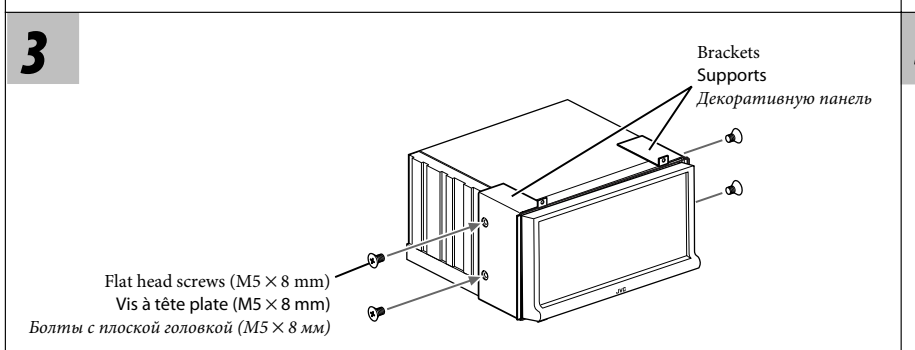
4 *Выполните необходимые электрические соединения.*
- *См. стр. 3 – 6.*

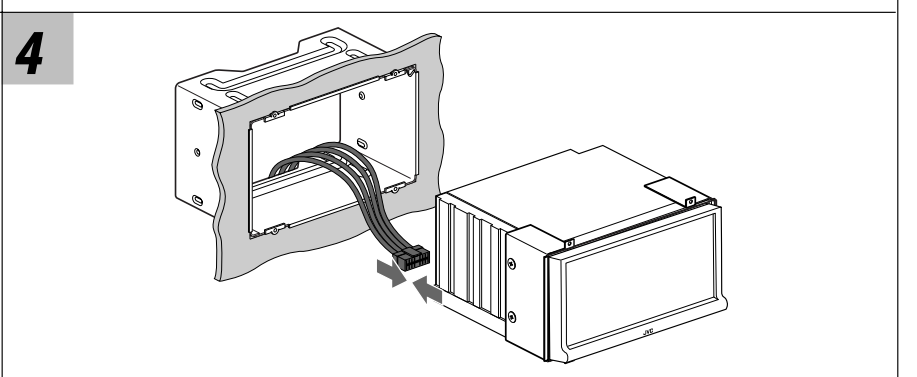
5 *Установите главное устройство в муфту.*

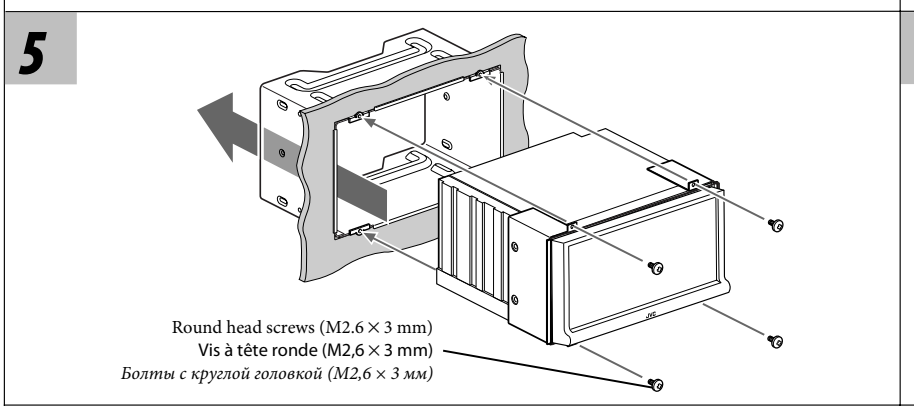
6 *Прикрепите декоративную панель.*

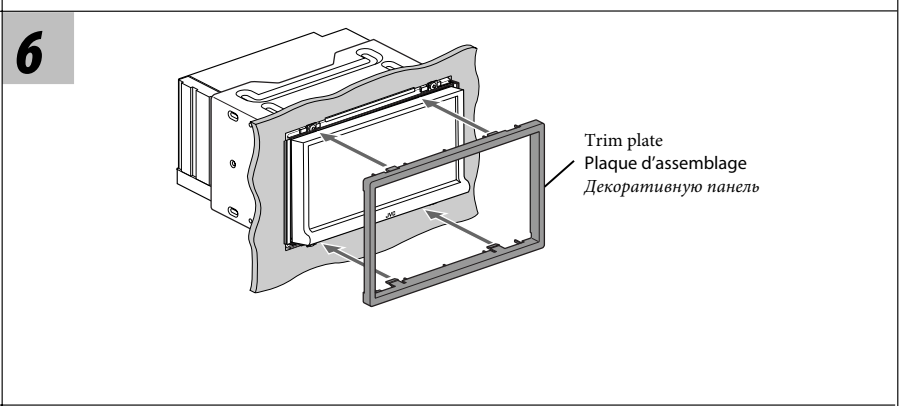




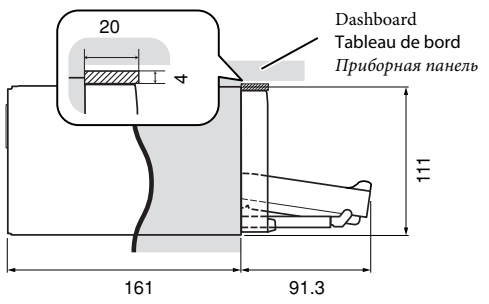






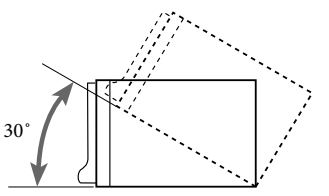


Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
Espace nécessaire pour l'installation et l'éjection du moniteur
Необходимое пространство для установки и извлечения монитора



Unit: mm
Unité: mm
Единицы измерения: мм

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30 °, принимая во внимание то,что при использовании монитор будет выдвигаться.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

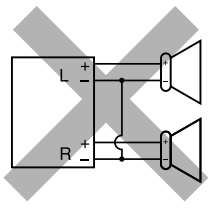
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

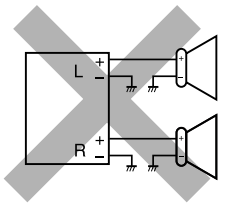
RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

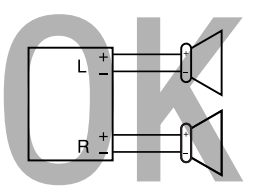
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:
- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:
- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- *ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.*

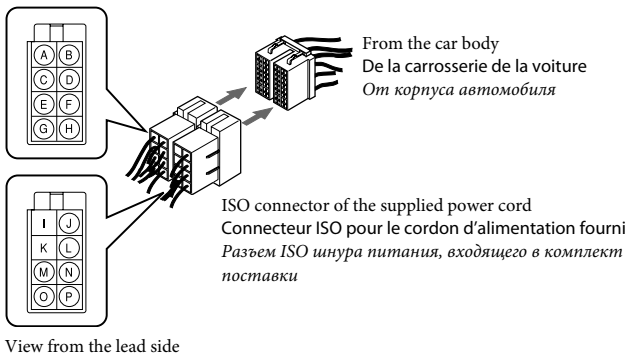






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.*



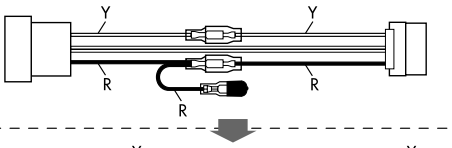
For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall) / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- *Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.*

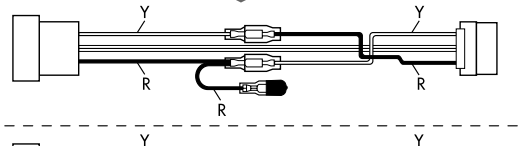
Original wiring
Câblage original
Исходная схема соединений



Y: Yellow / Jaune / *Желтый*

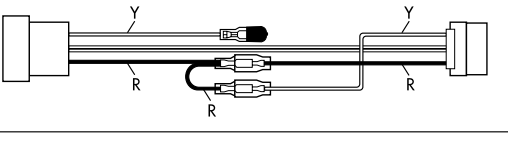
R: Red / Rouge / *Красный*

Modified wiring 1
Câblage modifié 1
Преобразованная схема соединений 1

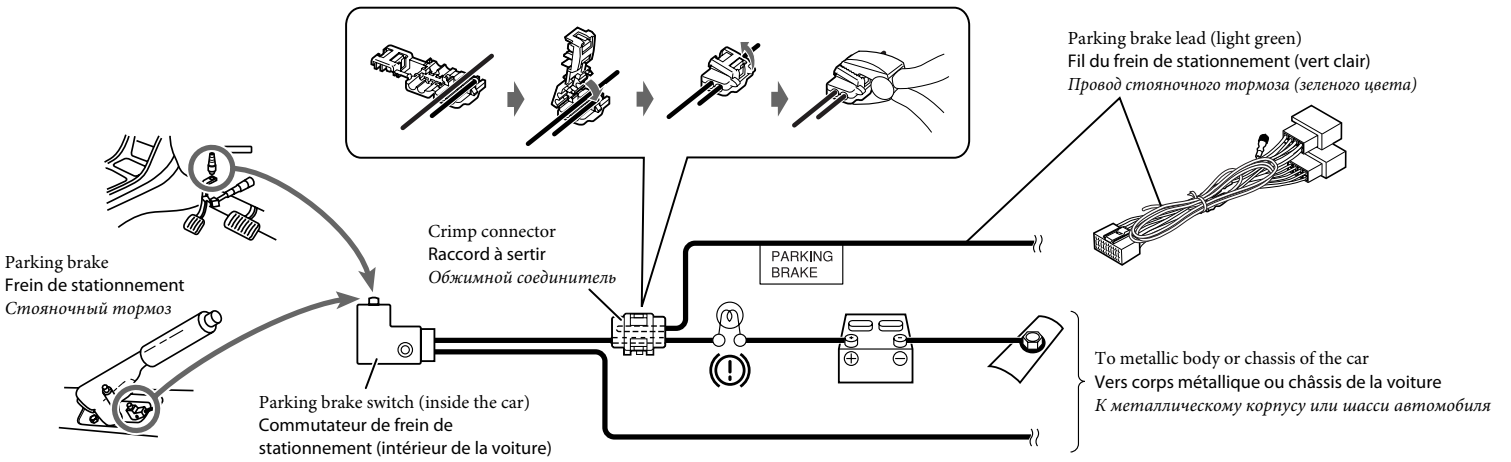


Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.

Modified wiring 2
Câblage modifié 2
Преобразованная схема соединений 2



Connecting the parking brake lead / Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза

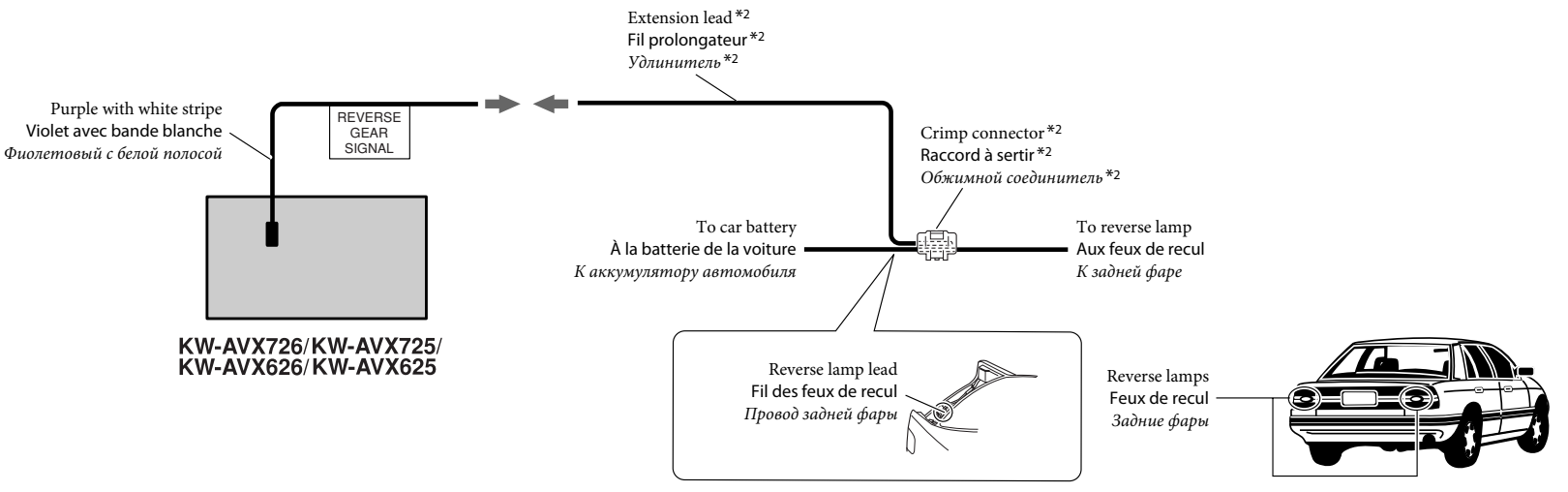


Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / Connexion du fil de signal de marche arrière (pour la caméra de recul) / Подключение провода сигнала заднего хода (для камеры заднего вида)

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.

Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.

Найдите лампу заднего хода в ящике.



*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*2 Non fourni avec cet autoradio.

*2 *Не входит в комплект.*

ENGLISH | FRANÇAIS | РУССКИЙ

Connections without using the ISO connector / Connexions sans utiliser le connecteur ISO / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

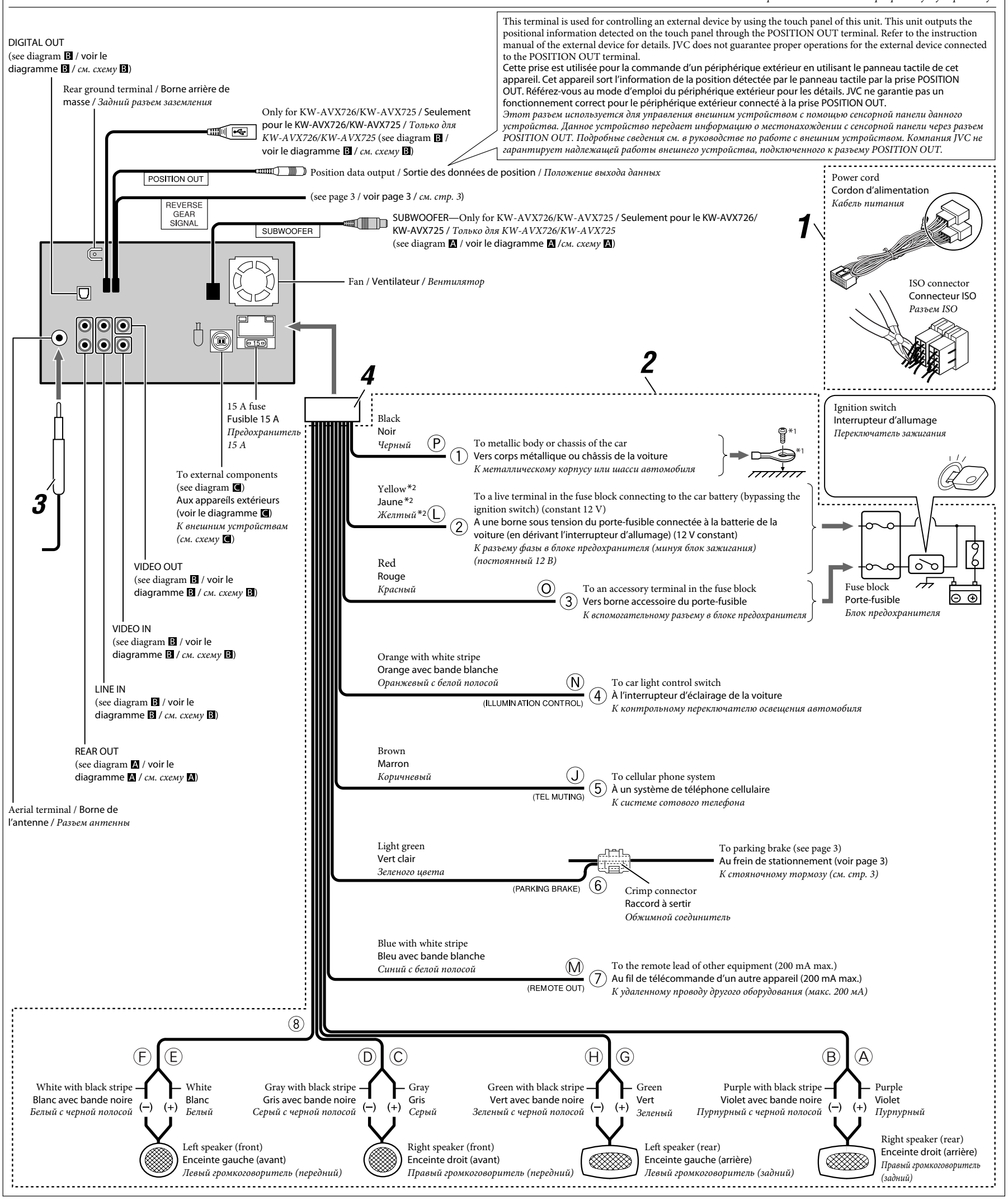
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. Coupez le connecteur ISO.
2. Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
3. Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
4. Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

Перед началом подключений: *Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.*
Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. *Обрежьте разъем ISO.*
2. *Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.*
3. *Подключите кабель антенны.*
4. *В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.*



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 Non fourni avec cet autoradio.
*2 Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.

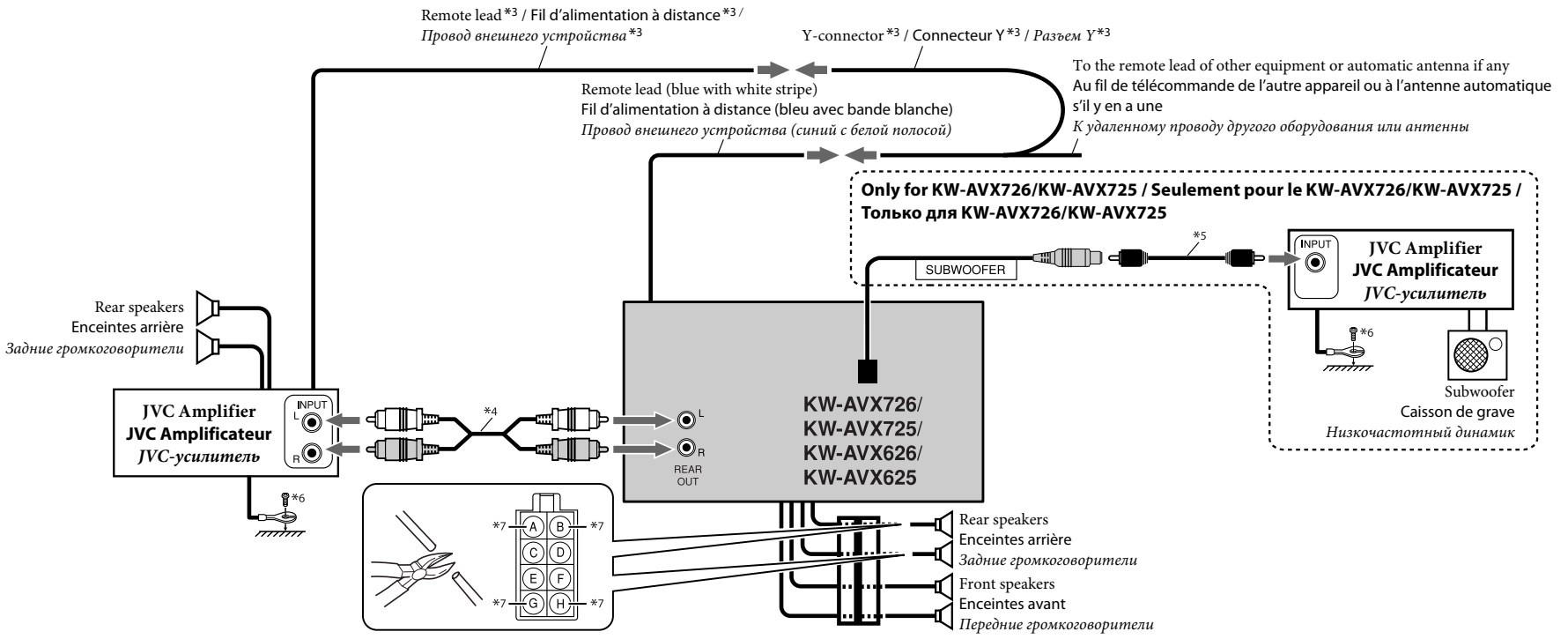
*1 *Не входит в комплект.*
*2 *Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.*

A Connecting the external amplifier and/or subwoofer / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou d'un caisson de grave / Подключение внешних усилителей и/или низкочастотного динамика

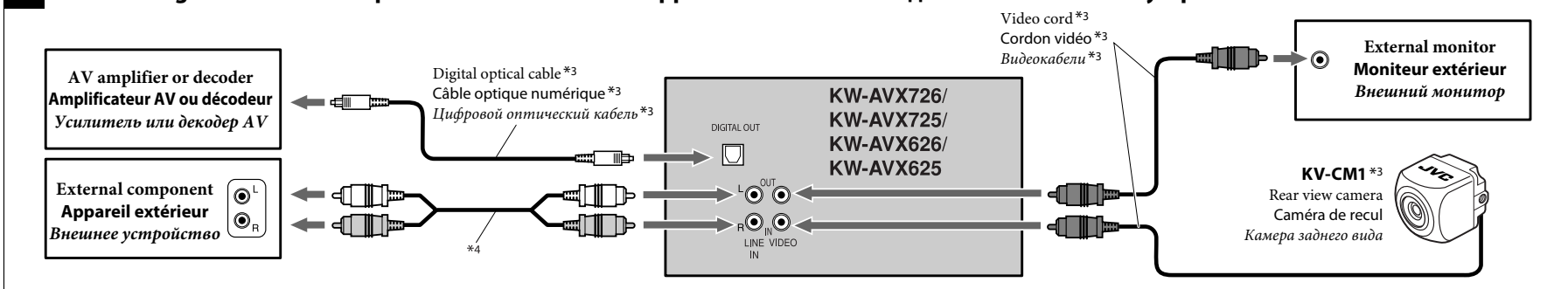
You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.
- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
- Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement sur un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et d'éviter tout échauffement interne de l'autoradio. Voir page 21 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- *Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.*
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**
- *Для получения более чистого звука и предотвращения внутреннего перегрева устройства можно отключить встроенный усилитель и использовать для усиления аудиосигнала только внешние усилители. См. стр. 21 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ (отдельный документ).*

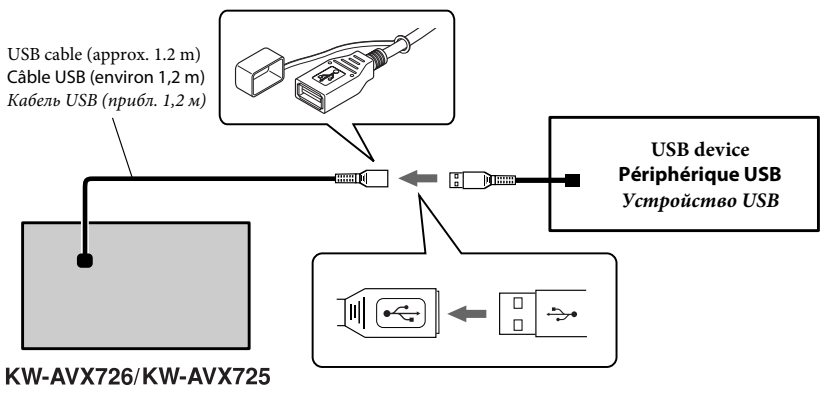


B Connecting the external components / Connexion des appareils extérieurs / Подключение внешних устройств



Only for KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725 / Seulement pour le KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725 / Только для KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725

USB devices / Périphériques USB / Устройства USB



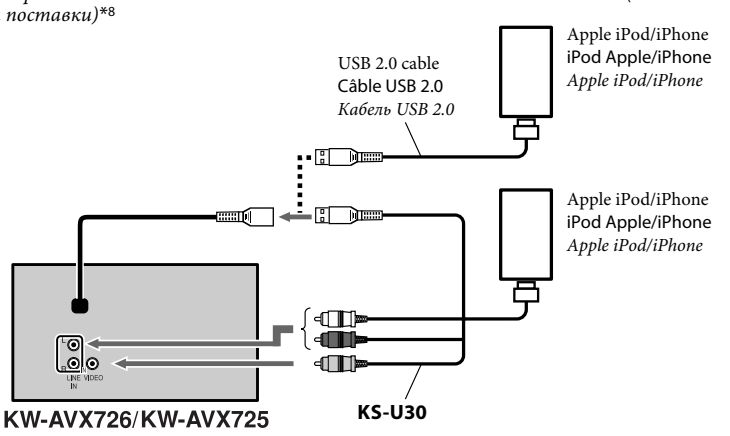
You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
Vous ne pouvez pas connecter un ordinateur à la prise USB (⭠) de l'appareil.
Вы не можете подключить компьютер к терминалу USB (⭠) устройства.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / Connexion du iPod/iPhone à la prise USB / Подключение iPod/iPhone к разъему USB

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:
- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied for the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied)*8

Vous pouvez connecter le iPod/iPhone à la prise USB en utilisant les câbles suivants:
- Pour écouter la musique: Câble USB 2.0 (fourni pour le iPod/iPhone)
- Pour regarder une séquence vidéo: Câble USB Audio et Vidéo pour iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (non fourni)*8

Можно подключить iPod/iPhone к разъему USB с помощью следующих кабелей:
- *для прослушивания музыки: кабель USB 2.0 (поставляется с iPod/iPhone)*
- *для просмотра видеозаписей: кабель USB Audio и Video для iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (не входит в комплект поставки)*8*



iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.

iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone est une marque de commerce de Apple Inc.
iPhone является товарным знаком корпорации Apple Inc.

*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*7 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*8 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 Non fourni avec cet appareil.
*4 Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil).
*5 Cordon audio (non fourni avec cet appareil).
*6 Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.
*7 Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.
*8 Lors de l'utilisation de ce câble, assurez-vous que <iPod (Off)> est choisi pour <AV Input> (voir page 18 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Не входит в комплект.*
*4 *Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект).*
*5 *Аудиокабель (не входит в комплект).*
*6 *Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.*
*7 *Обрежьте выводы задних динамиков для разъема ISO автомобиля и подсоедините их к усилителю.*
*8 *При использовании кабеля убедитесь в том, что выбрано значение <iPod (Off)> для настройки <AV Input> (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 18).*

C Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / Connexion des appareils extérieurs au changeur de CD / Подключение внешних устройств к разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000*9

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Tuner JVC DAB	KT-DB1000*9

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.
- Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.

Appareil	Adaptateur	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	Adaptateur Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod	KS-PD100
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne	KS-U57
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire	KS-U58

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500 и т. д.*
Тюнер DAB JVC	*KT-DB1000*9*

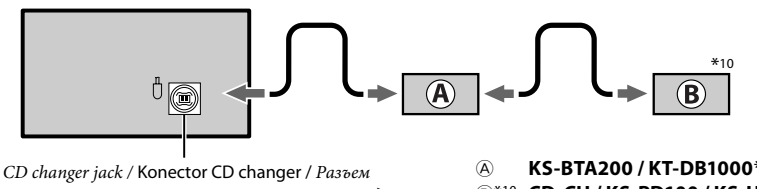
Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- *Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.*

Компонентный	Адаптер	Название модели
Устройство Bluetooth	*Адаптер Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	*Адаптер линейного входа*	*KS-U57*
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	*Адаптер входа AUX*	*KS-U58*

При подключении нескольких устройств (максимум: трех) рекомендуется подключить устройства последовательно, как описано ниже.

When connecting two components in series / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série / Последовательное подключение двух устройств

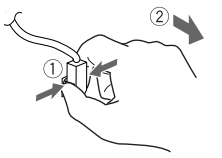
KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725/ KW-AVX626/KW-AVX625



CD changer jack / Konector CD changer / *Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков*

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200 / KT-DB1000***9
Ⓑ*10 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

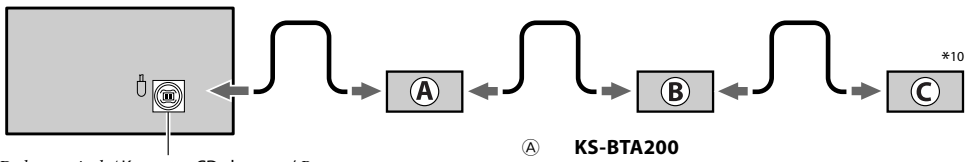
To disconnect the connector / Pour déconnecter le connecteur / *Отключение разъема*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).
Крепко удерживая разъем (①), извлеките его (②).

When connecting three components in series / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série / При подключении трех устройств последовательно

KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725



CD changer jack / Konector CD changer / *Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков*

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ **KT-DB1000**
Ⓒ*10 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

*9 For KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725.
If KS-BTA200 is available, connect it to position Ⓐ and connect KT-DB1000 to position Ⓑ.
*10 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*9 Pour le KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725.
Si vous disposez du KS-BTA200, connectez-le à la position Ⓐ et connectez le KT-DB1000 à la position Ⓑ.
*10 Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 19 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

*9 *Для KW-AVX726/KW-AVX725.*
Если устройство KS-BTA200 доступно, подключите его к Ⓐ, а устройство KT-DB1000 — к Ⓑ.
*10 *Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 19).*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?

- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?

- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?

- **Le son est déformé.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?

- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?

- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?

- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
* *Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?*

- **Питание не включается.**
* *Подключен ли желтый провод?*

- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
* *Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?*

- **Звук искажен.**
* *Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?*
* *Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?*

- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
* *Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?*

- **Устройство нагревается.**
* *Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?*
* *Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?*

- **Приемник не работает.**
* *Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?*

JVC

ENGLISH
DEUTSCH
FRANÇAIS
NEDERLANDS

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
DVD-RECEIVER MIT MONITOR
RÉCEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR
DVD-RECEIVER MET MONITOR

KW-AVX720

Radio Data System

DVD VIDEO

COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

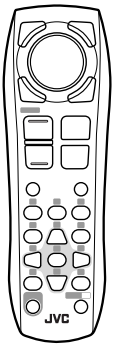
MP3

DOLBY DIGITAL

WMA

WAV

DIVX



Made for iPod

Works with iPhone

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 12.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 12.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 12.
Zie bladzijde 12 voor het annuleren van de displaydemonstratie.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.
Bijzonderheden over de installatie en aansluiting van het apparaat vindt u in de desbetreffende handleiding.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS
GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING

GET0603-001A
[E]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

Products

Battery

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment and Batteries

[European Union only]

These symbols indicate that the product and the battery with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life.
If you wish to dispose of this product and the battery, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality.
By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

Notice:
The sign Pb below the symbol for batteries indicates that this battery contains lead.

WARNINGS:
(To prevent accidents and damage)

- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

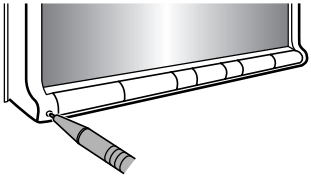
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

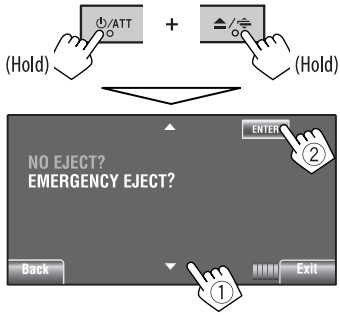
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device). (28, 40)*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *You can forcibly eject the loaded disc even if the disc is locked. To lock/unlock the disc, 32.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.
- Some of the operations might be different with the steering wheel remote control function.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

How to read this manual

- < > is used to indicate the variable screens/menus/operations/settings that appear on the touch panel.
- [ ] is used to indicate the buttons on the touch panel.
- (page number) is used to indicate the reference page number of the related topics/operations/settings.
- **Operation index:** To locate easily the desired operations/functions. (65)
- **Indication language:** English indications are used for the purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language from the <**AV Menu**>. (15)

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

Playable disc type

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc	Playable
DVD • DTS sound cannot be reproduced.	DVD-Video (Region Code: 2) *1 ALL 2 1 2 1 2 3 4	✓OK
	DVD-Audio/DVD-ROM	✗NO
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW *2, +R/+RW *3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD-Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4/DVD+VR/DVD-RAM	✗NO
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DTS-CD/SVCD (Super Video CD)/CD-ROM/CD-I (CD-I Ready)	✗NO
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4	✗NO

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs). DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.*

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs. "DVD" is selected as its disc type when a +R/+RW disc is loaded. +RW double layer discs are not playable.*

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

CONTENTS

How to read this manual 3
How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3
Playable disc type 4

INTRODUCTIONS

Basic operations 6
- Using the monitor panel/touch panel 6
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 9

Preparation 12

AV MENU

AV Menu operations 13

OPERATIONS

Listening to the radio 30
Disc operations 32
- Operation buttons on the screen 34
- Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 35

USB operations 39

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 40
- Connecting a new Bluetooth device 40
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 41
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 43

Listening to the CD changer 43
Listening to the DAB tuner 44
Listening to the iPod/iPhone 45
- When connected with the USB cable 45
- When connected with the interface adapter 46

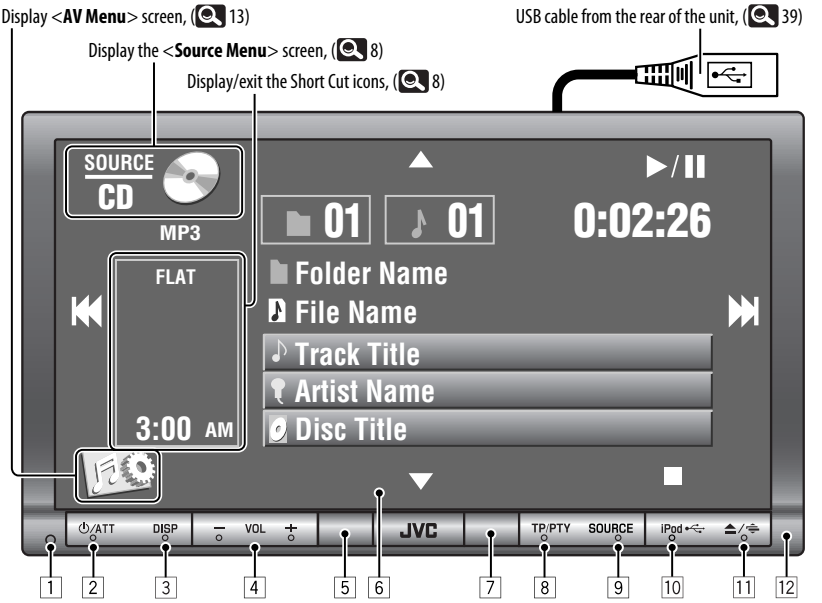
Using other external components 47
- AV-INPUT 47
- EXT-INPUT 48

REFERENCES

Maintenance 49
More about this unit 50
Troubleshooting 59
Specifications 63
Operation index 65

Basic operations

Using the monitor panel/touch panel



1 Resets the unit (3).

2
- Turns on the power.
- Attenuates the sound (if the power is on).
- Turns off the power. (Hold)

3 Changes the display information.*1

4
- Adjusts the volume.
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.*2

5 Remote sensor

6 Touch panel (see the following pages).
- Most of the touch panel operations are explained unless mentioned otherwise.
- The screen will turn off if no operation is done for about 10 seconds (depends on the <**Illumination**> setting). (19)

7 Motion sensor

8
- Activates/deactivates TA Standby Reception.*3
- Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (Hold)

9
- Selects the source.*4
  TUNER → DAB → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) → USB/iPod → CD-CH/iPod/EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN → (back to the beginning)
- **Bluetooth PHONE** : Displays the <**Dial Menu**> screen.*5 (Hold)

*1 – *5 : 7

10 • Selects "**USB/ iPod**" as the source.
• Switches the setting between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE" (Hold)

11 • Displays <**Open/Tilt**> screen.*6
[**Open**] : Opens the monitor panel.
[**Eject**] : Ejects the disc.
[**Close**] : Closes the monitor panel.
[**Tilt +**] : Tilts open the monitor panel.
[**Tilt –**] : Tilts close the monitor panel.
• Ejects the disc and display <**Open/Tilt**> screen. (Hold)
• Closes the monitor panel if the panel is opened.

12 Monitor panel

*1 *Available display information varies among the playback sources. (56)*

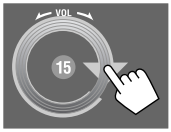
*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of other sources.*

*3 *The TP indicator lights up when activated; flashes when the unit tune into another station providing Radio Data System signals.*
When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby Reception also searches for DAB services.

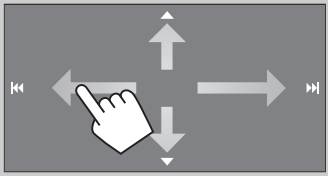
*4 *Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made. (18)*

*5 *Only when Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*6 *Shaded items cannot be used.*



You can also adjust the volume by moving your finger on the touch panel as illustrated.



When you drag your finger on the touch panel, it functions in the same way as touching [▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭].

Touch panel and button illumination

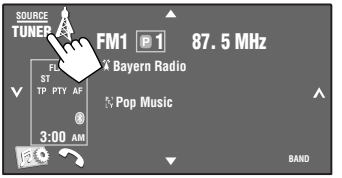
Dependable on the <**Illumination**> setting. (19)

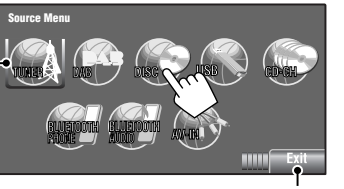
• Turned off:
When no operation is done for about 10 seconds.
• Turned on again:
– When you touch the touch panel or move your hand nearby.
– When you use the remote controller.
– When a call/SMS comes in (for Bluetooth cellular phone).
– When the source automatically changed by receiving the Traffic Announcement /PTY programme.
– When the signal from the rear view camera comes in.
• Always turned on:
– When <**AV Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Source Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Open/Tilt**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Illumination**> is set to <**Normal**>.

Continued on the next page

<Source Menu> screen

You can also select the source using the touch panel.



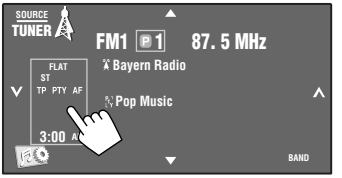


Current source

Exit

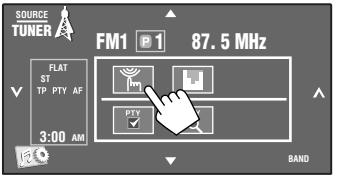
Short Cut icons

You can easily access some frequently used functions by using the Short Cut icons.

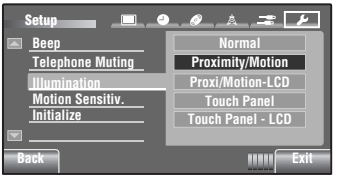


Short Cut window appears.

- To exit from the window, press the button again.



Press a Short Cut icon.



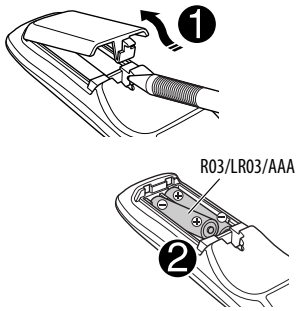
The corresponding screen is displayed.

Available icons vary among the sources.

	Displays <**Illumination**> menu. (19)
	Changes the sound mode. (20)
	Turns on or off Track/Chapter Repeat. (23)
	Displays <**Aspect**> menu. (15)
PTY	Activates PTY Standby Reception. (22)
ANN	Activates Announcement Standby Reception. (23)
PTY	Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (31)
	Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (27)
	Displays <**Redial**> menu. (27)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the batteries



Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

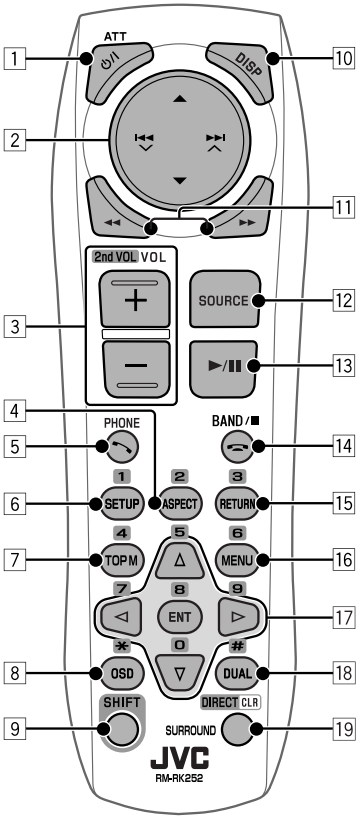
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



The following describes all the available operations for all the sources.

- To easily locate the available operations between different type of files, 35, 36.

1 **⏻/I ATT button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **▲/▼ buttons**

- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the preset stations/ services.

Continued on the next page

- **DISC/USB**:
  – DVD-Video: Selects the title.
  – DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  – **USB**/other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders if included.
- **CD-CH:**
  – Selects the folders if included.
- **iPod**:
  – ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲/▼/ ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ work as menu selecting buttons.)
    ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
    ▼: Confirms the selection.
  – ▼: Pauses or resumes playback.

⏮ ∨ / ⏭ ∧ buttons

- **TUNER/DAB**:
  – Searches for stations/ensembles automatically if pressed briefly.
  – Searches for stations/ensembles manually if pressed and held.
- **DISC/USB/CD-CH**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.

  In menu selecting mode:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.

3 **VOL** (volume) **+ / – buttons**
- Adjusts the volume level.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**:
  – Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.

2nd VOL (volume) **buttons**
- Not applicable for this unit.

4* **ASPECT button**
- Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

5 **PHONE button**

Applicable only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.
- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

6* **SETUP button**
- Not applicable for this unit.

7* **TOP M** (menu) **button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

8 **OSD** (on-screen display) **button**
- Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "✱."

9 **SHIFT button**
- Functions with other buttons.

10 **DISP** (display) **button**
- Changes the display information.

11 **◀◀/▶▶ buttons**
- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Reverse search/forward search.

12 **SOURCE button**
- Selects the source.

13 ► (play) / ❚❚ (pause) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Starts playback/pauses.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Answers incoming calls.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Starts playback.

14 (end call) **button**
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Ends the call.

BAND button
- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the bands.

■ (stop) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Stops playback.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Pauses.

15* **RETURN button**
- VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16* **MENU button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

17* △/▽ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- **CD-CH**: Changes discs in the magazine.

◁/▷ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- DivX/MPEG Video: Skips back or forward by about 5 minutes.

ENT (enter) **button**
- Confirms selection.

18 **DUAL button**
- Not applicable for this unit.
- Does not function as "#."

19 **DIRECT button**
- **DISC/USB**: Enters direct search mode for chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track when pressed with SHIFT button (36).

CLR (clear) **button**
- **DISC/USB**: Erases the misentry when pressed with SHIFT button.

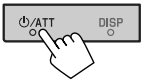
SURROUND button
- Not applicable for this unit.

* *Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.*
– **DISC/USB***: Enters chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track number after entering search mode by pressing SHIFT and DIRECT.* (36)
– **TUNER/DAB***: (Number 1 to 6) : Enters preset station/service number.*

Preparation

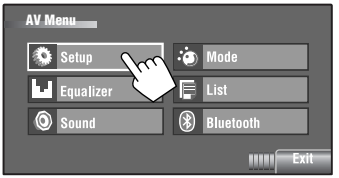
Canceling the display demonstration and setting the clock

1 Turn on the power.



2 Display <AV Menu> screen.

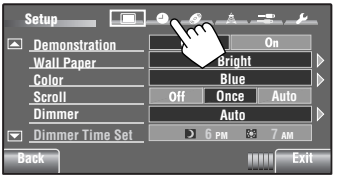
3 Display <Setup> screen.

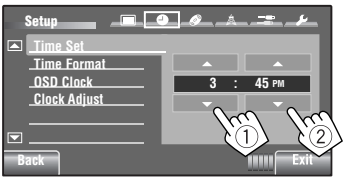


4 Cancel the demonstration.

Select [**Off**].

5 Set the clock.





6 Finish the procedure.

AV Menu operations

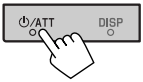
You can use the <**AV Menu**> for most of the operations and settings. The available menu items shown on the touch panel, depends on the selected source.

- Non-available items will be shaded.

The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures.

- You can perform the operations/change the settings by following these steps unless mentioned otherwise.

❶ Turn on the power.



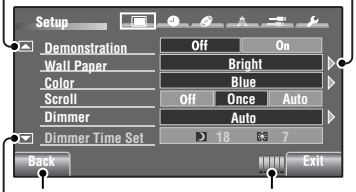
❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

Setup	:	14 – 19
Equalizer	:	20
Sound	:	21
Mode	:	22 – 24
List	:	25 – 26
Bluetooth	:	27 – 29

❸ Press the desired icon/item to perform the desired operations/settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

Indicates the next hierarchy level/setting item exists



Returns to the previous screen.

Indicates the remaining time before the current screen exit automatically.

Moves to the succeeding menu page

- Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting screen, but just selecting an option will change the setting.
- To exit from the setting, press [**Exit**].

Continued on the next page

Setup

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Display	**Demonstration**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen. (12)
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. ♦ **Bright, Future, Horizon, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. ♦ **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Once** : Scrolls the displayed information once. ♦ **Auto** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • Touching the information bar scrolls the text regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates dimmer. ♦ **Auto** : Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. *1 ♦ **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting (see below).
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On ( )/Off ( ) times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. ♦ **01** (bright), **02** (middle), **03** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust the brightness of the screen. ♦ **–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust *2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (common) and the other for "**AV-IN**." Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. (**–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**) ♦ **Bright** : Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. ♦ **Contrast** : Adjust the contrast. ♦ **Color** : Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. ♦ **Tint** : Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural, only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION CONTROL lead connection is required. (See the Installation/Connection Manual.)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (the media must contain pictures or videos) or "**AV-IN**."*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Aspect** *3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.

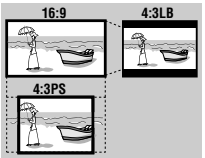
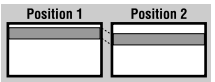
	Aspect ratio of the incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Panorama: For viewing 4:3 pictures naturally on the wide screen		
Auto:	• For "**DISC**": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

Display	**Language** *4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. ♦ **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português** • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. (56)
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **0:00**
	Time Format	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. (12) ♦ **12 Hours, 24 Hours;** Initial **24 Hours**
	OSD Clock	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : The clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
	Clock Adjust	♦ **Auto** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the Radio Data System signal. ♦ **Off** : Cancels.

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *Turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Disc	**Menu Language** *5	Select the menu language; Initial **English** (57)
	Audio Language *5	Select the audio language; Initial **English** (57)
	Subtitle *5	Select the subtitle language or erase the subtitle <**Off**>.; Initial **English** (57)
	Monitor Type *5  	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. ◆ **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. ◆ **4:3LB** (Letterbox)/ **4:3PS** (Pan Scan) : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3.
	OSD Position *5  	Select the position of the on-screen bar. (38) ◆ **1** : Higher position. ◆ **2** : Lower position.
	File Type *5	Select the playback file type when a disc/USB contains different types of files. You can store this setting separately for each source—"**DISC/USB**." ◆ **Audio** : Plays back audio files. ◆ **Still Picture** : Plays back JPEG files. ◆ **Video** : Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. ◆ **Audio&Video** : Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration) *5	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	iPod Artwork *6	While playing back a track (in "HEAD MODE"), Artwork recorded for the track is displayed on the monitor. ◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates Artwork display. To display the artwork, press DISP repeatedly. • It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.

*5 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*6 *Skip the track so that your setting takes effect.*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Disc	**D.** (Digital) **Audio Output** *7	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (55) ◆ **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. ◆ **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. ◆ **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio.
	Down Mix *7	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks. ◆ **Dolby Surr.** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. ◆ **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) **Range Compres.** (Compression) *7	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. ◆ **Auto** : Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. ◆ **On** : Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	◆ **Auto** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ◆ **Wide** : Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional	When the received signals from the current station become weak, you can change the Network-Tracking Reception. (50) • When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to <**DAB AF**>, 18. ◆ **Off** : Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. ◆ **AF Reg.** (Regional) : Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. ◆ **AF** : Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up).

*7 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Continued on the next page

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Tuner	**TA Volume**	When you activate TA Standby Reception (🔍 6), the unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. You can preset the TA volume level. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current volume level is lower than the preset level. ◆ **VOL 00** to **30** (or **50**) *8; Initial **VOL 15**
	Program Search *9	Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in. If the signals from the FM Radio Data System preset station are not strong enough, this unit uses the AF data to tune in to another station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals. ◆ **On** : Select to activate. ◆ **Off** : Cancels.
	DAB AF *10	**While receiving a DAB service:** When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM Radio Data System station broadcasting the same programme. **While receiving an FM Radio Data System station:** When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM Radio Data System station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service. ◆ **On** : Select to activate. ◆ **Off** : Cancels.
Input	**AV Input** *11	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. (🔍 47) ◆ **Off** : Select when no component is connected ("**AV-IN**" is skipped while selecting the source). ◆ **iPod (Off)** : Select when connecting the iPod/iPhone using the USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone. (🔍 45) ◆ **Audio&Video** : Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. ◆ **Audio** : Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. ◆ **Camera** *12 : Select when connecting a rear view camera to display the picture (as it is taken). ◆ **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System. (🔍 48)

*8 *Depends on the amplifier gain control settings.*

*9 *The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.*

*10 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*11 *Not selectable when "**AV-IN**" is selected as the source.*

*12 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <**Full**> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the monitor panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Input	**External Input** *13, *14	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. ♦ **Changer/iPod** *15 : CD changer, (🔍 43), iPod, (🔍 46). ♦ **External** : Any other than the above, (🔍 48).
Others	**Beep**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting *16	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Muting1, Muting2** : Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Illumination	You can turn off the screen and the light of the buttons on the monitor panel while turning on the unit. (🔍 7)

	Buttons on the monitor panel	Screen
Normal:	Always lights.	Always lights.
Proximity/Motion:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Always lights.
Proxi/Motion-LCD:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.
Touch Panel:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Always lights.
Touch Panel-LCD:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.

	Motion Sensitiv.	Change the sensitivity of the sensor for <**Illumination**> above. ♦ **Low, Mid, High**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)

*13 *Not required for Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner. They are automatically detected.*
*14 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*
*15 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*
*16 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

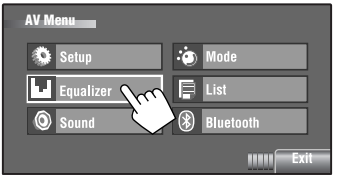
Equalizer

Selects a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

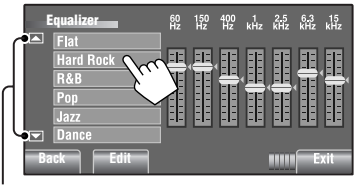
♦ **Flat** (Initial), **Hard Rock, R&B, Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User1, User2, User3**

1 Display <AV Menu> screen.

2 Display <Equalizer> screen.



3 Select a sound mode.



Moves to the other 6 sound modes.

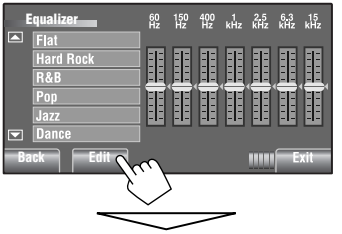
Ex.: When <**Hard Rock**> is selected

Storing your own adjustments

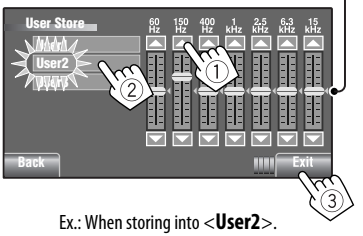
You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 above to enter the <Equalizer> screen.

2 Adjust the settings, then store.



Make adjustments by moving each bar directly.



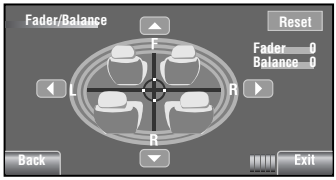
Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Fader/Balance	**Fader** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. • When using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0." ♦ **F6** to **R6;** Initial **0** **Balance** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. ♦ **L6** to **R6;** Initial **0** Press [▲/▼/◄/►] to adjust. 
Volume Adjust *1	Adjust and store the auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • <**Fix**> appears if "**TUNER/Bluetooth PHONE**" is selected as the source. ♦ **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00**
Subwoofer Level	Adjust the subwoofer output level. ♦ **–06 to +08;** Initial **00**
High Pass Filter	♦ **Through** : Select when the subwoofer is not connected. ♦ **On** : Select when the subwoofer is connected.
Crossover	Select the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. ♦ **80Hz, 120Hz, 150Hz**
Amplifier Gain *2	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. ♦ **Off** : Deactivates the built-in amplifier. ♦ **Low** : VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) ♦ **High** : VOL 00 to 50

*1 *For "**DISC/USB**": You can make the adjustments separately depending on the audio format—Dolby digital/MPEG Audio and the others.*

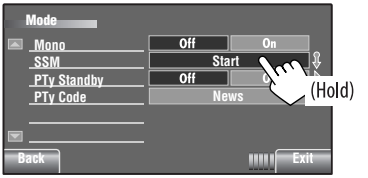
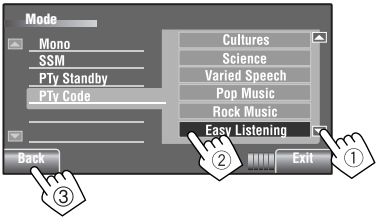
*2 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOL 30" if you change to <**Low**> with the volume level set higher than "VOL 30."*

Mode

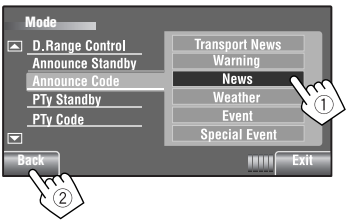
Initial: **Underlined**

Selectable items when the source is:

- **TUNER** : **Mono, SSM, PTy Standby, PTy Code**
- **DAB** : **D.** (Dynamic) **Range Control, Announce Standby, Announce Code, PTy Standby, PTy Code**
- **DISC, USB, CD-CH, iPod** : **Repeat, Random**
- **iPod** *1 : **Repeat, Random, Audiobooks**
- **AV-IN, EXT-IN** : **Title Entry**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Mono	When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive, activate monaural mode for better reception. ♦ **ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The MONO indicator lights up. ♦ **OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)	You can automatically preset 6 stations for each FM band. • Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band. 
PTy Standby	PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM. When a DAB tuner is connected, PTY Standby Reception also searches for DAB services. ♦ **ON** : Activate PTY Standby Reception. (The PTY indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another station providing the Radio Data System signals.) ♦ **OFF** : Cancels.
PTy Code	You can change the PTY code (50) for PTY Standby Reception. 

*1 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (45)

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
D. (Dynamic) **Range Control**	Some DAB services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy. • The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals. As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger. ♦ **OFF/DRC 1/DRC 2/DRC 3**
Announce Standby	Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite DAB service (announcement type) from any source other than FM/AM. ♦ **ON** : Activate Announce Standby Reception. (The ANN indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another service providing the related signals.) ♦ **OFF** : Cancels.
Announce Code	You can change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception.  ♦ **Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News**
Repeat*2	Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Repeat	DISC					USB		CD-CH		iPod	iPod
	DVD-Video	DVD-VR	DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV	JPEG	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV	JPEG	CD	MP3		
Chapter	●	●									
Title	●										
Program		●									
Disc								●	●		
Folder			●	●		●	●		●		
Track			●		●	●		●	●		
One										●	●
All										●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

♦ **Chapter** : Repeats current chapter.
♦ **Title** : Repeats current title.
♦ **Program** : Repeats current program (for DVD-VR, not available during Playlist playback).
♦ **Disc** : Repeats all tracks of the current disc.
♦ **Folder** : Repeats all tracks of the current folder.
♦ **Track** : Repeats current track. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
♦ **One** : Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
♦ **All** : Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
♦ **Off** : Cancels.

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (🔍 45)

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item

Random*3

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Random	DISC		USB	CD-CH		iPod	iPod*4
	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD	MP3		
Folder	●		●		●		
Disc/USB (All)	●	●	●	●	●		
All				●	●		
Song						●	●
Album						●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- **Folder** : Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folders.
- **Disc/USB (All)** : Randomly plays all tracks. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- **All** : Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs.
- **Song** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" *5 of the iPod.
- **Album** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
- **Off** : Cancels.

Audiobooks*3

You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" audio file in your iPod.

- **Normal** : Plays at normal speed.
- **Faster** : Plays faster.
- **Slower** : Plays slower.

Title Entry

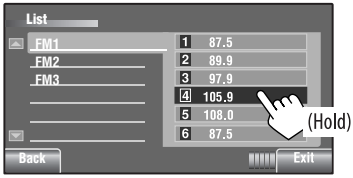
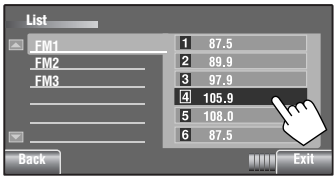
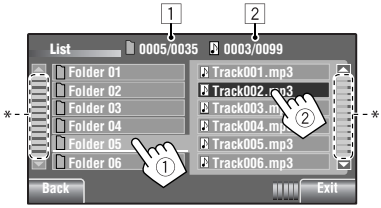
You can assign titles (up to 16 characters) to **AV-IN** and **EXT-IN**. (For available characters, 56.)

Press [**Enter**] to show the <**Title Entry**> screen.

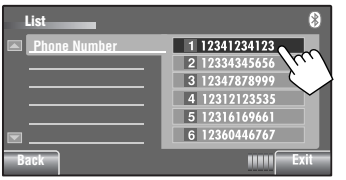
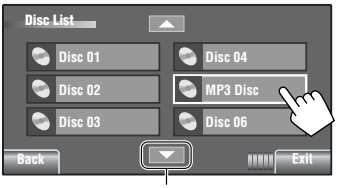
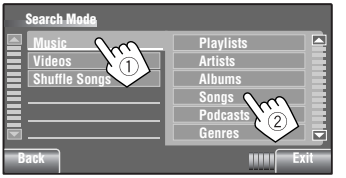
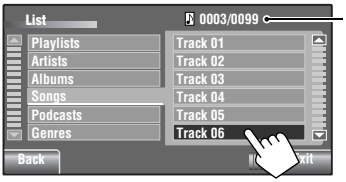
[Store] : Confirm the entry.
[◄/►] : Move the cursor.
[BS] : Erase the character before the cursor.
[Del] : Erase the character on the cursor.
[Cap] : Change the letter case (upper/lower).
[A → 0 → Ä] : Change the character set.
[Space] : Enter a space.

*3 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*
*4 *Not applicable for video file.*
*5 *You can activate <**Shuffle Songs**> in <**Search Mode**> menu. (26)*

List

Source	Operation/setting
TUNER/DAB	• **Storing a preset station/service manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [∧ / ∨] to tune in to the station you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  Ex.: Storing FM station in to preset number 4 The station selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset station/service on the list**  Ex.: Selecting a preset FM station
DISC/USB	**Selecting a track on the list** If a device contains folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.  1 Current folder list number/ total folder list number 2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*

Continued on the next page

Source	Operation/setting
Bluetooth PHONE	**Selecting a preset phone number on the list to make a call** 
CD-CH	**Selecting a disc on the list**  To go to the other list If an MP3 disc is selected, Folder/ Track List appear. Select a track to start playback.
iPod *	**Selecting a track/video from <Search Mode>**   Current track (video) number/total track (video) number ♦ **Music :** Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, Podcasts, Genres, Composers, Audiobooks ♦ **Videos :** Video Playlists, Movies, Music Videos, TV shows, Video Podcasts ♦ **Shuffle Songs :** Playback starts if this is selected.

* *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

Bluetooth

Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source for operations.

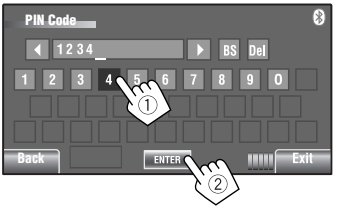
- Firstly, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to register and establish the connection with a device.

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Dial Menu *1	Select the method to make a call. ◆ **Redial** : Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. ◆ **Received Calls** : Shows the list of the received calls. ◆ **Phonebook** : Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. ◆ **Missed Calls** : Shows the list of the missed calls. ◆ **Phone Number** : Shows the phone number entry screen. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Preset]** : Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. **[Dial]** : Calls the entered number. ◆ **Voice Dialing** : Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system: → Speak the name you want to call.
Message *2	**If <Message Info> is set to <Manual>... (🔍 29)** Access the message list to read messages. ◆ **Unread** : Messages you have not read. ◆ **Read** : Messages you have read. ◆ **Unsent** : Messages you have not sent. ◆ **Sent** : Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.

*1 *Only for the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*2 *Selectable only when the source is "**Bluetooth PHONE**" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Open	**Preparation:** • Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function. • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Open**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. 2 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)*3. • You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).  You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only. [**BS**] : Erases the character before the cursor. [**Del**] : Erases the character on the cursor. [**Enter**] : Confirms the entry. 3 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen. Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit. • The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> or activate <**Auto Connect**> to connect the same device the next time.
Search	**Preparation:** • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Search**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.) 2 Select a device you want to connect. 3 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit. • Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code. 4 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

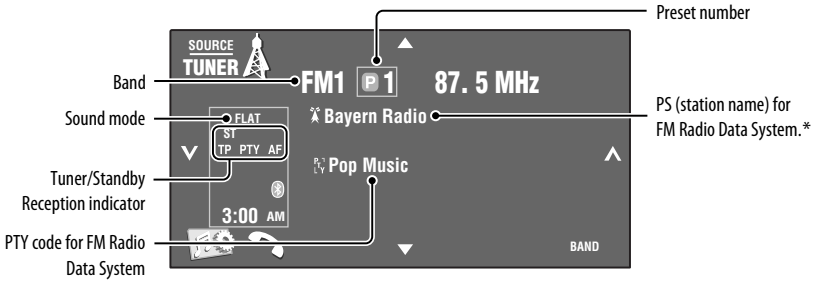
*3 *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item	
Special Device	Only for "NEW DEVICE." Select a device you want to connect from the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish the Bluetooth connection. Then, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to connect. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> the next time.	
Connect	Only for the registered devices. Select a device from the list of registered devices, establish the connection with it.	
Disconnect	Only for the connected devices. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.	
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Press <**Yes**> to confirm delete the registered devices.	
Settings Initial: **Underlined**	**Auto Connect***4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... ♦ **Off** : No Bluetooth device. ♦ **Last** : The last connected Bluetooth device. ♦ **Order** : The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer*5	♦ **Off** : The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. ♦ **On** : The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. ♦ **Reject** : The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info*5	♦ **Auto** : The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, 42. ♦ **Manual** : The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting*5	Adjust the volume of the microphone connected to the Bluetooth adapter. ♦ **01/02/03**
	Version	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." Not selectable when "NEW DEVICE" is selected.*

Listening to the radio



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].**

❷ **Press [BAND].** [➔FM1➔FM2➔FM3➔AM]

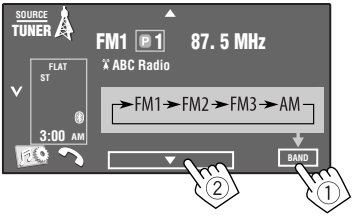
❸ **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.**

- Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
- The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

* *If no PS signal comes in, "No Name" appears.*

Selecting a preset station

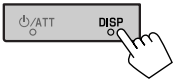
- Directly from the touch panel



You can also select a preset station using the remote controller (🔍 9) and from the Preset List (🔍 25).

You can display the Preset List by pressing [P 1] or holding [▲/▼].

Changing the display information



(🔍 56)

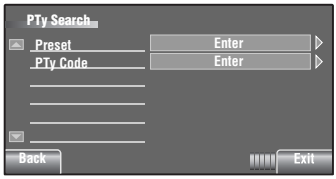
- To improve the FM reception, 🔍 22.
- To automatically preset stations into memory, 🔍 22.
- To manually preset stations into memory, 🔍 25.

The following features are available only for FM Radio Data System stations.

Searching for FM Radio Data System programme—PTY Search

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code of your favorite programmes.

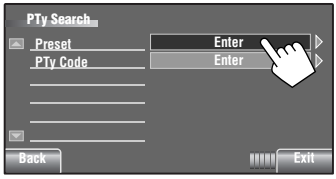
1 Display <PTy Search> menu.

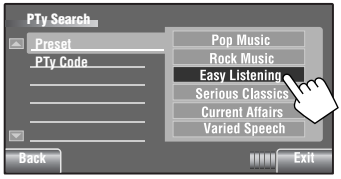


2 Select a PTY code.

In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.

If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes. (50)





PTY Search starts.

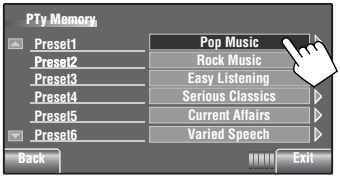
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

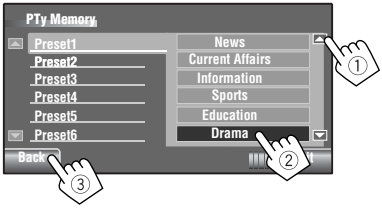
Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.

Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>

1





2

- To activate/deactivate PTY Standby Reception, 22.
- To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception, 22.
- To trace the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception, 17.
- To automatically select station—Programme Search, 18.

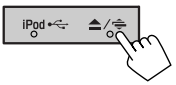
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, then playback starts (for some discs, the top menu of the disc appears).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

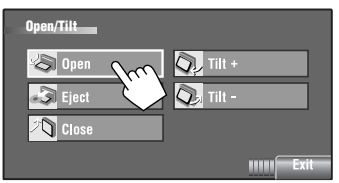
❶ Open the monitor panel.



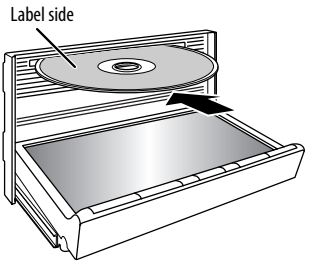
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷



❸ Insert a disc.

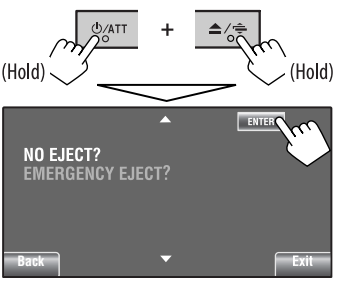


Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**Close**].

Caution:
Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

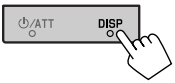


To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.
- Discs can be forcibly ejected. (🔍 3)

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (🔍 55)

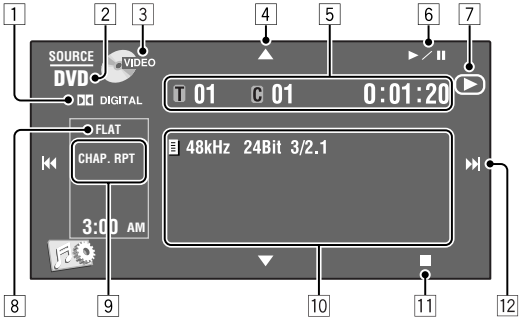
- To select the playback mode, 🔍 23, 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 🔍 25.

Changing the display information



Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (56)

Ex.: While playing a DVD Video



1 Audio format—Dolby Digital, MP3, WMA, WAV
2 Disc type—DVD, DVD-VR, VCD, CD
3 Video format—DivX, MPEG, VR-PRG (program), VR-PLAY (playlist), PBC
4 [▲/▼]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects title/program/playlist.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV:
  – Selects folder
  – Displays Folder/Track List (Hold)

5
- DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
- DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
- DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
- JPEG: Folder no./Track no.
- VCD/CD: Track no./Playing time

6 [►/❚❚]
Starts playback/pauses
7 Indicates the button pressed (►/❚❚/■)
8 Sound mode (20)
9 Playback mode (23, 24)
10 Disc/track information
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG: Folder name/file name
- CD Text: Title/artist name/album name
  – "No Name" appears for conventional CDs or if not recorded
- MP3/WMA/WAV: Current folder name/current file name/tag data (current track title/artist name/album title) if it is recorded

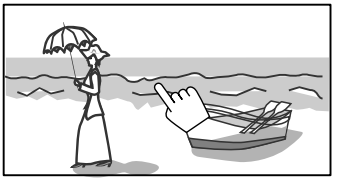
11 Stops playback
12 [I◄◄/►►I]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects chapter.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects track.
- DVD Video/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Continued on the next page

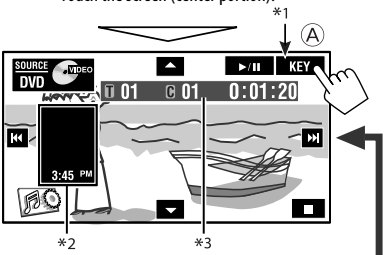
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

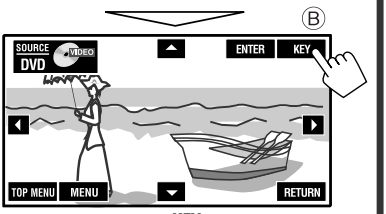
- If no operation is done after awhile, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



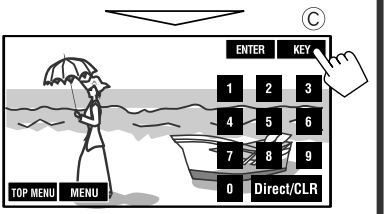
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To end the operations, touch the screen again.

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Displays <**Source Menu**> screen
[▲ ▼]	🔍 33
[► / ❚❚]	Starts playback/pause
[|◄◄ ►►|]	• Selects tracks • Reverse/forward search (Hold)
[ ]	Displays <**AV Menu**> screen
[■]	Stops playback

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD menu operation playback

[▲ ▼ ◄ ►]	Selects the menu items
[**ENTER**]	Confirms the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Returns to the previous menu or displays the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENTER**]	Enters numbers
[**Direct/CLR**]	• Switches between chapter/track entry and title/folder entry • Erases the last entry when you enter a wrong number

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENTER**]

*1 *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen*

*2 *Displays Short Cut icons. (🔍 8)*

*3 *Playback time. (🔍 33)*

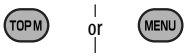
Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Button	DVD Video / DVD-VR	DivX/ MPEG/JPEG
■	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	• DivX/MPEG: Start play/Pause (if pressed during play) • JPEG: • Start play (Slide show: Each file is shown for a few seconds.) • Pause (if pressed during play).
◄◄ ►►	• Reverse/forward chapter search*1 (No sound can be heard.) • Slow motion*2 during pause (No sound can be heard.) – *DVD-VR: Reverse slow motion does not work.*	• DivX/MPEG: Reverse/forward track search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭	• Select chapter (during play or pause) • Reverse/fast-forward chapter search*3 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• DivX/MPEG: • Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*5 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold) • JPEG: Select file
▲ ▼	• DVD-Video: Select title (during play or pause) • DVD-VR: • Select program • Select playlist (during play or pause)	Select folder
◁ ▷	—	• DivX/MPEG: Skip back or forward the scenes by about 5 minutes
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	Select aspect ratio

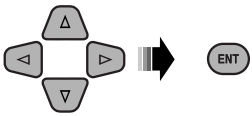
*1 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*2 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*3 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10
*4 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2 ⇨ ▶▶ 3
*5 *Search speed:* ▶▶ 1 ⇨ ▶▶ 2

Using menu driven features... (DVD Video)

1 Enter the menu screen.



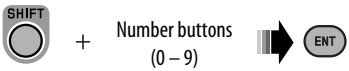
2 Select an item you want to start play.



Canceling the PBC playback... (VCD)

During stop...

1

2 

- To resume PBC, press TOP M/MENU.

Continued on the next page

Button	VCD	MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD
■	Stop play	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)
◄◄ ►►	Reverse/forward track search*6 • Forward slow motion*7 during pause. (No sound can be heard.) – *Reverse slow motion does not work.*	Reverse/forward track search*6	Reverse/forward track search*6
⏮ ⏭	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)
▲ ▼	—	Select folder	—
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	—	—

*6 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*7 *Slow motion speed:* ►1/32 ⇨ ►1/16 ⇨ ►1/8 ⇨ ►1/4 ⇨ ►1/2
*8 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10

Searching for an item directly

1 While holding SHIFT, press DIRECT repeatedly to select the desired search mode.

DVD-Video: CHAP ➡ -- → TITLE ➡ -- → Canceled

DVD-VR: CHAP ➡ --- → PG/PL ➡ -- → Canceled

DivX/MPEG: TRACK ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

JPEG: FILE ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

MP3/WMA/WAV: Track Search --- → Folder Search --- → Canceled

VCD/CD: Track Search --- → Canceled

2 While holding SHIFT, press the number buttons (0 – 9) to enter the desired number.

3 Press ENT (enter) to confirm.

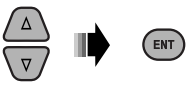
- For DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV, track is searched within the same folder.
- For DVD-VR, program/playlist search is possible during Original program playback (PG)/Playlist playback (PL).
- To erase a misentry, press CLR (clear) while holding SHIFT.
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

Using the list screens... (DVD-VR)

1 Display the Original Program screen.

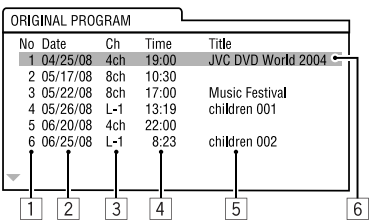
Display the Playlist screen.

2 Select an item you want to start play.

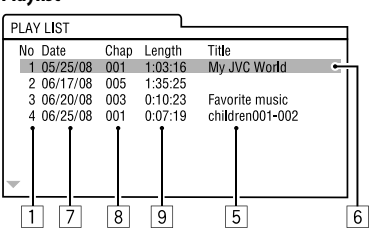


Original Program/Playlist screen

- **Original Program**



- **Playlist**



1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

(DVD/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD)

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

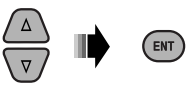
1 Show the on-screen bar (38).

(twice)

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...



- To cancel pop-up menu, press RETURN.
- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

Entering time/numbers

Press △/▽ to change the number, then press ◁/▷ to move to the next entry.

- Each time you press △/▽, the number increases/decreases by one value.
- After entering the numbers, press ENT (enter).
- It is not required to enter the zero and tailing zeros (the last two digits in the example below).

Ex.: Time search

DVD: _:_ _:_ _ (Ex.: 1:02:00)

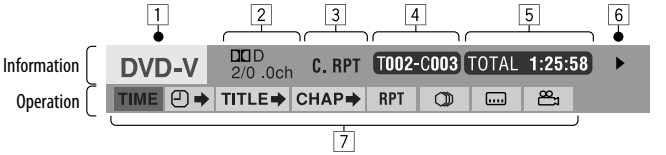
Press △ once, then ▷ twice to go to the third entry, △ twice, then press ENT (enter).

Removing the on-screen bar

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar

Ex.: DVD-Video



1 Disc type

2
- DVD-Video: Audio signal format type and channel
- VCD:PBC

3 Playback mode*1

DVD-Video:	**T. RPT**:	Title repeat
	C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
DVD-VR:	**C. RPT**:	Chapter repeat
	PG. RPT:	Program repeat
DivX/MPEG Video:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	F. RPT:	Folder repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random
	F. RND:	Folder random
JPEG:	**F. RPT**:	Folder repeat
VCD*2:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T002-C003	Current title/chapter
PG001 C002	Current program/chapter
PL001 C002	Current playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD-Video, elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist.)
T. REM	DVD-Video/DVD-VR: Remaining title/program/playlist time VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track*3
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track*3

6 Playback status

▶	Play
▶▶ / ◀◀	Forward/reverse search
I▶ / ◀I	Forward/reverse slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

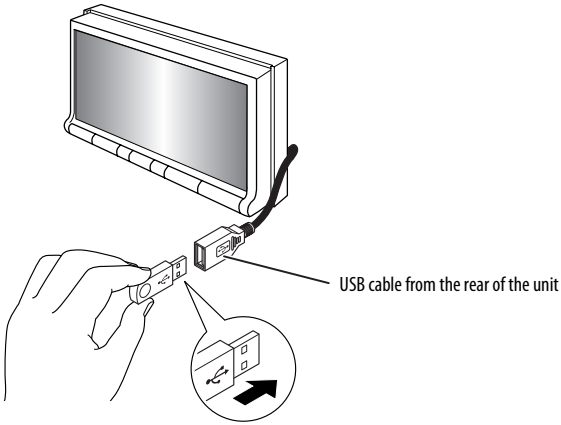
TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
	Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist or of the disc.)
TITLE➡	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP➡	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK➡	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play*1
RND	Random play*1
	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
	Change or turn off the subtitle language
	Change the view angle

*1 *For repeat play/random play, 23, 24.*
*2 *While PBC is not in use.*
*3 *Not applicable for DVD-VR.*

USB operations

You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect the iPod to the USB terminal of the unit. For details of the operations, 45 – 46.

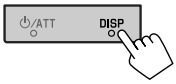


This unit can play JPEG/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV files stored in USB mass storage class device.

- You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on discs.
- All tracks in the USB device will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously when you reconnect the same USB device again.

- To select the playback mode, 23, 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 25.

Changing the display information



(56)

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Now Reading" is shown on the screen.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, 53.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.
- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

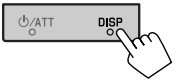
Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.
- Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

- To register a device using <**Open**> or <**Search**>, 28.
- To connect a special device, 29.
- To connect/disconnect/delete a device, 29.

Changing the display information



(56)

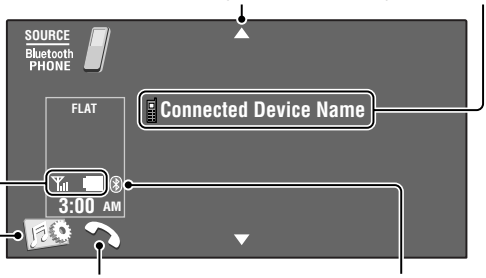
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only).

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

Status of the device
- Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device).

[▲/▼]: Selects the other registered device.

Connected device name
- When a cellular phone with audio function is registered/connected, appears.



Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (Hold)

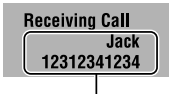
Display <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Appears on any source information screen when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

Bluetooth icon
- Lights up when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [Bluetooth].**
4. **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu). (27 – 29)**

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "**Bluetooth PHONE**" automatically.



Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...
The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (29)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...
To answer the incoming call
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

To end the call
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

- You can adjust the microphone volume, 29.

To make a call, use <**Dial Menu**>. (27)

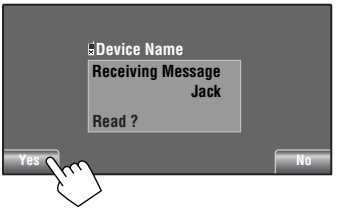
Continued on the next page

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (29)



To read the message, press [**Yes**].
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press [**No**].

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (27)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages, 27.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

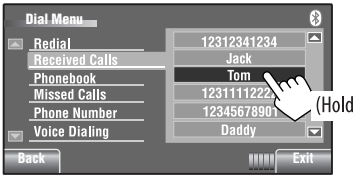
Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

Presetting the phone numbers

You can preset up to 6 phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>. (27)

2 Select a telephone number to store.

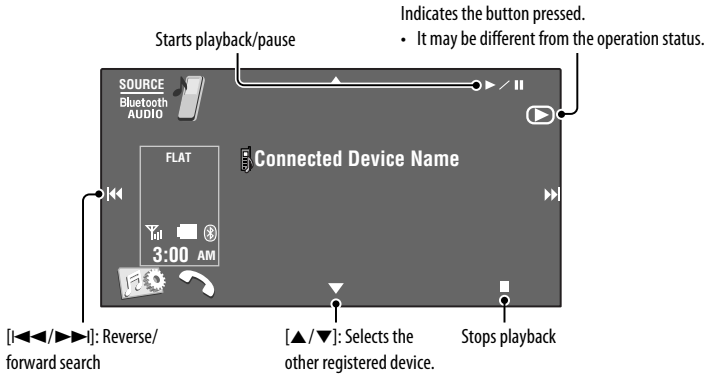


3 Select a preset number.

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

To call a preset number, 26.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



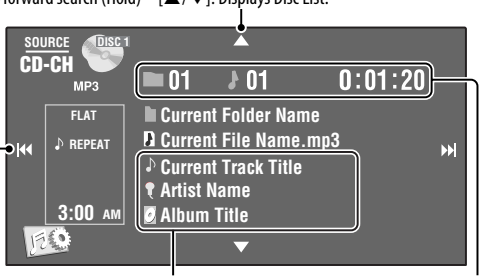
1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].**
2. **Start playback.**
   If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

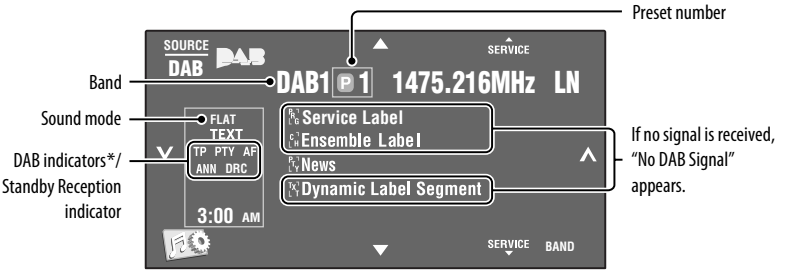
Ex.: While playing an MP3 disc
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects track
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold) [▲/▼]: Displays Disc List.



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [List].**
4. **Select a disc to start playing.**

To select the playback mode, 23, 24.

Listening to the DAB tuner



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3
3. **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**
   - Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
4. **Press [▲ SERVICE] or [SERVICE ▼] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

* *While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

- To improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy, 🔍 23.
- To manually preset services into memory, 🔍 25.
- To select a preset service, 🔍 25.
- To activate/deactivate TA/PTY Standby Reception, 🔍 6, 22.
  (You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.)
- To activate/deactivate Announcement Standby Reception, 🔍 23.
- To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception, 🔍 23.
- To trace the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF), 🔍 18.

Listening to the iPod/iPhone

You can connect the iPod/iPhone using the following cable or adapter:

To	Cable/adapter	To operate
Listen to the music	USB 2.0 cable (accessory of the iPod/iPhone) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below.
	Interface Adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the interface adapter" on page 46.
Watch the video	USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone, KS-U30 (not supplied) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below. • Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 18.

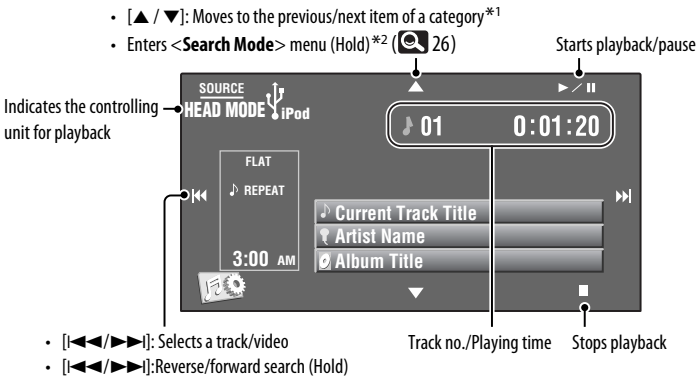
When connected with the USB cable

There are 2 control modes in "iPod" source.

- "HEAD MODE" : Control by this unit.
- "iPod MODE" : Control by the connected iPod/iPhone.
  Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**> when using KS-U30 to connect. (18)

- Press and hold iPod to switch between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE."

The operation explained below are under "HEAD MODE."



*1 [▲ / ▼] *may not function depending on how you select the current track/video.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."*

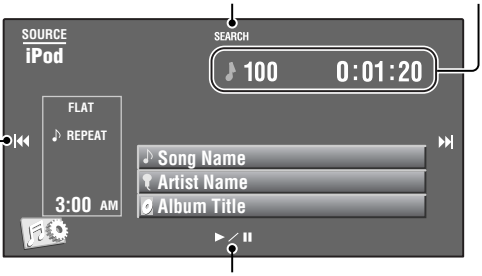
Continued on the next page

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod ψ].
Playback starts automatically.
- When you connect the iPod to the USB terminal, "ψ **iPod**" is selected as the source and playback starts automatically.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select a track/video.
You cannot resume playback for video sources.

The following operations/settings are only available in "HEAD MODE."
- To display the <**iPod Artwork**>, 🔍 16.
- To select track/video from <**Search Mode**>, 🔍 26.
- To select the playback mode, 🔍 23, 24.
- To change the play speed of the audio books, 🔍 24.

When connected with the interface adapter



- [⏮/⏭]: Selects tracks
- [⏮/⏭]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Starts playback/pause

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (🔍 19)

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select a track.

Selecting a track from the main menu

1 Press [SEARCH] to enter the main menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Press [|◄◄] or [►►|] to select the desired item.
- Skips 10 items at a time if there are more than 10 items. (Hold)

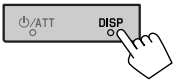
Playlists ↔ **Artists** ↔ **Albums** ↔ **Songs** ↔ **Genres** ↔ **Composers** ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [► / ❚❚] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [SEARCH].

To select the playback mode, 🔍 23, 24.

Changing the display information

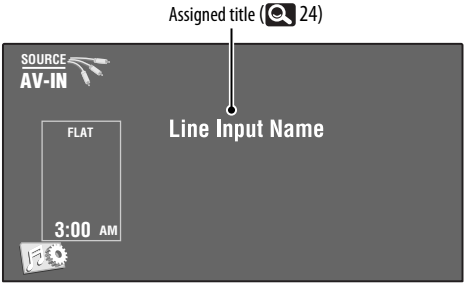


(🔍 56)

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN jacks.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].**

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons while watching the playback picture, 🔍 34.

Continued on the next page

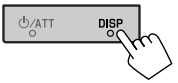
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN jack so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)

To view the navigation screen

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (56)

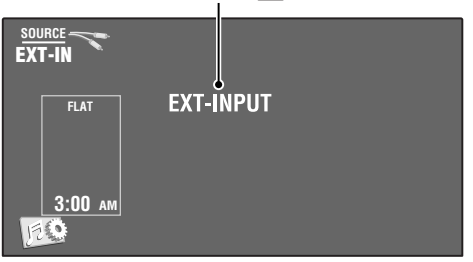


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (15)

When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**> (18)
- You can use the source "**AV-IN**" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN jacks.

EXT-INPUT

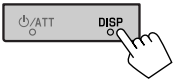
You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter, KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter, KS-U58 (not supplied).



Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].**
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

Changing the display information

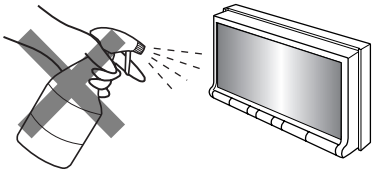


(56)

Maintenance

Caution on cleaning the unit

Do not use any solvent (for example, thinner, benzine, etc.), detergent, or insecticide. This may damage the monitor or the unit.



Recommended cleaning method:
Gently wipe the panel with a soft, dry cloth.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

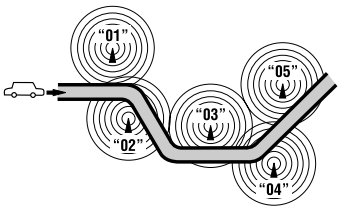
Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

FM Radio Data System operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of Radio Data System signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- **Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception:**
  When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM Radio Data System station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (18)
- Available PTY codes:
  News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No Disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.

* *<.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders. The MPEG2 files with the <.mod> extension code cannot be played back when stored on a USB mass storage class device.*

- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- This unit can play back JPEG files that are at 32 × 32 to 8 192 × 7 680 resolution.
  It may take time to display the file depending on its resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

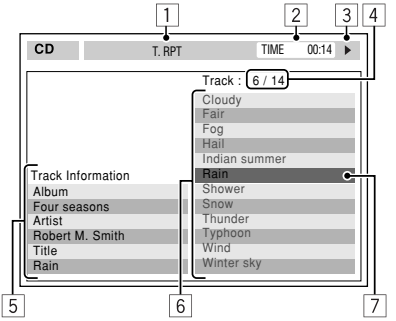
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Continued on the next page

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

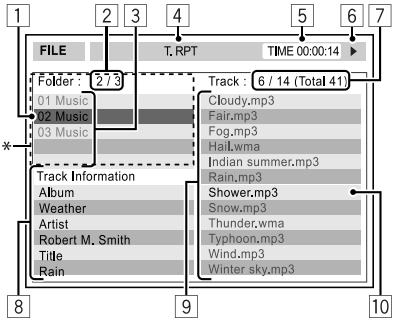
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**



1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

USB operations

- If "No USB Device" appears after removing a device, reattach a device or select another playback source.
- When the USB device has no playable files, or has not been formatted correctly, "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.
- This unit cannot recognize a USB device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with two or more partitions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect only one USB device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- This unit may not recognize a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- When connecting with a USB cable, use the USB 2.0 cable.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of the devices.
- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- For MPEG1/2 files: The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 2 Mbps.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**:
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (🔍 29)
- **Error**:
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**:
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**:
  The unit is updating the phone book or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**:
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset08**:
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Continued on the next page

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

: Cellular phone
: Household phone
: Office
: General
: Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (26), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod/iPhone operations

- You can control the following types of iPod/iPhone:

(A) Connected with the USB cable:
– iPod with video (5th Generation)*1, *2, *3
– iPod classic*1, *2
– iPod nano *2, *3
– iPod nano (2nd Generation) *2
– iPod nano (3rd Generation)*1, *2
– iPod nano (4th Generation)*1, *2
– iPod Touch*1, *2
– iPod Touch (2nd Generation)*1, *2
– iPhone/iPhone 3G*1, *2

(B) Connected with the interface adapter:
– iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
– iPod mini
– iPod photo
– iPod with video (5th Generation)
– iPod classic
– iPod nano
– iPod nano (2nd Generation)
– iPod nano (3rd Generation)
– iPod nano (4th Generation) *4

*1 *To watch the video with its audio, connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*2 *"iPod MODE" is available,* 45.
*3 *To listen to the sound in "iPod MODE," connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*4 *It is not possible to charge the battery through this unit.*

- If the iPod does not play correctly, update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the monitor. This unit can display up to 40 characters when using the interface adapter and up to 128 characters when using the USB 2.0 cable or USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30).

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

For the USB connection:
When <**iPod Artwork**> is set to <**On**>:
Do not press any keys during the first 5 seconds or more of playing back any track containing an Artwork*. It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
* *The picture displayed on the iPod's/iPhone's screen while playing back a track.*

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- DTS sound cannot be emitted.
- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (17)

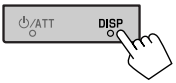
Playback disc \ <D. Audio Output>		Output signals		
		<Stream>	<Dolby D>	<PCM>
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Continued on the next page

Display information

- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

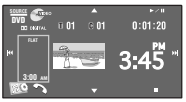


Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex.: When the playback source is a DVD video disc

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen



Playback picture and source information screen*1

Navigation screen*2

*1 *When the source is "iPod," the Artwork of the song is shown if the song has an Artwork data. (16)*
While MP3/WMA file is played, "Jacket picture" is shown if the file has the tag data including "Jacket picture."

*2 *When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)*

Characters you can enter for titles

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (24)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Ð	Ŧ	Ł	Ĺ	Ų	ð								

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ł	ı	ij		

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

JVC bears no responsibility for any loss of data in an iPod/iPhone and/or USB mass storage class device while using this unit.

Continued on the next page

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX® is a registered trademark of DivX, Inc., and is used under license.
- Plays DivX® video:
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified or DivX Ultra Certified device that plays DivX video.
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX® Certified device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. First generate the DivX VOD registration code for your device and submit it during the registration process. [Important: DivX VOD content is protected by a DivX DRM (Digital Rights Management) system that restricts playback to registered DivX Certified devices. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- "Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- "Works with iPhone" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied for the adapters used with the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).
- Messages (enclosed in " ") in the tables below are shown in the language selected on <**Language**>. (15) Messages described here are in the language of this manual.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (14)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press [**OPEN/TILT**].
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN jack. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only VOL +/– and ⏏/⇕ work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• The touch panel does not respond properly. • <**Illumination**> function does not work properly.	• Keep your hands and the touch panel clean and dry. • Eliminate static electricity and do not place magnetic items near the unit. • Leave the unit until the temperature becomes stable in the car. • A rubber mat on the floor may cause this symptom. In this case, do not use the rubber mat.
TUNER	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (25)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (32)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (14)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
USB	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• "Now Reading..." keeps flashing on the screen.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Copy tracks to the USB device.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, 56.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks are not properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again, and try again.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device.
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (29)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit (supplied with Bluetooth Adapter) position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped while using a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "NEW DEVICE" cannot be selected for "**Bluetooth AUDIO**."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "NEW DEVICE," disconnect it. (29)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (🔍 3)
DAB tuner	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit.(🔍 3)
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod /iPhone	• The iPod/iPhone does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version of the iPod/iPhone. • Charge the battery of the iPod/iPhone. • Check whether "HEAD MODE" or "iPod MODE" is correctly selected. (🔍 45) • Reset the iPod/iPhone.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• No operations are available when playing back a track containing Artwork.	Operate the unit after the Artwork is loaded. (🔍 16)
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
	• "Restricted Device" appears on the screen.	Check whether the connected iPod is compatible with this unit. (🔍 54)
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (🔍 14)

Specifications

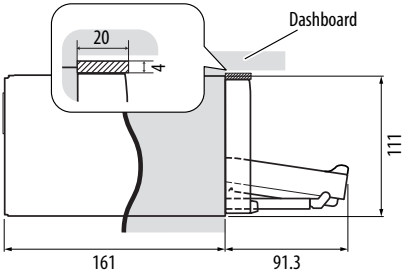
AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 1.0% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level: • LINE OUT (REAR) • SUBWOOFER	Line-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input, USB input, Steering wheel remote input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	9.3 dBf (0.8 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	40 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/40 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

Continued on the next page

DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
USB	USB Standards:	USB 2.0 Full Speed	
	Data Transfer Rate	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
	Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
	Max. Current:	DC 5 V ⎓ 500 mA	
MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		–10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 161 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 22 mm
	Mass (approx.):		3.3 kg (including trim plate and sleeve)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Operation index

General

Reset 3, 6
Volume 6, 7, 10, 21
AV Menu 6, 13
Source 6, 8, 11, 34
Short Cut 6, 8, 34
RM-RK252 ..... 9 – 11, 35 – 38
Clock 12, 15
Display demonstration 12, 14

Tuner

Listening to the radio (FM/AM) ... 6, 9, 10, 30
Auto/manual search 10, 30
Select preset station 9, 25, 30
Store station (automatically/manually) 22, 25
Improve FM reception 22
PTY Search 31
Store programme type 31
PTY Standby Reception 22
PTY codes 22, 50
Network-Tracking Reception 17, 50
Programme Search 18

Disc

Open/close 7, 32
Eject 3, 7
Lock/unlock disc 32
Playable disc type 4
Display information 33
Repeat/random play 23, 24, 38
Select track/folder ..... 10, 25, 33 – 36
Select title/program/playlist ..... 10, 11, 33 – 35
Start/stop/pause/resume playback ..... 11, 34 – 36
Search/skip ..... 10, 34 – 36
OSD 10, 16, 37, 38
PBC playback 10, 11, 35

USB

Attach/detach 39
Start/pause playback 11, 39
Repeat/random play 23, 24

Bluetooth

Connect/disconnect/delete 28, 29, 40
Make a call 27, 41
Answer/end call 29, 41
Read SMS 27, 42
Microphone volume 29
Preset phone number 42

CD changer

Start playback 26, 43
Repeat/random play 23, 24

DAB

Listening to the DAB service 44
Improve listening 23
Preset service 25
TA/PTY Standby Reception 6, 22
Announcement Standby Reception 23
DAB AF 18

iPod

Connect 45, 46
Start/pause playback 45, 46
Head Mode/iPod Mode 45
Repeat/random play 23, 24
Audiobooks 24
Select track 26, 45, 46

External component

AV-INPUT 47
EXT-INPUT 48

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?
Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück
Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?
Réinitialisez votre appareil
Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Hebt u PROBLEMEN met de bediening?
Stel het apparaat terug
Zie de pagina met de paragraaf Het apparaat terugstellen

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Sehr geehrter Kunde, sehr geehrte Kundin,
dieses Gerät stimmt mit den gültigen europäischen Richtlinien und Normen bezüglich elektromagnetischer Verträglichkeit und elektrischer Sicherheit überein.

Die europäische Vertretung für die Victor Company of Japan, Limited ist:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Deutschland

Cher(e) client(e),
Cet appareil est conforme aux directives et normes européennes en vigueur concernant la compatibilité électromagnétique et à la sécurité électrique.

Représentant européen de la société Victor Company of Japan, Limited :
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Allemagne

Geachte klant,
Dit apparaat voldoet aan de geldende Europese normen en richtlijnen inzake elektromagnetische compatibiliteit en elektrische veiligheid.

De Europese vertegenwoordiger van Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Duitsland

JVC

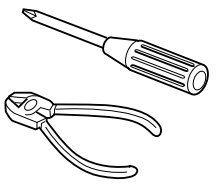
EN, GE, FR, NL

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0209DTSMDTJEIN

KW-AVX720

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Manuel d'installation/raccordement
Handleiding voor installatie/aansluiting



GET0603-003A
[E]

0209DTSMDTJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

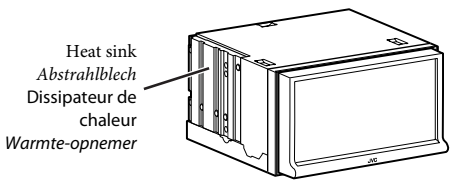
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "Parking Brake" appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake lead is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt**. *Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.*

WARNHINWEISE

- *Installieren Sie keine Komponenten und verdrahten Sie Kabel NICHT an den folgenden Orten;*
  - *an denen sie die Bewegungen des Lenkrads und des Ganghebels behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernsten Verkehrsunfällen.*
  - *an denen sie den Betrieb von Sicherheit seinrichtungen, z.B. Airbags, behindern könnten. Anderenfalls führt diese Behinderung möglicherweise zu ernsten Verkehrsunfällen.*
  - *an denen sie die Sicht behindern.*
- *Betätigen Sie beim Fahren KEINE Geräte. Anderenfalls führt dies möglicherweise zu einem ernste Verkehrsunfall.*
- *Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt auf keinen Fall auf den Monitor sehen. Dies könnte den Fahrer ablenken und zu Unfällen führen.*
- *Wenn Sie das Gerät beim Fahren bedienen müssen, dürfen Sie nicht den Blick von der Straße nehmen, da sonst die Gefahr von Verkehrsunfällen besteht.*
- *Wenn die Feststellbremse nicht verriegelt ist, erscheint „Parking Brake (Feststellbremse)" auf dem Monitor und es wird kein Wiedergabebild angezeigt.*
  - *Diese Warnung wird nur angezeigt, wenn das Feststellbremskabel an das in das Fahrzeug eingebaute Feststellbremssystem angeschlossen ist.*

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen erneut, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

Hinweise zu elektrischen Anschlüssen:

- *Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.*
- *Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von **4 Ω bis 8 Ω**).*
  Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie <Amplifier Gain> anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 21 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).
- *Zur Vermeidung eines Kurzschlusses die Anschlußklemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierklebeband umwickeln.*
- *Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.*

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

- N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil ni aucun câble dans un endroit où:
  - où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
  - où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les airbags car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.
  - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- NE COMMANDEZ pas l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.
- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit. Cela peut lui faire perdre sa concentration et causer un accident.
- Si vous souhaitez opérer l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder autour de vous afin de ne pas causer un accident de la circulation.
- Si le frein à main n'est pas engagé, "Parking Brake (Frein à Main)" s'affiche sur le moniteur et aucune image de lecture n'apparaît.
  - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques sur les connexions électriques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**).
  Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez <Amplifier Gain> pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 21 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

NEDERLANDS

Dit apparaat mag worden gebruikt bij elektrische systemen die werken op **12 V gelijkstroom met negatieve aarding**. *Als uw auto niet is uitgerust met een dergelijk systeem, is een spanningsomzetter vereist. Dit instrument kan worden aangeschaft bij JVC car audio dealers.*

WAARSCHUWING

- *Installeer toestellen en aansluitkabels NIET op plaatsen waar;*
  - *dit een gevaar vormt voor het bedienen van het stuur of de versnelling, aangezien elke belemmering van de juiste werking van het stuur en de versnelling tot een ongeluk kan lijden.*
  - *dit een gevaar vormt voor de airbag, aangezien elke belemmering van de werking van de airbag tot een dodelijk ongeluk kan lijden.*
  - *dit het uitzicht belemmert.*
- *Bedien GEEN enkele eenheid terwijl u uw handen aan het stuur nodig hebt, aangezien dit anders tot een ongeluk kan lijden.*
- *De bestuurder dient tijdens het rijden niet naar de monitor te kijken. De aandacht wordt anders afgeleid met mogelijk ongelukken als gevolg.*
- *Voorkom ongelukken en kijk derhalve uitermate goed uit indien u het toestel tijdens het besturen van de auto wilt bedienen.*
- *Als de handrem niet is aangehaald, verschijnt "Parking Brake (Handrem)" op de monitor en is afspelen onmogelijk.*
  - *Deze waarschuwing verschijnt uitsluitend indien het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremsysteem is verbonden.*

Om kortsluiting te voorkomen adviseren wij u om de minpool van de accu los te maken en alle elektrische verbindingen tot stand te brengen voordat u het apparaat in de auto installeert.

- **Aard dit toestel beslist weer op het chassis van de auto na het installeren.**

Opmerkingen voor de elektrische verbindinge:

- *Vervang de zekering door een exemplaar met het aangegeven vermogen. Als de zekering vaak doorslaat, moet u uw JVC car audio dealer raadplegen.*
- *Sluit bij voorkeur luidsprekers met een hoger maximaal vermogen dan 50 W (zowel achter als voor, met een impedantie van **4 Ω t/m 8 Ω**) aan. Indien het maximale vermogen lager dan 50 W is, moet u <Amplifier Gain> in de andere stand stellen zodat de luidsprekers niet kunnen worden beschadigd (zie bladzijde 21 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*
- *Om kortsluiting te voorkomen, moet u de aansluitklemmen van ONGEBRUIKTE gekleurde draden met isolatieband bedekken.*
- *De warmte-opnemer kan na gebruik erg heet worden. Raak de warmte-opnemer niet aan wanneer u dit apparaat van zijn plaats haalt.*

Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

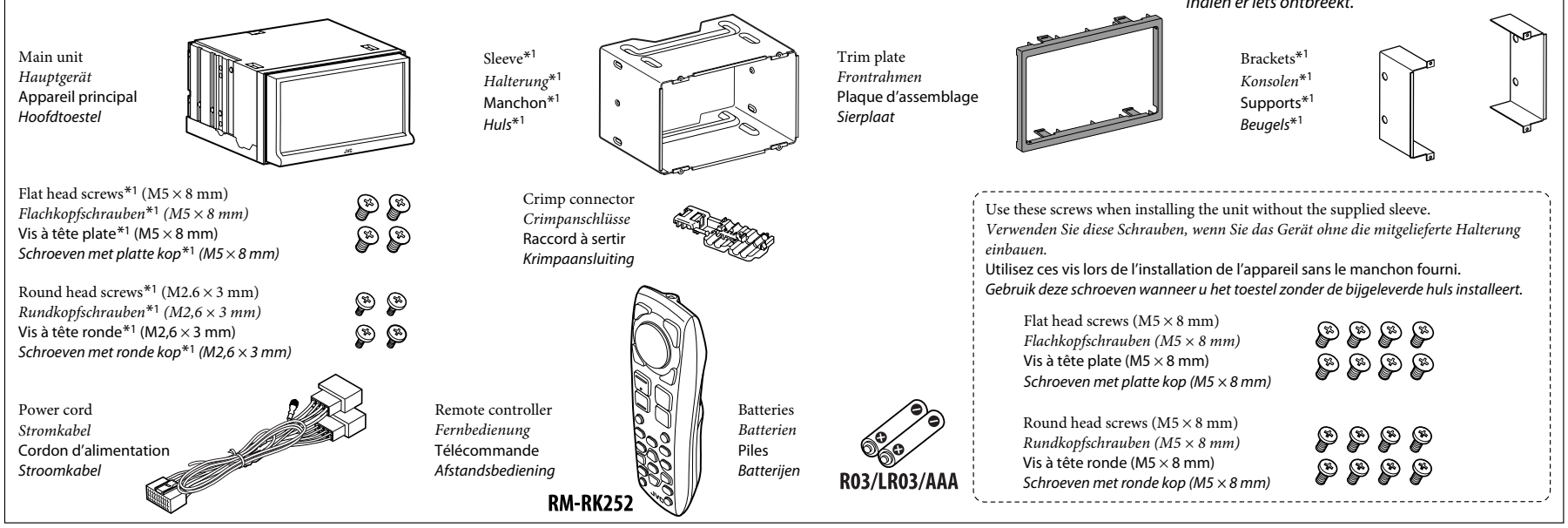
Falls ein Artikel fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren JVC-Autoradiohändler.

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

Lijst van onderdelen die u bij installatie en aansluiting nodig hebt

Raadpleeg direct uw JVC auto-audiohandelaar indien er iets ontbreekt.



*1 Fitted to the main unit when shipped.

*1 *Werkseitig am Hauptgerät angebracht.*

*1 Fixé à l'appareil lors de l'expédition.

*1 *Bij het verlaten van de fabriek aan het hoofdtoestel bevestigd.*

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

1 Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.
2 Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.
3 Attach the brackets to the main unit.
- Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

4 Do the required electrical connections.
- See pages 3 – 6.

5 Install the main unit in the sleeve.
6 Attach the trim plate.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

Die folgende Abbildung zeigt die typische Installation. Sie müssen aber Justierungen entsprechend des vorliegenden Fahrzeugs vornehmen. Wenn Sie Fragen haben oder weitere Informationen zu Einbausätzen benötigen, wenden Sie sich an Ihren Fachhändler für JVC Autoradiohändler oder einen Fachhändler für die Einbausätze.

- *Wenn bezüglich des richtigen Einbaus dieses Geräts Zweifel bestehen, immer einen qualifizierten Techniker um Rat fragen.*

Vor dem Einbau des Geräts

- *Bei der Montage dieses Gerätssollen immer die mitgelieferten Schrauben wie beschrieben verwendet werden. Wenn andere Schrauben verwendet werden, besteht die Gefahr, dass sich Teile lockern oder beschädigt werden könnten.*
- *Beim Festziehen von Schrauben oder Steckschrauben immer darauf achten, keine Kabel einzuklemmen.*
- *Sicherstellen, dass nicht das Gebläse an der Rückseite verdeckt wird, um richtige Ventilation beim Einbau zu gewährleisten.*

1 *Bauen Sie die ursprünglich im Fahrzeug vorhandene Audioanlage zusammen mit ihren Befestigungsteilen aus.*
Hinweis: *Alle aus dem Fahrzeug ausgebauten Schrauben und anderen Teile müssen zur Wiederverwendung aufbewahrt werden.*
2 *Die Halterung im Armaturenbrett des Fahrzeugs einbauen.*
3 *Die Konsolen am Hauptgerät anbringen.*
- *Stellen Sie sicher, nur die mitgelieferten Flachkopfschrauben zu verwenden (M5 × 8 mm). Wenn längere Schrauben verwendet werden, kann dann das Gerät dadurch beschädigt werden.*

4 *Erfordert keine elektrischen Verbindungen.*
- *Siehe Seite 3 – 6.*

5 *Das Hauptgerät in der Halterung einbauen.*
6 *Den Frontrahmen anbringen.*

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de pouvoir installer l'appareil correctement, faite-le installer par un technicien qualifié.

Avant d'installer l'appareil

- Lors du montage de l'appareil, assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis fournies, de la façon indiquée. Si vous utilisez d'autres vis, certaines pièces peuvent être perdues ou endommagées.
- Lorsque vous serrez des vis ou des boulons, faites attention de ne pas pincer un cordon de connexion.
- Assurez-vous de ne pas bloquer le ventilateur sur le panneau arrière lors de l'installation afin de permettre une ventilation correcte.

1 Retirez le système audio d'origine installé dans la voiture en même temps que les supports de montage.
Remarque: Assurez-vous de conserver toutes les vis et pièces détachées de votre voiture pour une utilisation dans le future.
2 Installez le manchon dans le tableau de bord de la voiture.
3 Attachez les supports à l'appareil principal.
- Assurez-vous d'utiliser les vis à tête plate fournis—(M5 × 8 mm). Vous risquez d'endommager l'appareil si vous utilisez des vis plus longues.

4 Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.
- Référez-vous aux pages 3 – 6.

5 Installez l'appareil principal dans le manchon.
6 Fixez la plaque d'assemblage.

INSTALLEREN (MONTEREN IN DASHBOARD)

De volgende afbeelding toont een standaardinstallatie. Afhankelijk van uw auto moet het toestel mogelijk wat anders worden geïnstalleerd. Raadpleeg uw JVC auto-audiohandelaar handelaar of een leverancier van installatiekits indien u vragen heeft of informatie over installatiekits wilt.

- *Raadpleeg een erkend technicus indien u twijfels heeft over het juist installeren van dit toestel.*

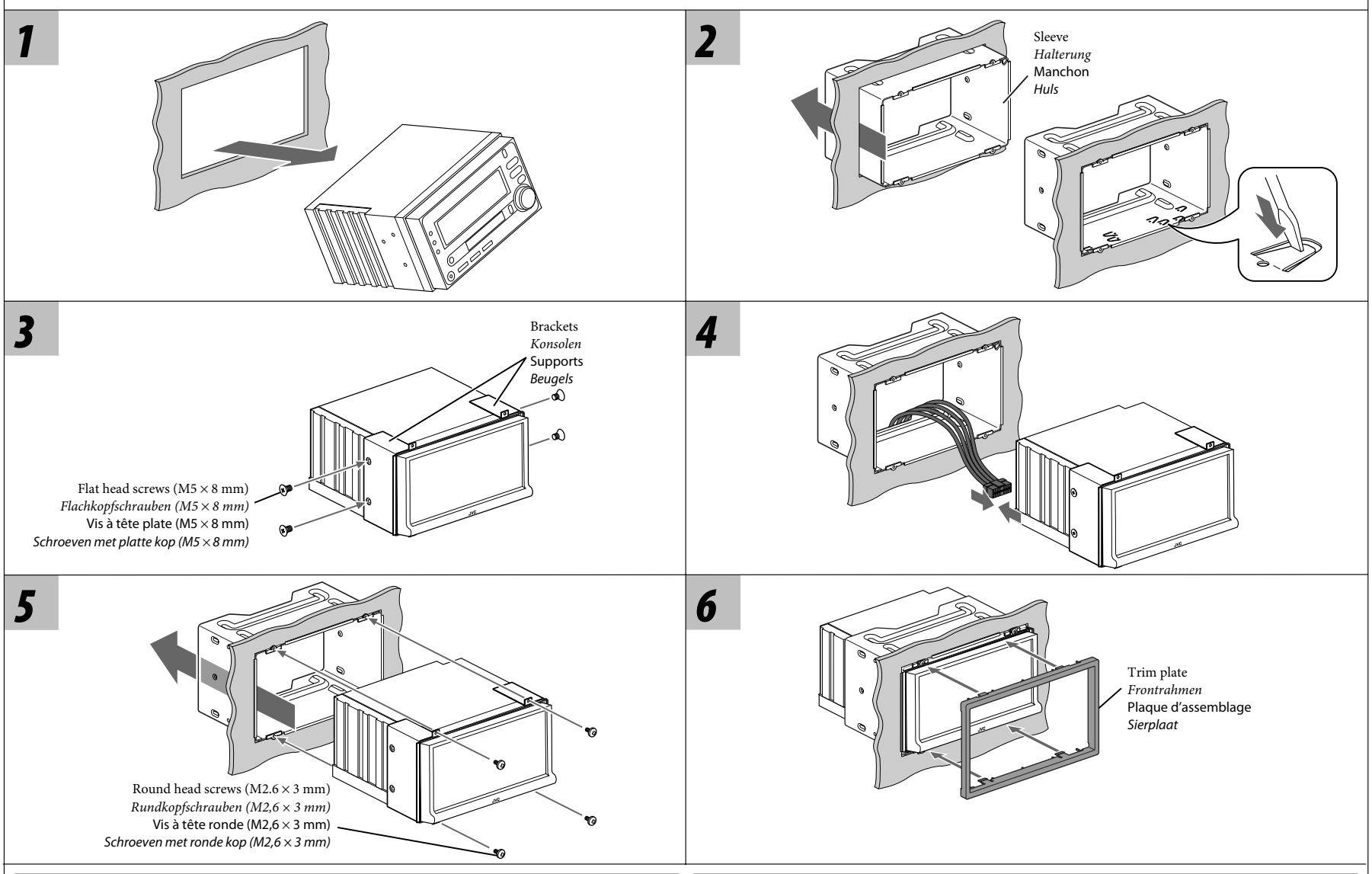
Alvorens het toestel te installeren

- *Gebruik beslist de bijgeleverde schroeven als aangegeven voor het bevestigen van dit toestel. Door het gebruik van andere schroeven, kunnen onderdelen worden beschadigd of wordt het toestel mogelijk niet correct bevestigd.*
- *Let bij het vastdraaien van schroeven en bouten goed op zodat er geen snoeren, etc. worden vastgekneld.*
- *Let goed op dat bij het installeren de ventilator op het achterpaneel niet wordt gebokkeerd zodat het toestel goed geventileerd kan worden.*

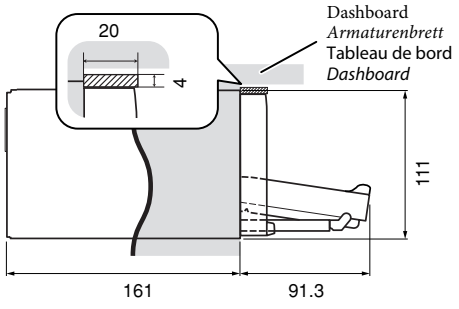
1 *Verwijder het oorspronkelijk geplaatste audiosysteem, met de daarbij behorende bevestigingsbeugels, uit de auto.*
Opmerking: *Bewaar alle uit de auto verwijderde schroeven en onderdelen voor later gebruik.*
2 *Plaats de huls in het dashboard van de auto.*
3 *Bevestig de beugels aan het hoofdtoestel.*
- *Gebruik beslist de bijgeleverde schroeven met platte kop (M5 × 8 mm). Langere schroeven kunnen het toestel namelijk beschadigen.*

4 *Maak de vereiste elektrische verbindingen.*
- *Zie bladzijden 3 – 6.*

5 *Installeer het hoofdtoestel in de huls.*
6 *Bevestig de sierplaat.*



Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
Erforderlicher Platz für Einbau und Monitorausschub
Espace nécessaire pour l'installation et l'éjection du moniteur
Vereiste ruimte voor het installeren en uitklappen van de monitor



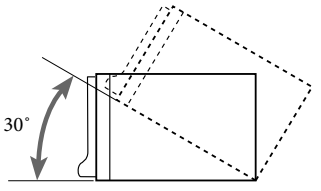
Unit: mm / *Einheit: mm*
Unité: mm / *Eenheid: mm*

Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.

Bauen Sie das Gerät ein einem Winkel von weniger als 30˚ ein, wobei Sie darauf achten, dass der Monitor bei Gebrauch ausfährt.

Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation.

Installeer het toestel met een kleinere hoek dan 30˚, en controleer dat de monitor kan worden uitgeworpen voor gebruik.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.**
- *VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannunsgversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.*

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

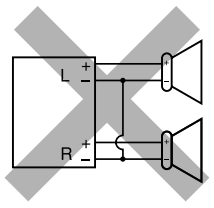
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

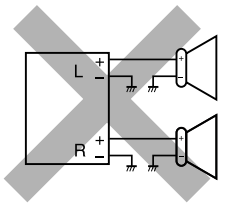
- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

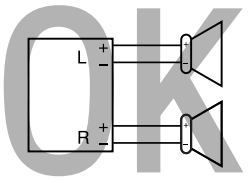
ELEKTRISCHE VERBINDINGEN

VOORZORGSMAATREGELEN bij het verbinden van de stroomkabeldraad met de speakers:

- **Verbind de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel NIET met de accu van de auto; als u dit wel doet, zal het apparaat ernstige schade oplopen.**
- *VOORDAT u de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel met de speakers verbindt, moet u de bedrading van de speakers in uw auto controleren.*

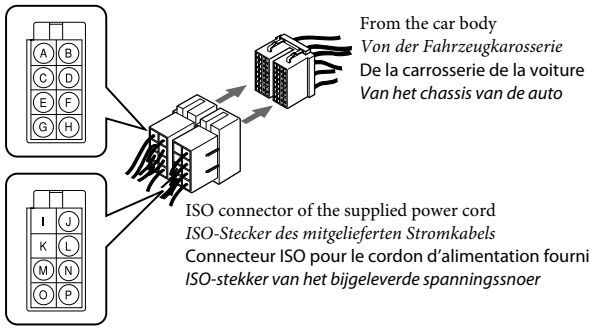






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO / Indien uw auto een ISO-aansluiting heeft

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.*
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Verbind de ISO-stekkers zoals afgebeeld.*



For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- order Opel-(Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall) / Voor bepaalde VW/Audi en Opel (Vauxhall) auto's

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.

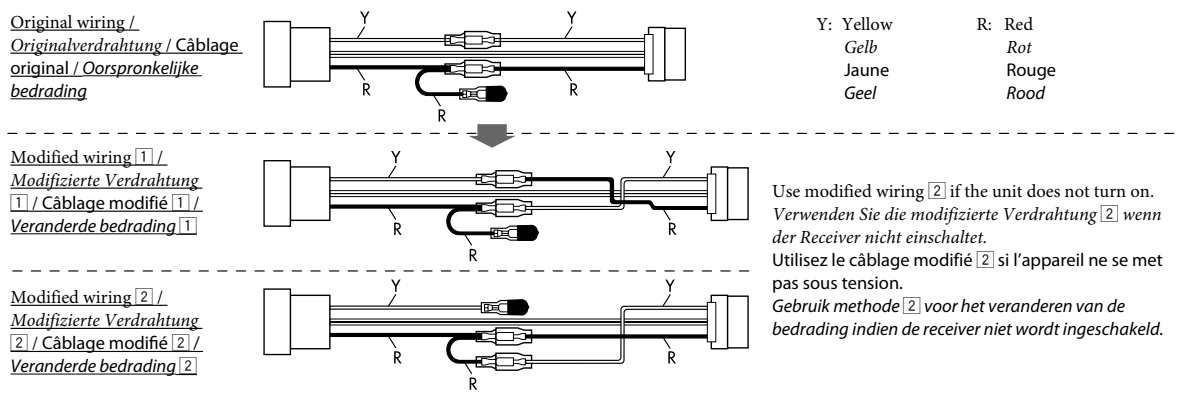
- *Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.*

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.

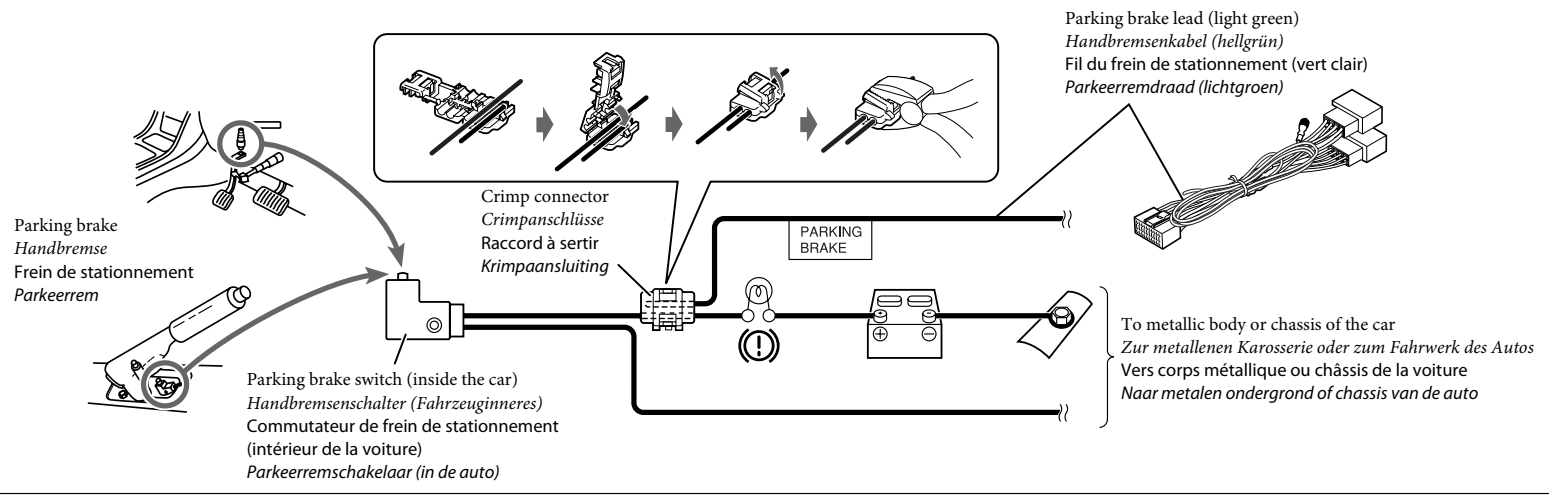
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

U moet mogelijk de bedrading van het bijgeleverde spanningssnoer als afgebeeld veranderen.

- *Raadpleeg een erkend autogarage alvorens deze receiver te installeren.*



Connecting the parking brake lead / Anschluss des Handbremsenkabels / Connexion du fil de frein de stationnement / De parkeerremdraad aansluiten



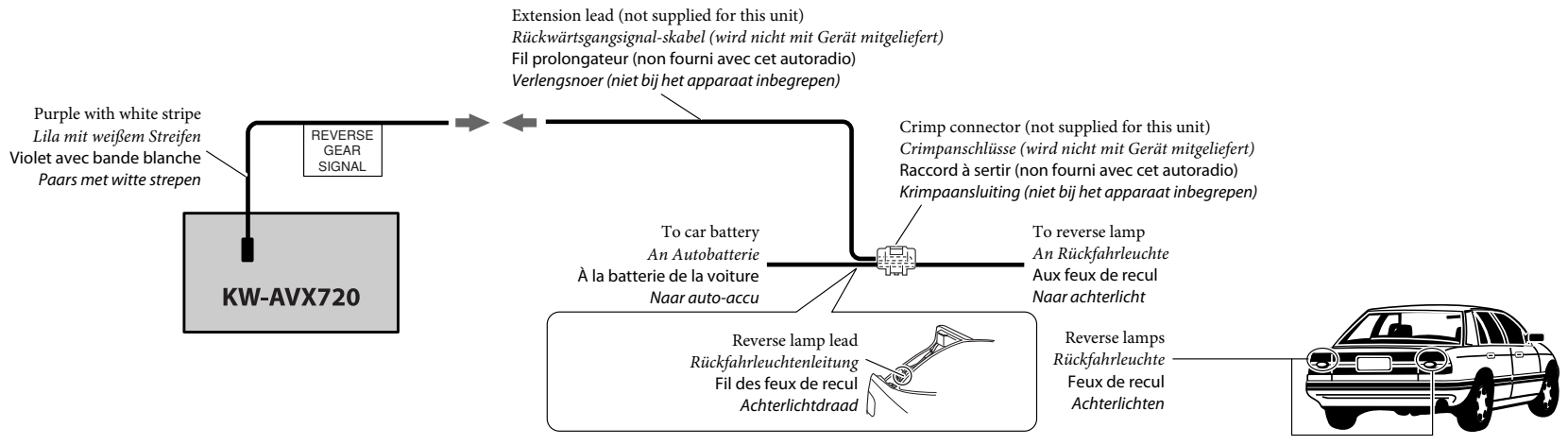
Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / Anschließen der Rückwärtsgangsignalleitung (für die Rückfahrkamera) / Connexion du fil de signal de marche arrière (pour la caméra de recul) / Aansluiten van het achteruitrij-signaaldraad (voor achteruitkijkcamera)

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.

Suchen Sie die Rückfahrleuchtenleitung im Kofferraum.

Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.

Zoek het draad van het achterlicht in de kofferbak.



ENGLISH | DEUTSCH | FRANÇAIS | NEDERLANDS

Connections without using the ISO connectors / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO / Verbinden zonder gebruik van ISO-stekkers

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: *Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen.*
Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.

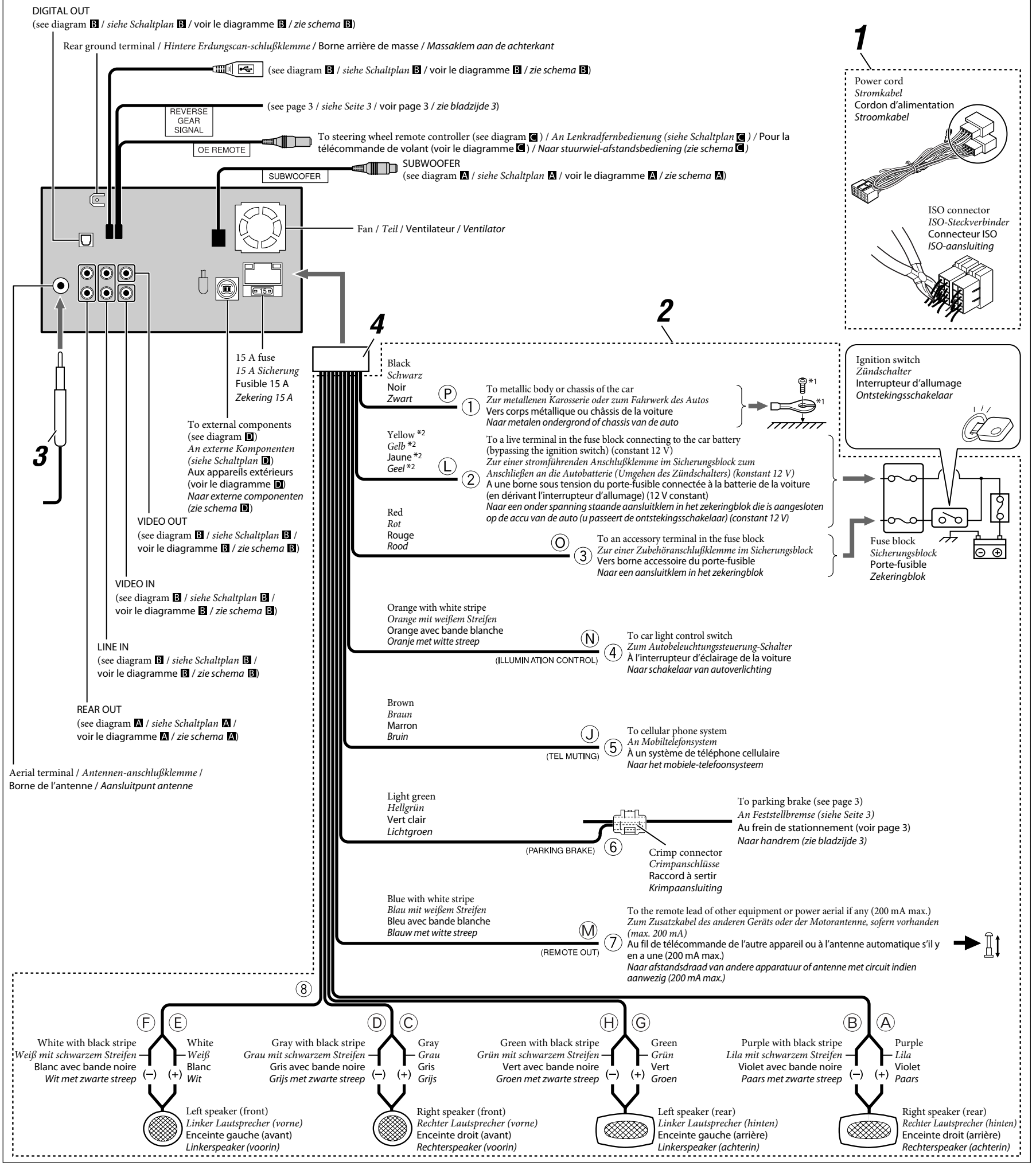
1. *Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.*
2. *Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.*
3. *Das Antennenkabel anschließen.*
4. *Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.*

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. Coupez le connecteur ISO.
2. Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
3. Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
4. Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

Alvorens de verbindingen tot stand te brengen:
Moet u de bedrading in de auto zorgvuldig.
De draden van het stroomsnoer verschillen mogelijk van kleur metde aansluitingen op het chassis van de auto.

1. *Knip de ISO-stekker af.*
2. *Verbind de gekleurde draden van het stroomsnoer in de afbeelding hieronder aangegeven volgorde.*
3. *Sluit de antenne aan.*
4. *Verbind de draadbundel daarna met het apparaat.*



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*
*2 *Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.*

*1 Non fourni avec cet autoradio.
*2 Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.

*1 *Niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen.*
*2 *Voordat u controleert of het apparaat werkt (alvorens het te installeren), moet deze draad aangesloten zijn. Als dit niet het geval is, kan de stroom niet worden ingeschakeld.*

A Connecting the external amplifier and subwoofer / Anschließen des externen Verstärkers und Subwoofers / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et d'un caisson de grave / Verbinden van een externe versterker en subwoofer

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
- You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Sie können Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.

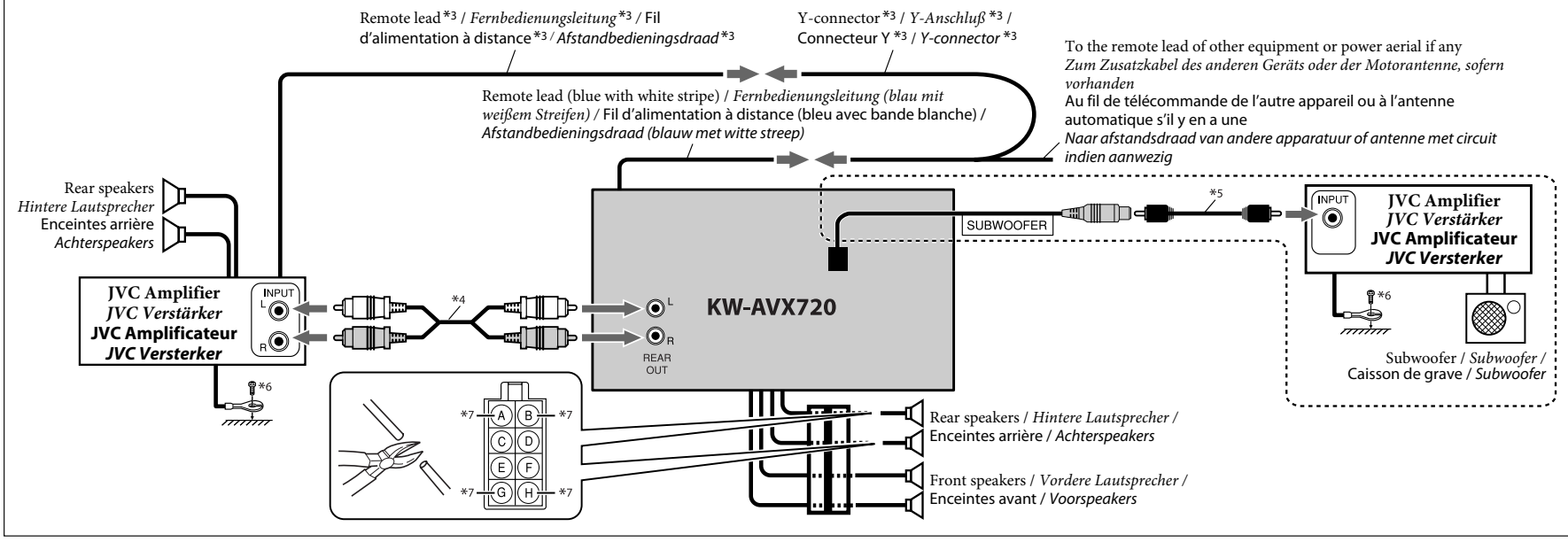
- *Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.*
- **Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.**
- *Sie können den eingebauten Verstärker abschalten und die Audiosignale nur zu dem(n) externen Verstärker(n) ausgeben, um scharfen Ton zu erhalten und Hitzestau in der Einheit zu vermeiden. Siehe Seite 21 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG (separate Druckschrift).*

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

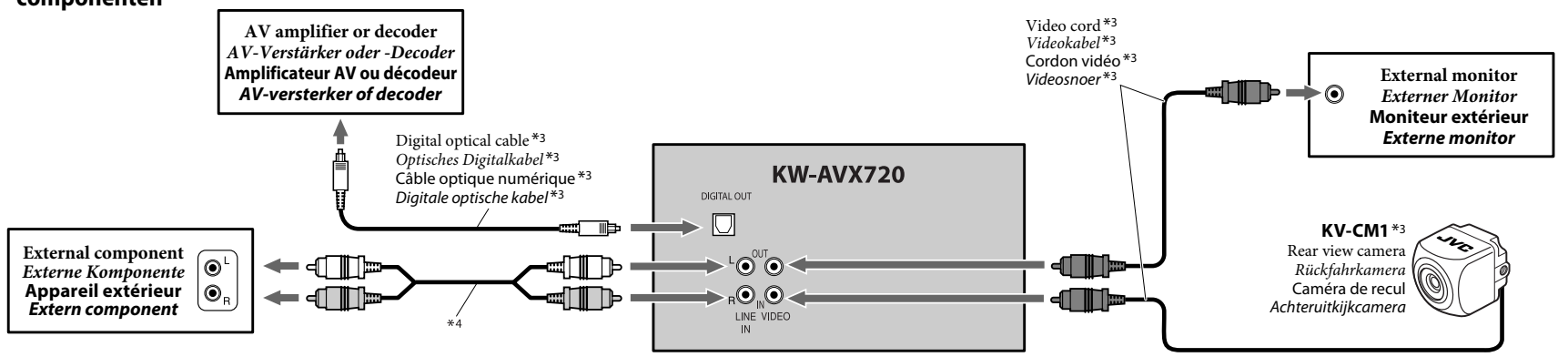
- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
- Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement sur un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et d'éviter tout échauffement interne de l'autoradio. Voir page 21 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).

U kunt uw auto-audiosysteem uitbreiden door extra versterkers aan te sluiten.

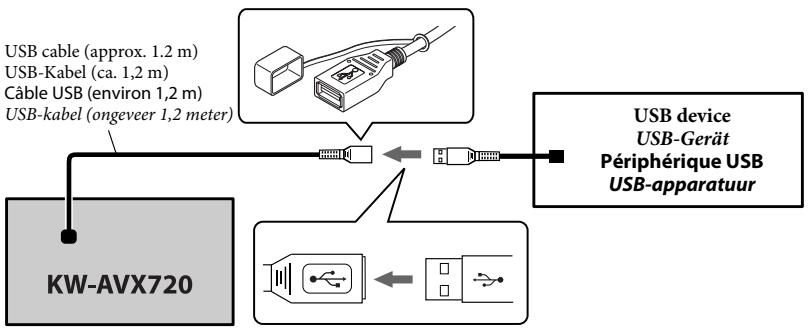
- *Verbind de externe kabel (blauw met witte streep) met de externe kabel van het andere apparatuur zodat deze op afstand vanaf deze apparaat kan worden bediend.*
- **Koppel de speakers van dit apparaat los en verbind ze aan de versterker. Gebruik de speakerdraden van dit apparaat niet.**
- *U kunt de ingebouwde versterker uitschakelen en uitsluitend de audiosignalen naar de externe versterker(s) sturen voor een helderder geluid en te voorkomen dat dit toestel oververhit raakt. Zie bladzijde 21 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING (afzonderlijk boekje).*



B Connecting the external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Connexion des appareils extérieurs / Verbinden van externe componenten



USB devices / USB-Geräte / Périphériques USB / USB-apparatuur



You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
Sie können keinen Computer an den USB (⭠) Anschluss des Geräts anschließen.
Vous ne pouvez pas connecter un ordinateur à la prise USB (⭠) de l'appareil.
U kunt geen computer aansluiten op de USB (⭠)-aansluiting van het apparaat.

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.
iPod is een handelsmerk van Apple Inc., geregistreerd in de V.S. en andere landen.

iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone ist ein Warenzeichen der Apple Inc.
iPhone est une marque de commerce de Apple Inc.
iPhone is een handelsmerk van Apple Inc.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / Anschluss des iPods/ iPhones am USB-Anschluss / Connexion du iPod/iPhone à la prise USB / Verbinden van de iPod/iPhone met de USB aansluiting

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:

- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied for the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied)*8

Sie können den iPod/iPhone am USB-Anschluss mit den folgenden Kabeln anschließen:

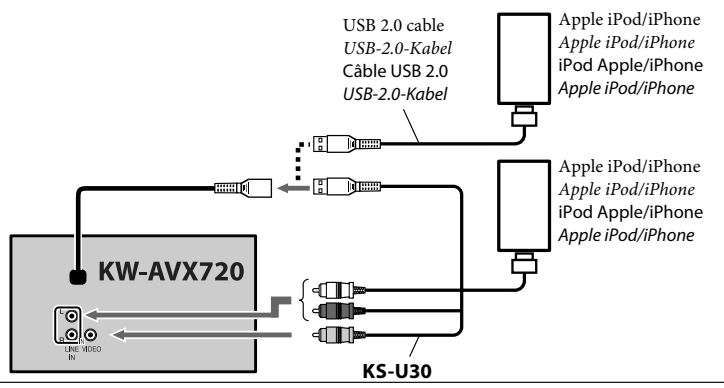
- *Zum Musikhören: USB-2.0-Kabel (für den iPod/iPhone mitgeliefert)*
- *Zum Betrachten von Video: USB-Audio- und Videokabel für iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (nicht mitgeliefert)*8*

Vous pouvez connecter le iPod/iPhone à la prise USB en utilisant les câbles suivants:

- Pour écouter la musique: Câble USB 2.0 (fourni pour le iPod/iPhone)
- Pour regarder une séquence vidéo: Câble USB Audio et Vidéo pour iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (non fourni)*8

U kunt een iPod/iPhone met de USB aansluiting verbinden met gebruik van de volgende kabels.

- *Luisteren naar muziek: USB 2.0 kabel (bijgeleverd bij de iPod/iPhone)*
- *Bekijken van video: USB audio- en videokabel voor iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (niet bijgeleverd)*8*



*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*7 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*8 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*
*4 *Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert).*
*5 *Audiokabel (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert).*
*6 *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*
*7 *Schneiden Sie die hinteren Lautsprecherkabel des ISO-Steckverbinders des Fahrzeugs ab, und schließen diese an den Verstärker an.*
*8 *Bei Verwendung des Kabels stellen Sie sicher, dass <iPod (Off)> für <AV Input> gewählt ist (siehe Seite 18 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*

*3 Non fourni avec cet appareil.
*4 Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil).
*5 Cordon audio (non fourni avec cet appareil).
*6 Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.
*7 Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.
*8 Lors de l'utilisation de ce câble, assurez-vous que <iPod (Off)> est choisi pour <AV Input> (voir page 18 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen.*
*4 *Signaalkabel (niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen).*
*5 *Audiosnoer (niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen).*
*6 *Bevestig de aardedraad goed met een metalen onderdeel of het chassis van de auto—bevestig op een niet-gelakt gedeelte (indien gelakt, schuur dan af alvorens de draad te bevestigen). Het toestel kan worden beschadigd indien de aardedraad niet goed is aangesloten.*
*7 *Knip de achterluidsprekerdraden van de ISO-stekker van de auto en verbind de draden met de versterker.*
*8 *Bij gebruik van deze kabel, moet <iPod (Off)> voor <AV Input> worden gekozen (zie bladzijde 18 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*

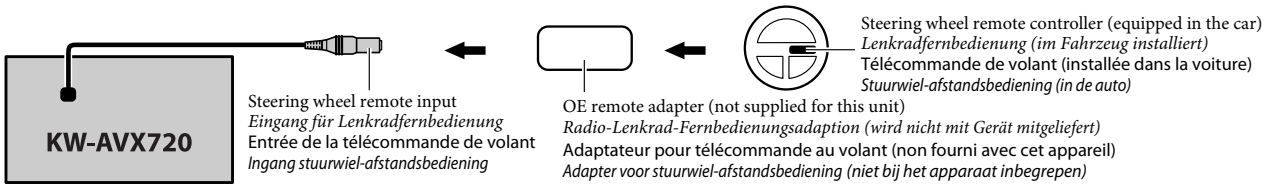
C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Connexion de la télécommande de volant / Verbinden met de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht mitgeliefert) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.

Indien uw auto een stuurwiel-afstandsbediening heeft, kunt u deze receiver met die afstandsbediening bedienen. Hiervoor heeft u echter een JVC adapter (niet bijgeleverd) nodig die geschikt is voor de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening van uw auto. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer voor details.



D Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / Anschluss der externen Komponenten an der CD-Wechslerbuchse / Connexion des appareils extérieurs au changeur de CD / Verbinden van externe componenten met de CD-wisselaaraansluiting

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Beim Anschließen der externen Komponenten siehe auch für die Komponenten und den Adapter mitgelieferte Anleitungen.

ACHTUNG:
Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

Sie können die folgenden JVC-Komponenten an die CD-Wechslerbuchse anschließen.

JVC-Komponente	Modellname
CD-Wechsler (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500 usw.*
DAB-Tuner von JVC	*KT-DB1000*

Sie können auch die folgenden externen Komponenten über die verschiedenen JVC-Adapter anschließen.
- *Es kann erforderlich sein, Verbindungskabel getrennt zu kaufen.*

Komponente	Adapter	Modellname
Bluetooth-Gerät	*Bluetooth-Adapter*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Schnittstellenadapter für iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit Line-Ausgangsbuchsen	*Line-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U57*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit 3,5-mm-Stereo-Minibuchse	*AUX-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U58*

Beim Anschließen von mehr als einer Komponente (Maximum: drei) wird empfohlen, dass Sie die Komponenten in Serie anschließen, wie unten beschrieben.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Tuner JVC DAB	KT-DB1000

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.
- Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.

Appareil	Adaptateur	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	Adaptateur Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod	KS-PD100
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne	KS-U57
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire	KS-U58

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

Zie tevens de gebruiksaanwijzingen van de andere componenten en adapter voor het verbinden van externe componenten.

WAARSCHUWING:
Controleer alvorens de externe componenten aan te sluiten dat dit toestel beslist is uitgeschakeld.

U kunt de volgende JVC componenten met de CD-wisselaaraansluiting verbinden.

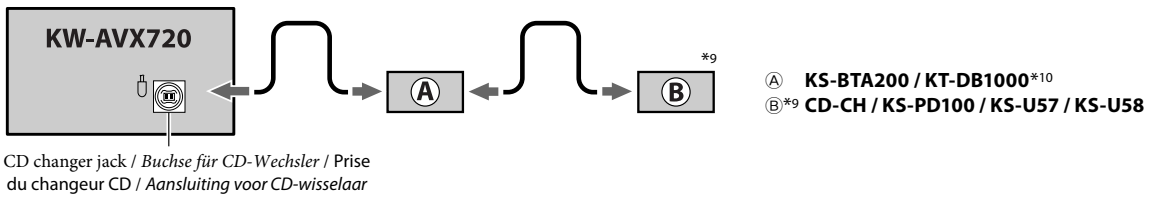
JVC component	Modelnaam
CD-wisselaar (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

U kunt tevens de volgende componenten via diverse JVC adapter verbinden.
- U moet mogelijk aansluitsnoeren aanschaffen.

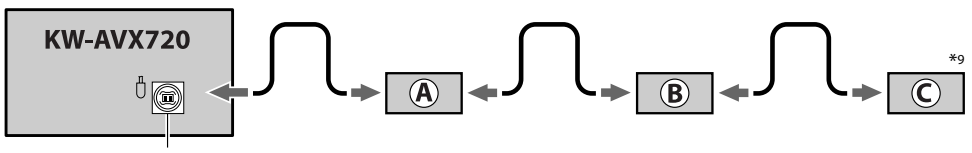
Component	Adapter	Modelnaam
Bluetooth apparatuur	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface-adapter voor iPod	KS-PD100
Draagbare audiospeler met lijnuitgangsaansluitingen	Lijningangs-adapter	KS-U57
Draagbare audiospeler met 3,5 mm stereo mini-aansluiting	AUX-ingangsadapter	KS-U58

Indien u meer dan een component aansluit (maximaal: drie), dient u bij voorkeur de componenten in-serie te verbinden zoals hieronder wordt uitgelegd.

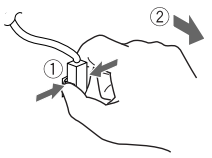
When connecting two components in series / Beim Anschließen von zwei Komponenten in Serie / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série / Indien u twee componenten in-serie verbindt



When connecting three components in series / Beim Anschließen von drei Komponenten in Serie / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série / Indien u drie componenten in-serie verbindt



To disconnect the connector / *Zum Abtrennen des Steckers* / Pour déconnecter le connecteur / *Ontkoppelen van de stekker*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Halten Sie den Steckverbinder fest (①) und ziehen Sie ihn heraus (②).
Tenez le connecteur solidement (①), puis tirez-le vers l'extérieur (②).
Houd de stekker stevig ingedrukt (1) en trek vervolgens naar u toe (②).

*9 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*10 If KS-BTA200 is available, connect it to position Ⓐ and connect KT-DB1000 to position Ⓑ.

*9 *Zur Verwendung dieser Komponenten stellen Sie die externe Eingangseinstellung richtig ein (siehe Seite 19 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
*10 *Falls KS-BTA200 zur Verfügung steht, an Position Ⓐ anschließen und KT-DB1000 an Position Ⓑ anschließen.*

*9 Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 19 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
*10 Si vous disposez du KS-BTA200, connectez-le à la position Ⓐ et connectez le KT-DB1000 à la position Ⓑ.

*9 *Voor het gebruik van deze componenten moet de juiste externe ingangsinstelling zijn gekozen (zie bladzijde 19 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).*
*10 *Indien u een KS-BTA200 heeft, moet u deze met positie Ⓐ en de KT-DB1000 met positie Ⓑ verbinden.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
* *Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?*
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
* *Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?*
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?*
- **Ton verzerrt.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
* *Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?*
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
* *Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?*

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- **Le son est déformé.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

PROBLEMEN OPLOSSEN

- **De zekering slaat door.**
* *Zijn de rode en de zwarte draden op de juiste manier aangesloten?*
- **De stroom kan niet worden ingeschakeld.**
* *Is de gele draad aangesloten?*
- **Er komt geen geluid uit de speakers.**
* *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad kortgesloten?*
- **Het geluid wordt vervormd.**
* *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?*
* *Zijn de "–" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?*
- **Geluid wordt door ruis gestoord.**
* *Is de aarde-aansluiting achter met gebruik van kortere en dikkere snoeren met het chassis van de auto verbonden?*
- **Het apparaat raakt verhit.**
* *Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?*
* *Zijn de "–" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?*
- **Receiver werkt helemaal niet.**
* *Heeft u de receiver teruggesteld?*

JVC

ENGLISH

РУССКИЙ

УКРАЇНА

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
DVD-ПРИЕМНИК С МОНИТОРОМ
ПРИЙМАЧ ТА ПРОГРАВАЧ DVD-ДИСКІВ ІЗ МОНІТОРОМ

KW-AVX720

Radio Data System

DVD VIDEO

COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

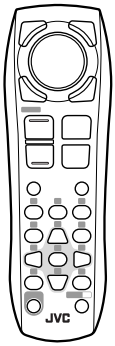
MP3

DOLBY DIGITAL

WMA

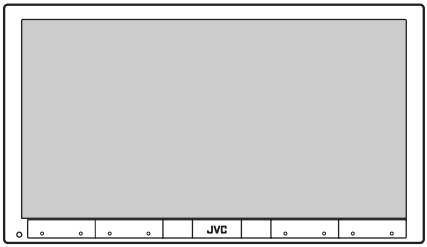
DIVX

WAV



Made for iPod

Works with iPhone



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 12.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 12.
Інформацію щодо відміни демонстрації функцій дисплею див. на стор. 12.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.
Вказівки по встановленню та виконанню підключень наведені у окремій інструкції.

INSTRUCTIONS
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ
ІНСТРУКЦІЇ

GET0604-001A
[EE]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

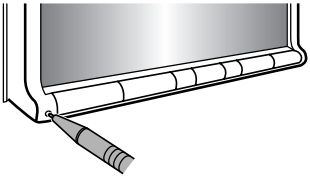
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。 光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG) LV44603-003A

[European Union only]

WARNINGS:
(To prevent accidents and damage)

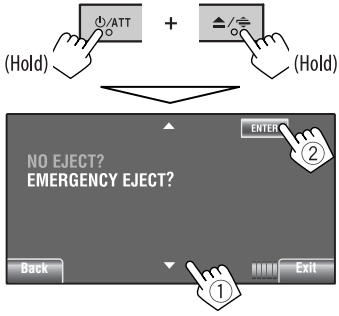
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate the unit while driving.
  If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device). (🔍 28, 40)*

How to forcibly eject a disc



- *You can forcibly eject the loaded disc even if the disc is locked. To lock/unlock the disc, 🔍 32.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

Cautions on the monitor:

- The monitor built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- Do not operate the touch panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip.
  Touch the buttons on the touch panel with your finger directly (if you are wearing a glove, take it off).
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  – Chemical changes occur inside, causing malfunction.
  – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or picture quality may decline in such environments.

How to read this manual

- < > is used to indicate the variable screens/menus/operations/settings that appear on the touch panel.
- [ ] is used to indicate the buttons on the touch panel.
- (🔍 page number) is used to indicate the reference page number of the related topics/operations/settings.
- **Operation index:** To locate easily the desired operations/functions. (🔍 65)
- **Indication language:** English indications are used for the purpose of explanation. You can select the indication language from the <**AV Menu**>. (🔍 15)

Playable disc type

Disc type	Recording format, file type, etc	Playable
DVD • DTS sound cannot be reproduced.	DVD-Video (Region Code: 5) *1 ALL 5 1 5 1 2 3 5	✓OK
	DVD-Audio/DVD-ROM	✗NO
DVD Recordable/Rewritable (DVD-R/-RW *2, +R/+RW *3) • DVD Video: UDF bridge • DVD-VR • DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	DVD-Video	✓OK
	DVD-VR	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4/DVD+VR/DVD-RAM	✗NO
Dual Disc	DVD side	✓OK
	Non-DVD side	✗NO
CD/VCD	Audio CD/CD Text (CD-DA)	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DTS-CD/SVCD (Super Video CD)/CD-ROM/CD-I (CD-I Ready)	✗NO
CD Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/-RW) • ISO 9660 level 1, level 2, Romeo, Joliet	CD-DA	✓OK
	VCD (Video CD)	
	DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2	
	JPEG	
	MP3/WMA/WAV	
	AAC/MPEG4	✗NO

*1 *If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code, "Region code error" appears on the screen.*

*2 *DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs). DVD-RW dual layer discs are not playable.*

*3 *It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video format only) discs. "DVD" is selected as its disc type when a +R/+RW disc is loaded. +RW double layer discs are not playable.*

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

CONTENTS

How to read this manual 3
How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3
Playable disc type 4

INTRODUCTIONS

Basic operations 6
- Using the monitor panel/touch panel 6
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 9

Preparation 12

AV MENU

AV Menu operations 13

OPERATIONS

Listening to the radio 30
Disc operations 32
- Operation buttons on the screen 34
- Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252) 35

USB operations 39

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 40
- Connecting a new Bluetooth device 40
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 41
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 43

Listening to the CD changer 43
Listening to the DAB tuner 44
Listening to the iPod/iPhone 45
- When connected with the USB cable 45
- When connected with the interface adapter 46

Using other external components 47
- AV-INPUT 47
- EXT-INPUT 48

REFERENCES

Maintenance 49
More about this unit 50
Troubleshooting 59
Specifications 63
Operation index 65

Basic operations

Using the monitor panel/touch panel

1. Resets the unit (3).
2. • Turns on the power.
   • Attenuates the sound (if the power is on).
   • Turns off the power. (Hold)
3. Changes the display information.*1
4. • Adjusts the volume.
   • **Bluetooth PHONE** : Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.*2
5. Remote sensor
6. Touch panel (see the following pages).
   • Most of the touch panel operations are explained unless mentioned otherwise.
   • The screen will turn off if no operation is done for about 10 seconds (depends on the <**Illumination**> setting). (19)
7. Motion sensor
8. • Activates/deactivates TA Standby Reception.*3
   • Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (Hold)
9. • Selects the source.*4
   TUNER → DAB → DISC (DVD/VCD/CD) → USB/iPod → CD-CH/iPod/EXT-IN → Bluetooth PHONE → Bluetooth AUDIO → AV-IN → (back to the beginning)
   • **Bluetooth PHONE** : Displays the <**Dial Menu**> screen.*5 (Hold)

*1 – *5 : 7

10 • Selects "**USB/ iPod**" as the source.
• Switches the setting between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE" (Hold)

11 • Displays <**Open/Tilt**> screen.*6
[**Open**] : Opens the monitor panel.
[**Eject**] : Ejects the disc.
[**Close**] : Closes the monitor panel.
[**Tilt +**] : Tilts open the monitor panel.
[**Tilt –**] : Tilts close the monitor panel.
• Ejects the disc and display <**Open/Tilt**> screen. (Hold)
• Closes the monitor panel if the panel is opened.

12 Monitor panel

*1 *Available display information varies among the playback sources. (56)*

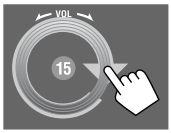
*2 *This adjustment does not affect the volume level of other sources.*

*3 *The TP indicator lights up when activated; flashes when the unit tune into another station providing Radio Data System signals.*
When a DAB tuner is connected, TA Standby Reception also searches for DAB services.

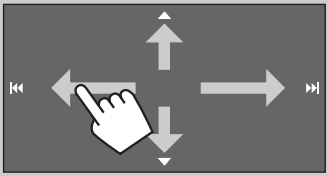
*4 *Available sources depend on the external components you have connected, media you have attached, and the <**Input**> settings you have made. (18)*

*5 *Only when Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*6 *Shaded items cannot be used.*



You can also adjust the volume by moving your finger on the touch panel as illustrated.



When you drag your finger on the touch panel, it functions in the same way as touching [▲ / ▼ / ⏮ / ⏭].

Touch panel and button illumination

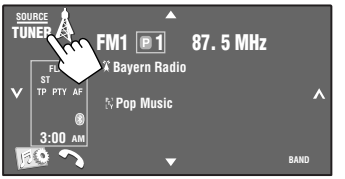
Dependable on the <**Illumination**> setting. (19)

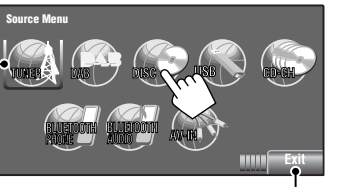
• Turned off:
When no operation is done for about 10 seconds.
• Turned on again:
– When you touch the touch panel or move your hand nearby.
– When you use the remote controller.
– When a call/SMS comes in (for Bluetooth cellular phone).
– When the source automatically changed by receiving the Traffic Announcement /PTY programme.
– When the signal from the rear view camera comes in.
• Always turned on:
– When <**AV Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Source Menu**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Open/Tilt**> screen is displayed.
– When <**Illumination**> is set to <**Normal**>.

Continued on the next page

<Source Menu> screen

You can also select the source using the touch panel.



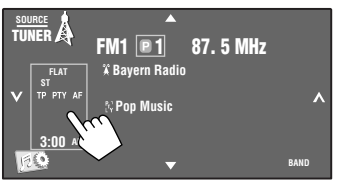


Current source

Exit

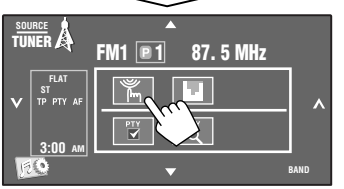
Short Cut icons

You can easily access some frequently used functions by using the Short Cut icons.

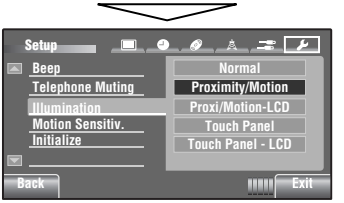


Short Cut window appears.

- To exit from the window, press the button again.



Press a Short Cut icon.



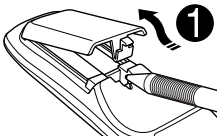
The corresponding screen is displayed.

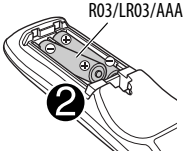
Available icons vary among the sources.

	Displays <**Illumination**> menu. (19)
	Changes the sound mode. (20)
	Turns on or off Track/Chapter Repeat. (23)
	Displays <**Aspect**> menu. (15)
PTY	Activates PTY Standby Reception. (22)
ANN	Activates Announcement Standby Reception. (23)
PTY	Displays <**PTy Search**> menu. (31)
	Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (27)
	Displays <**Redial**> menu. (27)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Installing the batteries





Insert the batteries into the remote controller by matching the polarity (+ and –) correctly.

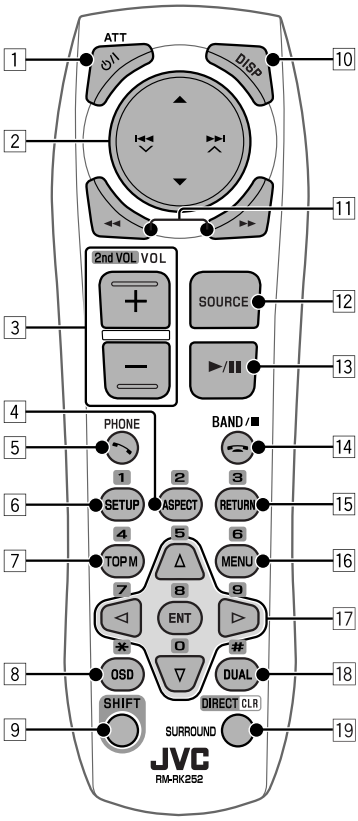
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the batteries.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



The following describes all the available operations for all the sources.

- To easily locate the available operations between different type of files, 35, 36.

1 **⏻/I ATT button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **▲/▼ buttons**

- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the preset stations/ services.

Continued on the next page

- **DISC/USB**:
  – DVD-Video: Selects the title.
  – DVD-VR: Selects the program/Playlist.
  – **USB**/other discs (except VCD/CD): Selects the folders if included.
- **CD-CH:**
  – Selects the folders if included.
- **iPod**:
  – ▲: Enters the main menu (then ▲/▼/⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ work as menu selecting buttons.)
    ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
    ▼: Confirms the selection.
  – ▼: Pauses or resumes playback.

⏮ ∨ / ⏭ ∧ buttons

- **TUNER/DAB**:
  – Searches for stations/ensembles automatically if pressed briefly.
  – Searches for stations/ensembles manually if pressed and held.
- **DISC/USB/CD-CH**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.
- **iPod**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.
  – Reverse search/forward search if pressed and held.

  In menu selecting mode:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**:
  – Reverse skip/forward skip if pressed briefly.

3 **VOL** (volume) **+ / – buttons**

- Adjusts the volume level.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**:
  – Adjusts the volume of the incoming calls.

2nd VOL (volume) **buttons**

- Not applicable for this unit.

4* **ASPECT button**

- Changes the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

5 **PHONE button**

Applicable only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.

- Displays <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Displays <**Redial**> menu if pressed and held.
- Answers incoming calls.

6* **SETUP button**

- Not applicable for this unit.

7* **TOP M** (menu) **button**

- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Original Program screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

8 **OSD** (on-screen display) **button**

- Shows the on-screen bar.
- Does not function as "*."

9 **SHIFT button**

- Functions with other buttons.

10 **DISP** (display) **button**

- Changes the display information.

11 **◄◄/►► buttons**

- **DISC/USB/iPod**: Reverse search/forward search.

12 **SOURCE button**
- Selects the source.

13 ► (play) / ❚❚ (pause) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Starts playback/pauses.
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Answers incoming calls.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Starts playback.

14 (end call) **button**
- **Bluetooth PHONE**: Ends the call.

BAND button
- **TUNER/DAB**: Selects the bands.

■ (stop) **button**
- **DISC/USB/ iPod**: Stops playback.
- **Bluetooth AUDIO**: Pauses.

15* **RETURN button**
- VCD: Returns to the PBC menu.

16* **MENU button**
- DVD-Video: Shows the disc menu.
- DVD-VR: Shows the Playlist screen.
- VCD: Resumes PBC playback.

17* △/▽ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- **CD-CH**: Changes discs in the magazine.

◁/▷ **buttons**
- DVD-Video: Makes selection/settings.
- DivX/MPEG Video: Skips back or forward by about 5 minutes.

ENT (enter) **button**
- Confirms selection.

18 **DUAL button**
- Not applicable for this unit.
- Does not function as "#."

19 **DIRECT button**
- **DISC/USB**: Enters direct search mode for chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track when pressed with SHIFT button (36).

CLR (clear) **button**
- **DISC/USB**: Erases the misentry when pressed with SHIFT button.

SURROUND button
- Not applicable for this unit.

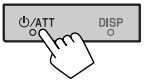
* *Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.*
- **DISC/USB***: Enters chapter/title/program/playlist/folder/track number after entering search mode by pressing SHIFT and DIRECT.* (36)
- **TUNER/DAB***: (Number 1 to 6) : Enters preset station/service number.*

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.
- Some of the operations might be different with the steering wheel remote control function.

Preparation

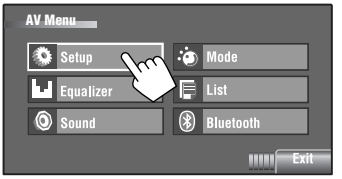
Canceling the display demonstration and setting the clock

1 Turn on the power.



2 Display <AV Menu> screen.

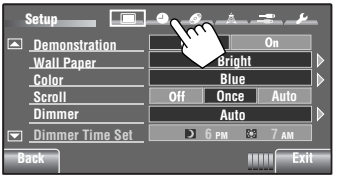
3 Display <Setup> screen.

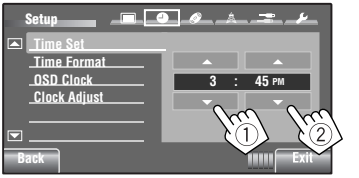


4 Cancel the demonstration.

Select [**Off**].

5 Set the clock.





6 Finish the procedure.

AV Menu operations

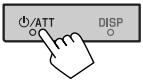
You can use the <**AV Menu**> for most of the operations and settings. The available menu items shown on the touch panel, depends on the selected source.

- Non-available items will be shaded.

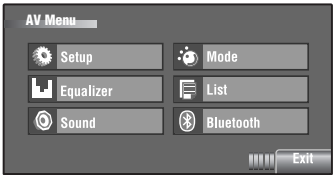
The following steps are one of the fundamental procedures.

- You can perform the operations/change the settings by following these steps unless mentioned otherwise.

❶ Turn on the power.



❷ Display <AV Menu> screen.

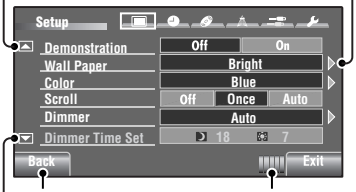


Setup	:	14 – 19
Equalizer	:	20
Sound	:	21
Mode	:	22 – 24
List	:	25 – 26
Bluetooth	:	27 – 29

❸ Press the desired icon/item to perform the desired operations/settings.

Moves to the preceding menu page

Indicates the next hierarchy level/setting item exists



Returns to the previous screen.

Indicates the remaining time before the current screen exit automatically.

Moves to the succeeding menu page

- Some of the settings do not open the sub-setting screen, but just selecting an option will change the setting.
- To exit from the setting, press [**Exit**].

Continued on the next page

Setup

Initial: **Underlined**

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Display	**Demonstration**	◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates the demonstration on the screen. To stop it temporarily, touch the screen. (12)
	Wall Paper	You can select the background picture of the screen. ◆ **Bright, Future, Horizon, Plain**
	Color	You can select the color of the background picture. ◆ **Blue, Light-Blue, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Purple, Dark-Blue, Dark-Green, Brown, Light-Brown, Black**
	Scroll	◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **Once** : Scrolls the displayed information once. ◆ **Auto** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • Touching the information bar scrolls the text regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer	◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates dimmer. ◆ **Auto** : Dims the monitor when you turn on the headlights. *1 ◆ **Dimmer Time Set** : Activates the Dimmer Time setting (see below).
	Dimmer Time Set	Sets the Dimmer On ( )/Off ( ) times.
	Dimmer Level	You can select the brightness for dimmer. ◆ **01** (bright), **02** (middle), **03** (dark)
	Bright	You can adjust the brightness of the screen. ◆ **–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**
	Picture Adjust *2	You can adjust the following to make the screen clear and legible for watching the playback picture. The setting will be stored—one for "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (common) and the other for "**AV-IN**." Press [▲] or [▼] to adjust. (**–15** to **+15**; Initial **00**) ◆ **Bright** : Adjust if the picture is too bright or too dark. ◆ **Contrast** : Adjust the contrast. ◆ **Color** : Adjust the color of the picture—lighter or darker. ◆ **Tint** : Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural, only when color system setting is <**NTSC**>.

*1 *The ILLUMINATION CONTROL lead connection is required. (See the Installation/Connection Manual.)*

*2 *Adjustable only when the source is "**DISC/USB/ iPod**" (the media must contain pictures or videos) or "**AV-IN**."*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Display	**Aspect** *3	You can change the aspect ratio of the picture.

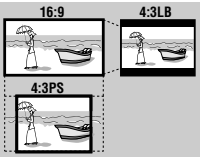
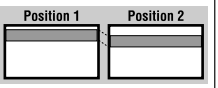
	Aspect ratio of the incoming signal	
	4:3	**16:9**
Regular: For 4:3 original pictures		
Full: For 16:9 original pictures		
Panorama: For viewing 4:3 pictures naturally on the wide screen		
Auto:	• For "**DISC**": Aspect ratio is automatically selected to match the incoming signals. • For the other video sources: Aspect ratio is fixed to <**Regular**>.	

Display	**Language** *4	Select the indication language shown on the screen. ◆ **English, Español, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Nederlands, Svenska, Dansk, Русский, Português** • The characters you can enter for assigning the titles also change according to the language selected. (56)
Clock	**Time Set**	Initial **0:00**
	Time Format	Select either 12-hour system or 24-hour system. (12) ◆ **12 Hours, 24 Hours;** Initial **24 Hours**
	OSD Clock	◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : The clock time is displayed on the playback picture.
	Clock Adjust	◆ **Auto** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the Radio Data System signal. ◆ **Off** : Cancels.

*3 *Not adjustable when no picture is shown.*

*4 *Turn off then on the power so that your setting takes effect.*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Disc	**Menu Language** *5	Select the menu language; Initial **Русский** (🔍 57)
	Audio Language *5	Select the audio language; Initial **Русский** (🔍 57)
	Subtitle *5	Select the subtitle language or erase the subtitle <**Off**>.; Initial **Русский** (🔍 57)
	Monitor Type *5 	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on the external monitor. ◆ **16:9** : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 16:9. ◆ **4:3LB** (Letterbox)/ **4:3PS** (Pan Scan) : Select when the aspect ratio of the external monitor is 4:3.
	OSD Position *5 	Select the position of the on-screen bar. (🔍 38) ◆ **1** : Higher position. ◆ **2** : Lower position.
	File Type *5	Select the playback file type when a disc/USB contains different types of files. You can store this setting separately for each source—"**DISC/USB**." ◆ **Audio** : Plays back audio files. ◆ **Still Picture** : Plays back JPEG files. ◆ **Video** : Plays back DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files. ◆ **Audio&Video** : Plays back audio files and DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2 files.
	DivX Regist. (Registration) *5	This unit has its own Registration Code. Once you have played back a file with which the Registration Code recorded, this unit's Registration Code is overwritten for copyright protection.
	iPod Artwork *6	While playing back a track (in "HEAD MODE"), Artwork recorded for the track is displayed on the monitor. ◆ **Off** : Cancels. ◆ **On** : Activates Artwork display. To display the artwork, press DISP repeatedly. • It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.

*5 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

*6 *Skip the track so that your setting takes effect.*

Menu item		Selectable setting/item
Disc	**D.** (Digital) **Audio Output** *7	Select the signal format emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (optical) terminal. (55) ◆ **PCM** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio, or when connecting to a recording device. ◆ **Dolby D** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. ◆ **Stream** : Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital or MPEG Audio.
	Down Mix *7	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks. ◆ **Dolby Surr.** : Select this to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. ◆ **Stereo** : Normally select this.
	D. (Dynamic) **Range Compres.** (Compression) *7	You can enjoy a powerful sound at a low volume level while playing Dolby Digital software. ◆ **Auto** : Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software. ◆ **On** : Select to always use this function.
Tuner	**IF Band Width**	◆ **Auto** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ◆ **Wide** : Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AF Regional	When the received signals from the current station become weak, you can change the Network-Tracking Reception. (50) • When the DAB tuner is connected, refer also to <**DAB AF**>, 18. ◆ **Off** : Cancels—not selectable when <**DAB AF**> is set to <**On**>. ◆ **AF Reg.** (Regional) : Switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. The REG indicator lights up. ◆ **AF** : Switches to another station. The programme may differ from the one currently received (the AF indicator lights up).

*7 *Selectable only for "**DISC/USB**." (Playback stops when you change the setting.)*

Continued on the next page

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Tuner	**TA Volume**	When you activate TA Standby Reception (6), the unit will temporarily switch to Traffic Announcement (TA) if available, from any source other than AM. You can preset the TA volume level. • The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current volume level is lower than the preset level. ◆ **VOL 00** to **30** (or **50**) *8; Initial **VOL 15**
	Program Search *9	Usually when you select preset stations, the preset station is tuned in. If the signals from the FM Radio Data System preset station are not strong enough, this unit uses the AF data to tune in to another station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals. ◆ **On** : Select to activate. ◆ **Off** : Cancels.
	DAB AF *10	**While receiving a DAB service:** When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM Radio Data System station broadcasting the same programme. **While receiving an FM Radio Data System station:** When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM Radio Data System station, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service. ◆ **On** : Select to activate. ◆ **Off** : Cancels.
Input	**AV Input** *11	You can determine the use of LINE IN and VIDEO IN jacks. (47) ◆ **Off** : Select when no component is connected ("**AV-IN**" is skipped while selecting the source). ◆ **iPod (Off)** : Select when connecting the iPod/iPhone using the USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone. (45) ◆ **Audio&Video** : Select when connecting an AV component such as a VCR. ◆ **Audio** : Select when connecting an audio component such as a portable audio player. ◆ **Camera** *12 : Select when connecting a rear view camera to display the picture (as it is taken). ◆ **Navigation** : Select when connecting a Navigation System. (48)

*8 *Depends on the amplifier gain control settings.*

*9 *The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.*

*10 *Appears only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*11 *Not selectable when "**AV-IN**" is selected as the source.*

*12 *The REVERSE GEAR SIGNAL lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual. The rear view through the camera appears on the screen in <**Full**> aspect ratio (regardless of the aspect ratio setting) when you shift the gear to the reverse (R) position. When you press DISP on the monitor panel, or when you shift the gear to another position other than the reverse (R) position, the rear view screen is cleared.*

	Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Input	**External Input** *13, *14	For connecting an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear. ♦ **Changer/iPod** *15 : CD changer, (🔍 43), iPod, (🔍 46). ♦ **External** : Any other than the above, (🔍 48).
Others	**Beep**	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **On** : Activates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone Muting *16	♦ **Off** : Cancels. ♦ **Muting1, Muting2** : Select either one which mutes the sounds while using the cellular phone.
	Illumination	You can turn off the screen and the light of the buttons on the monitor panel while turning on the unit. (🔍 7)

	Buttons on the monitor panel	Screen
Normal:	Always lights.	Always lights.
Proximity/Motion:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Always lights.
Proxi/Motion-LCD:	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.	Lights up when your hand moves close to the buttons.
Touch Panel:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Always lights.
Touch Panel-LCD:	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.	Lights up when your finger touches the buttons or touch panel.

	Motion Sensitiv.	Change the sensitivity of the sensor for <**Illumination**> above. ♦ **Low, Mid, High**
	Initialize	Initialize all settings you have made in <**AV Menu**>. Press and hold [**Enter**] to initialize the settings, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)

*13 *Not required for Bluetooth adapter and DAB tuner. They are automatically detected.*
*14 *Not selectable when the component connected to the CD changer jack is selected as the source.*
*15 *The name of the component detected through the CD changer jack is shown.*
*16 *The TEL MUTING lead connection is required. See Installation/Connection Manual.*

Equalizer

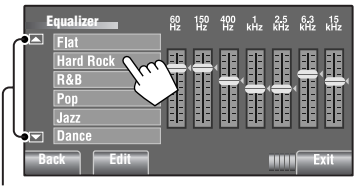
Selects a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

♦ **Flat** (Initial), **Hard Rock, R&B, Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User1, User2, User3**

1 Display <AV Menu> screen.

2 Display <Equalizer> screen.

3 Select a sound mode.



Moves to the other 6 sound modes.

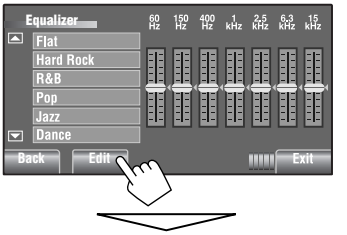
Ex.: When <**Hard Rock**> is selected

Storing your own adjustments

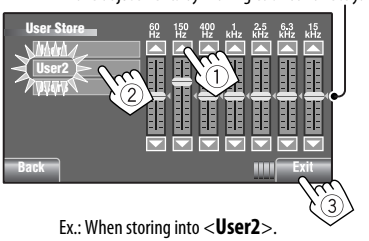
You can store your adjustments into <**User1**>, <**User2**>, and <**User3**>.

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 above to enter the <Equalizer> screen.

2 Adjust the settings, then store.



Make adjustments by moving each bar directly.



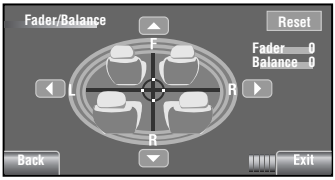
Ex.: When storing into <**User2**>.

Preset equalizing values

Sound mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.5 kHz	6.3 kHz	15 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R&B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Pop	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance	+04	+02	00	–02	–01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User1/2/3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Sound

Initial: **Underlined**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Fader/Balance	**Fader** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. • When using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0." ◆ **F6** to **R6;** Initial **0** **Balance** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. ◆ **L6** to **R6;** Initial **0** Press [▲/▼/◄/►] to adjust. 
Volume Adjust *1	Adjust and store the auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • <**Fix**> appears if "**TUNER/Bluetooth PHONE**" is selected as the source. ◆ **–12** to **+12**; Initial **00**
Subwoofer Level	Adjust the subwoofer output level. ◆ **–06 to +08;** Initial **00**
High Pass Filter	◆ **Through** : Select when the subwoofer is not connected. ◆ **On** : Select when the subwoofer is connected.
Crossover	Select the crossover frequency between the front/rear speakers and the subwoofer. ◆ **80Hz, 120Hz, 150Hz**
Amplifier Gain *2	You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. ◆ **Off** : Deactivates the built-in amplifier. ◆ **Low** : VOL 00 to 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W.) ◆ **High** : VOL 00 to 50

*1 *For "**DISC/USB**": You can make the adjustments separately depending on the audio format—Dolby digital/MPEG Audio and the others.*

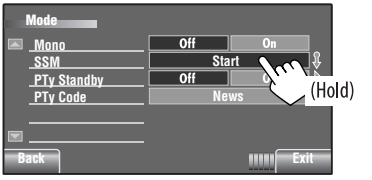
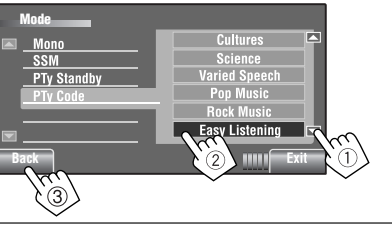
*2 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOL 30" if you change to <**Low**> with the volume level set higher than "VOL 30."*

Mode

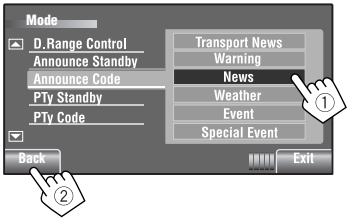
Initial: **Underlined**

Selectable items when the source is:

- **TUNER** : **Mono, SSM, PTy Standby, PTy Code**
- **DAB** : **D.** (Dynamic) **Range Control, Announce Standby, Announce Code, PTy Standby, PTy Code**
- **DISC, USB, CD-CH, iPod** : **Repeat, Random**
- **iPod** *1 : **Repeat, Random, Audiobooks**
- **AV-IN, EXT-IN** : **Title Entry**

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Mono	When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive, activate monaural mode for better reception. ◆ **ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost. The MONO indicator lights up. ◆ **OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)	You can automatically preset 6 stations for each FM band. • Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band. 
PTy Standby	PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM. When a DAB tuner is connected, PTY Standby Reception also searches for DAB services. ◆ **ON** : Activate PTY Standby Reception. (The PTY indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another station providing the Radio Data System signals.) ◆ **OFF** : Cancels.
PTy Code	You can change the PTY code (50) for PTY Standby Reception. 

*1 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (45)

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
D. (Dynamic) **Range Control**	Some DAB services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy. • The DRC indicator will light up while tuning in to a service with the DRC signals. As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger. ◆ **OFF/DRC 1/DRC 2/DRC 3**
Announce Standby	Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite DAB service (announcement type) from any source other than FM/AM. ◆ **ON** : Activate Announce Standby Reception. (The ANN indicator lights up; flashes when the unit tune in to another service providing the related signals.) ◆ **OFF** : Cancels.
Announce Code	You can change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception.  ◆ **Transport News, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special Event, Radio Info, Sports News, Financial News**
Repeat*2	Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Repeat	DISC					USB		CD-CH		iPod	iPod
	DVD-Video	DVD-VR	DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV	JPEG	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV	JPEG	CD	MP3		
Chapter	●	●									
Title	●										
Program		●									
Disc								●	●		
Folder			●	●		●	●		●		
Track			●		●	●		●	●		
One										●	●
All										●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

◆ **Chapter** : Repeats current chapter.
◆ **Title** : Repeats current title.
◆ **Program** : Repeats current program (for DVD-VR, not available during Playlist playback).
◆ **Disc** : Repeats all tracks of the current disc.
◆ **Folder** : Repeats all tracks of the current folder.
◆ **Track** : Repeats current track. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
◆ **One** : Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
◆ **All** : Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
◆ **Off** : Cancels.

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."* (🔍 45)

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item

Random*3

Available items depend on the loaded disc type and playback file.

Source / Disc/file type / Random	DISC		USB	CD-CH		iPod	iPod*4
	DivX/MPEG/ MP3/WMA/ WAV	VCD/CD	MPEG/MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD	MP3		
Folder	●		●		●		
Disc/USB (All)	●	●	●	●	●		
All				●	●		
Song						●	●
Album						●	●
Off	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

- ◆ **Folder** : Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folders.
- ◆ **Disc/USB (All)** : Randomly plays all tracks. (For VCD: When PBC is not in used.)
- ◆ **All** : Randomly plays all tracks of all loaded discs.
- ◆ **Song** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" *5 of the iPod.
- ◆ **Album** : Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
- ◆ **Off** : Cancels.

Audiobooks*3

You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" audio file in your iPod.

- ◆ **Normal** : Plays at normal speed.
- ◆ **Faster** : Plays faster.
- ◆ **Slower** : Plays slower.

Title Entry

You can assign titles (up to 16 characters) to **AV-IN** and **EXT-IN**. (For available characters, 56.)

Press [**Enter**] to show the <**Title Entry**> screen.

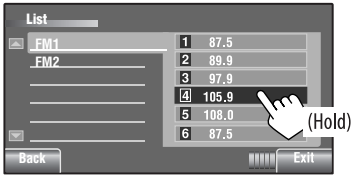
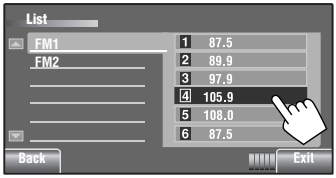
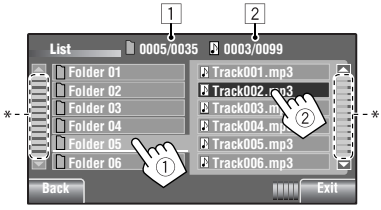
- **[Store]** : Confirm the entry.
- **[◄/►]** : Move the cursor.
- **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor.
- **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor.
- **[Cap]** : Change the letter case (upper/lower).
- **[A → 0 → Ä]** : Change the character set.
- **[Space]** : Enter a space.

*3 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

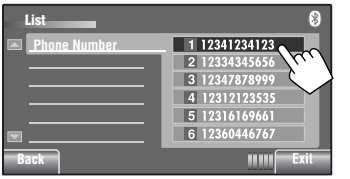
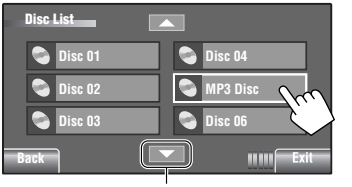
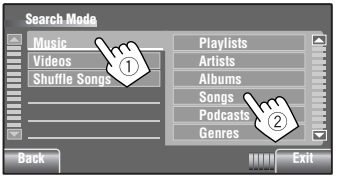
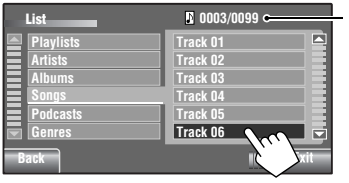
*4 *Not applicable for video file.*

*5 *You can activate* <**Shuffle Songs**> *in* <**Search Mode**> *menu. (26)*

List

Source	Operation/setting
TUNER/DAB	• **Storing a preset station/service manually** 1 Press [**BAND**], then [⌃ / ⌄] to tune in to the station you want to preset. 2 Select <**List**> from the <**AV Menu**>. 3 Press and hold a preset number.  Ex.: Storing FM station in to preset number 4 The station selected in step 1 is now stored in preset number 4. • **Selecting a preset station/service on the list**  Ex.: Selecting a preset FM station
DISC/USB	**Selecting a track on the list** If a device contains folders, you can display the Folder/Track (File) Lists, then start playback.  1 Current folder list number/ total folder list number 2 Current track list number/total track list number of the current folder * *Press: Skips the list up or down.* *Drag: Scrolls the list up or down.*

Continued on the next page

Source	Operation/setting
Bluetooth PHONE	**Selecting a preset phone number on the list to make a call** 
CD-CH	**Selecting a disc on the list**  To go to the other list If an MP3 disc is selected, Folder/ Track List appear. Select a track to start playback.
iPod *	**Selecting a track/video from <Search Mode>**  ◆ **Music :** Playlists, Artists, Albums, Songs, Podcasts, Genres, Composers, Audiobooks ◆ **Videos :** Video Playlists, Movies, Music Videos, TV shows, Video Podcasts ◆ **Shuffle Songs :** Playback starts if this is selected.  Current track (video) number/total track (video) number

* *Not applicable in "iPod MODE." (45)*

Bluetooth

Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source for operations.

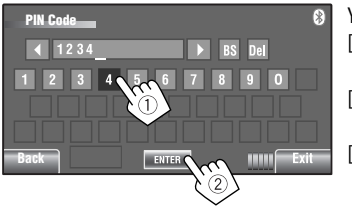
- Firstly, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to register and establish the connection with a device.

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Dial Menu *1	Select the method to make a call. ◆ **Redial** : Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. ◆ **Received Calls** : Shows the list of the received calls. ◆ **Phonebook** : Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. ◆ **Missed Calls** : Shows the list of the missed calls. ◆ **Phone Number** : Shows the phone number entry screen. **[BS]** : Erase the character before the cursor. **[Del]** : Erase the character on the cursor. **[Preset]** : Goes to Preset List. You can preset the entered number by selecting a preset number. **[Dial]** : Calls the entered number. ◆ **Voice Dialing** : Only when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system: → Speak the name you want to call.
Message *2	**If <Message Info> is set to <Manual>... (29)** Access the message list to read messages. ◆ **Unread** : Messages you have not read. ◆ **Read** : Messages you have read. ◆ **Unsent** : Messages you have not sent. ◆ **Sent** : Messages you have sent. • The number of messages in each history is also shown.

*1 *Only for the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*2 *Selectable only when the source is "**Bluetooth PHONE**" and the connected cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service).*

Continued on the next page

Menu item	Selectable setting/item
Open	**Preparation:** • Operate the Bluetooth device to turn on its Bluetooth function. • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Open**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. 2 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number)*3. • You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number).  You can enter [**0**] – [**9**] only. [**BS**] : Erases the character before the cursor. [**Del**] : Erases the character on the cursor. [**Enter**] : Confirms the entry. 3 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Open..." is displayed on the screen. Enter the same PIN code (as entered in the above step) on the device to be connected. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit. • The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use <**Connect**> or activate <**Auto Connect**> to connect the same device the next time.
Search	**Preparation:** • Make sure "NEW DEVICE" is selected. If not, press [▲] or [▼] to select it. 1 Press <**Search**> on the <**Bluetooth**> menu. The unit searches for available devices and displays the list of them. (If no available device is detected, "Device Unfound" appears.) 2 Select a device you want to connect. 3 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit. • Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code. 4 Operate the Bluetooth device to connect while "Connecting..." is displayed on the screen. Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

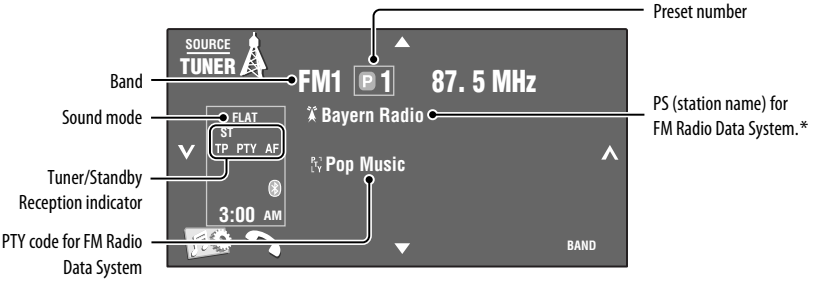
*3 *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

Menu item	Selectable setting/item	
Special Device	Only for "NEW DEVICE." Select a device you want to connect from the list of Bluetooth devices which require some special procedure to establish the Bluetooth connection. Then, use <**Open**> or <**Search**> to connect. • Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit. You can connect the unit and the device by using <**Connect**> the next time.	
Connect	Only for the registered devices. Select a device from the list of registered devices, establish the connection with it.	
Disconnect	Only for the connected devices. Disconnect the current device before connecting another device.	
Delete Pairing	Only for the registered devices. Press <**Yes**> to confirm delete the registered devices.	
Settings Initial: **Underlined**	**Auto Connect***4	When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with... ◆ **Off** : No Bluetooth device. ◆ **Last** : The last connected Bluetooth device. ◆ **Order** : The available registered Bluetooth device found first.
	Auto Answer*5	◆ **Off** : The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually. ◆ **On** : The unit answers the incoming calls automatically. ◆ **Reject** : The unit rejects all incoming calls.
	Message Info*5	◆ **Auto** : The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Receiving Message." To read the message, 🔍 42. ◆ **Manual** : The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.
	MIC Setting*5	Adjust the volume of the microphone connected to the Bluetooth adapter. ◆ **01/02/03**
	Version	The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

*4 *Selectable only for "**Bluetooth PHONE**."*

*5 *Only for the cellular phone connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." Not selectable when "NEW DEVICE" is selected.*

Listening to the radio

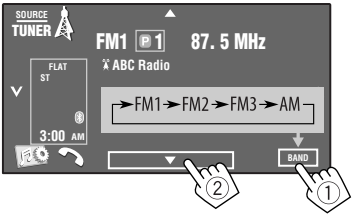


1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [TUNER].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3. **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for a station—Auto Search.**
   - Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
   - The ST indicator lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

* *If no PS signal comes in, "No Name" appears.*

Selecting a preset station

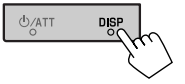
- Directly from the touch panel



You can also select a preset station using the remote controller (9) and from the Preset List (25).

You can display the Preset List by pressing [P 1] or holding [▲/▼].

Changing the display information



(56)

- To improve the FM reception, 22.
- To automatically preset stations into memory, 22.
- To manually preset stations into memory, 25.

The following features are available only for FM Radio Data System stations.

Searching for FM Radio Data System programme—PTY Search

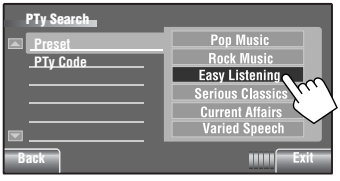
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code of your favorite programmes.

1 Display <PTy Search> menu.

2 Select a PTY code.

In the example below, a PTY code is selected from the Preset List.

If you enter <**PTy Code**> menu below, you can select one from 29 PTY codes. (50)



PTY Search starts.

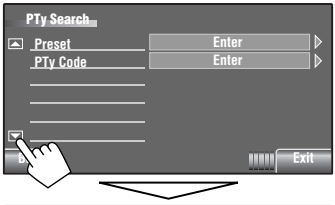
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

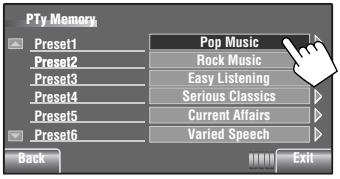
Storing your favorite programme types

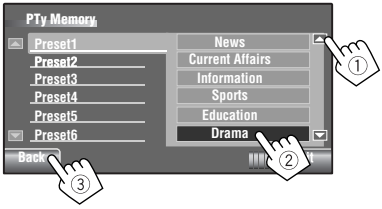
You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.

Ex.: Storing <**Drama**> into <**Preset 1**>

1







2

- To activate/deactivate PTY Standby Reception, 22.
- To change the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception, 22.
- To trace the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception, 17.
- To automatically select station—Programme Search, 18.

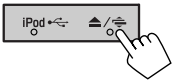
Disc operations

The disc type is automatically detected, then playback starts (for some discs, the top menu of the disc appears).

If a disc does not have any disc menu, all tracks on it will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If "⊘" appears on the screen, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.
- In some cases, without showing "⊘," operations will not be accepted.

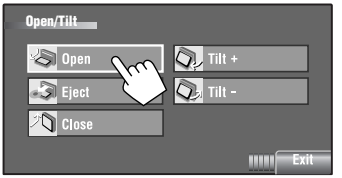
❶ Open the monitor panel.



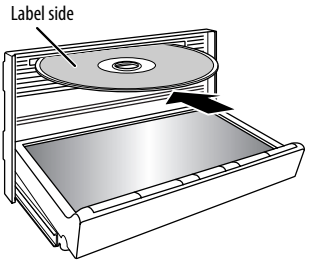
<**Open/Tilt**> menu is displayed.

- By pressing and holding the button, you can open the monitor panel and eject the disc.

❷



❸ Insert a disc.

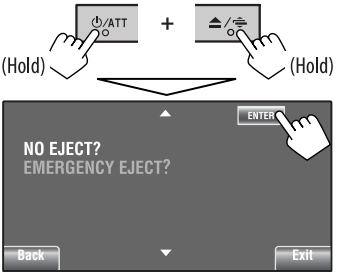


Monitor panel closes automatically.
If not, press [**Close**].

Caution:
Do not place your finger behind the monitor panel.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

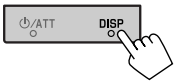


To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure to select <**EJECT OK?**>.
- Discs can be forcibly ejected. (🔍 3)

When playing back a multi-channel encoded disc, the multi-channel signals are downmixed.
- You can fully enjoy multi-channel sound by connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources. (🔍 55)

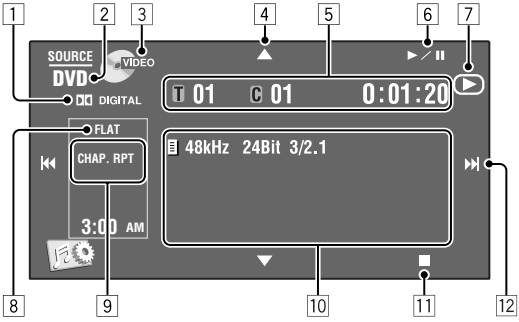
- To select the playback mode, 🔍 23, 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 🔍 25.

Changing the display information



Each time you press the button, the display changes to show the different information. (56)

Ex.: While playing a DVD Video



1 Audio format—Dolby Digital, MP3, WMA, WAV
2 Disc type—DVD, DVD-VR, VCD, CD
3 Video format—DivX, MPEG, VR-PRG (program), VR-PLAY (playlist), PBC
4 [▲/▼]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects title/program/playlist.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV:
  – Selects folder
  – Displays Folder/Track List (Hold)

5
- DVD Video: Title no./Chapter no./Playing time
- DVD-VR: Program no. (or Playlist no.)/Chapter no./Playing time
- DivX/MPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV: Folder no./Track no./Playing time
- JPEG: Folder no./Track no.
- VCD/CD: Track no./Playing time

6 [►/❚❚]
Starts playback/pauses
7 Indicates the button pressed (►/❚❚/■)
8 Sound mode (20)
9 Playback mode (23, 24)
10 Disc/track information
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Sampling frequency/Bit rate/Recorded signal channel no.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG: Folder name/file name
- CD Text: Title/artist name/album name
  – "No Name" appears for conventional CDs or if not recorded
- MP3/WMA/WAV: Current folder name/current file name/tag data (current track title/artist name/album title) if it is recorded

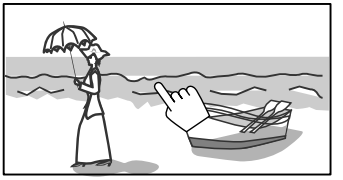
11 Stops playback
12 [|◄◄/►►|]
- DVD Video/DVD-VR: Selects chapter.
- DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Selects track.
- DVD Video/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/VCD/CD/MP3/WMA/WAV: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Continued on the next page

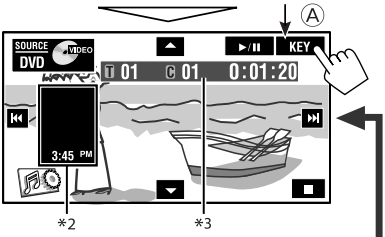
Operation buttons on the screen

You can display the following operation buttons while watching the playback pictures on the screen.

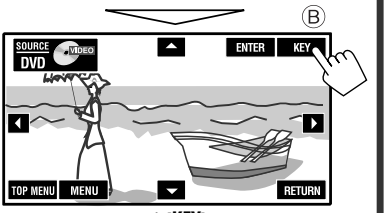
- If no operation is done after awhile, the operation buttons disappear (except when a disc menu is displayed).



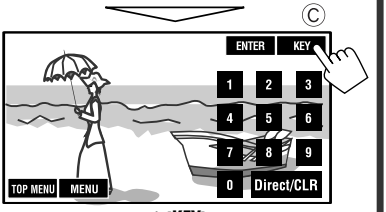
Touch the screen (center portion).



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].



Touch [**KEY**].

To end the operations, touch the screen again.

Ⓐ

[**SOURCE**]	Displays <**Source Menu**> screen
[▲ ▼]	🔍 33
[► / ❚❚]	Starts playback/pause
[⏮ ⏭]	• Selects tracks • Reverse/forward search (Hold)
[ ]	Displays <**AV Menu**> screen
[■]	Stops playback

- The above buttons also work when they are not shown on the screen (while watching the playback picture).

Ⓑ

For DVD/VCD menu operation playback

[▲ ▼ ◄ ►]	Selects the menu items
[**ENTER**]	Confirms the selection
[**TOP MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**MENU**]	Displays the disc menu
[**RETURN**]	Returns to the previous menu or displays the menu (only for VCD with PBC)

Ⓒ

For entering the numbers

[**0**]–[**9**]→[**ENTER**]	Enters numbers
[**Direct/CLR**]	• Switches between chapter/track entry and title/folder entry • Erases the last entry when you enter a wrong number

Ex.: To enter "105," press [**1**], [**0**], [**5**], then [**ENTER**]

*1 *While a disc menu is played back for DVD, [**KEY**] is automatically displayed. On the disc menu, you can select a menu item directly by touching it on the screen*

*2 *Displays Short Cut icons. (🔍 8)*

*3 *Playback time. (🔍 33)*

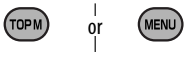
Operations using the remote controller (RM-RK252)

Button	DVD Video / DVD-VR	DivX/ MPEG/JPEG
■	Stop play	Stop play
►/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	• DivX/MPEG: Start play/Pause (if pressed during play) • JPEG: • Start play (Slide show: Each file is shown for a few seconds.) • Pause (if pressed during play).
◄◄ ►►	• Reverse/forward chapter search*1 (No sound can be heard.) • Slow motion*2 during pause (No sound can be heard.) – *DVD-VR: Reverse slow motion does not work.*	• DivX/MPEG: Reverse/forward track search*4 (No sound can be heard.)
⏮ ⏭	• Select chapter (during play or pause) • Reverse/fast-forward chapter search*3 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• DivX/MPEG: • Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*5 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold) • JPEG: Select file
▲ ▼	• DVD-Video: Select title (during play or pause) • DVD-VR: • Select program • Select playlist (during play or pause)	Select folder
◁ ▷	—	• DivX/MPEG: Skip back or forward the scenes by about 5 minutes
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	Select aspect ratio

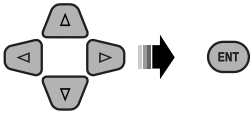
*1 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60
*2 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2
*3 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10
*4 *Search speed:* ►► 1 ⇨ ►► 2 ⇨ ►► 3
*5 *Search speed:* ►► 1 ⇨ ►► 2

Using menu driven features... (DVD Video)

1 Enter the menu screen.



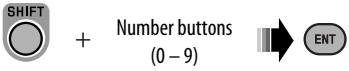
2 Select an item you want to start play.



Canceling the PBC playback... (VCD)

During stop...

1

2 

- To resume PBC, press TOP M/MENU.

Continued on the next page

Button	VCD	MP3/ WMA/WAV	CD
■	Stop play	Stop play	Stop play
▶/II	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)	Start play/Pause (if pressed during play)
◀◀ ▶▶	Reverse/forward track search*6 • Forward slow motion*7 during pause. (No sound can be heard.) – *Reverse slow motion does not work.*	Reverse/forward track search*6	Reverse/forward track search*6
⏮ ⏭	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (No sound can be heard.) (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)	• Select track • Reverse/fast-forward track search*8 (Hold)
▲ ▼	—	Select folder	—
ASPECT	Select aspect ratio	—	—

*6 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×5 ⇨ ×10 ⇨ ×20 ⇨ ×60

*7 *Slow motion speed:* ▶1/32 ⇨ ▶1/16 ⇨ ▶1/8 ⇨ ▶1/4 ⇨ ▶1/2

*8 *Search speed:* ×2 ⇨ ×10

Searching for an item directly

1 While holding SHIFT, press DIRECT repeatedly to select the desired search mode.

DVD-Video: CHAP ➡ -- → TITLE ➡ -- → Canceled

DVD-VR: CHAP ➡ --- → PG/PL ➡ -- → Canceled

DivX/MPEG: TRACK ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

JPEG: FILE ➡ --- → FOLDER ➡ --- → Canceled

MP3/WMA/WAV: Track Search --- → Folder Search --- → Canceled

VCD/CD: Track Search --- → Canceled

2 While holding SHIFT, press the number buttons (0 – 9) to enter the desired number.

3 Press ENT (enter) to confirm.

- For DivX/MPEG/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV, track is searched within the same folder.
- For DVD-VR, program/playlist search is possible during Original program playback (PG)/Playlist playback (PL).
- To erase a misentry, press CLR (clear) while holding SHIFT.
- To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

Using the list screens... (DVD-VR)

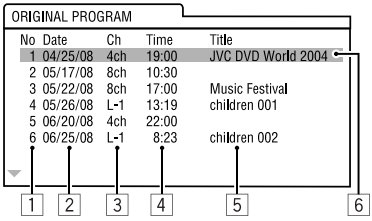
1 Display the Original Program screen.

Display the Playlist screen.

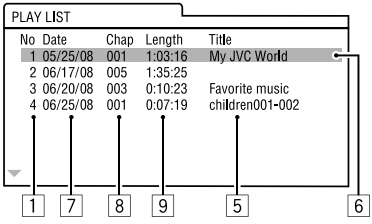
2 Select an item you want to start play.

Original Program/Playlist screen

- **Original Program**



- **Playlist**



1 Original Program/Playlist number
2 Recording date
3 Recording source (TV station, the input terminal of the recording equipment, etc.)
4 Start time of recording
5 Title of the program/playlist*
6 Highlight bar (current selection)
7 Creating date of playlist
8 Total number of chapters included in the playlist
9 Playback time

* *The title of the original program or playlist may not be displayed depending on the recording equipment.*

Operations using the on-screen bar

(DVD/DVD-VR/DivX/MPEG/JPEG/VCD)

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

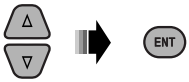
1 Show the on-screen bar (38).

(twice)

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...



- To cancel pop-up menu, press RETURN.
- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

Entering time/numbers

Press △/▽ to change the number, then press ◁/▷ to move to the next entry.

- Each time you press △/▽, the number increases/decreases by one value.
- After entering the numbers, press ENT (enter).
- It is not required to enter the zero and tailing zeros (the last two digits in the example below).

Ex.: Time search

DVD: _:_ _:_ _ (Ex.: 1:02:00)

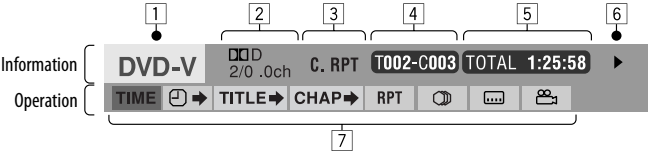
Press △ once, then ▷ twice to go to the third entry, △ twice, then press ENT (enter).

Removing the on-screen bar

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar

Ex.: DVD-Video



1 Disc type

2
- DVD-Video: Audio signal format type and channel
- VCD:PBC

3 Playback mode*1

DVD-Video:	**T. RPT**:	Title repeat
	C. RPT:	Chapter repeat
DVD-VR:	**C. RPT**:	Chapter repeat
	PG. RPT:	Program repeat
DivX/MPEG Video:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	F. RPT:	Folder repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random
	F. RND:	Folder random
JPEG:	**F. RPT**:	Folder repeat
VCD*2:	**T. RPT**:	Track repeat
	A. RND:	All (Disc) random

4 Playback information

T002-C003	Current title/chapter
PG001 C002	Current program/chapter
PL001 C002	Current playlist/chapter
TRACK 01	Current track
F001-T001	Current folder/track
F001-F001	Current folder/file

5 Time indication

TOTAL	Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD-Video, elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist.)
T. REM	DVD-Video/DVD-VR: Remaining title/program/playlist time VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track*3
REM	Remaining time of the current chapter/track*3

6 Playback status

▶	Play
▶▶ / ◀◀	Forward/reverse search
I▶ / ◀I	Forward/reverse slow-motion
II	Pause
■	Stop

7 Operation icons

TIME	Change time indication (see 5)
	Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title/program/playlist or of the disc.)
TITLE	Title Search (by its number)
CHAP	Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK	Track Search (by its number)
RPT	Repeat play*1
RND	Random play*1
	Change the audio language, audio stream, or audio channel
	Change or turn off the subtitle language
	Change the view angle

*1 *For repeat play/random play,* *23, 24.*

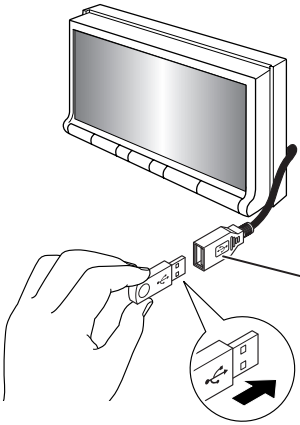
*2 *While PBC is not in use.*

*3 *Not applicable for DVD-VR.*

USB operations

You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect the iPod to the USB terminal of the unit. For details of the operations, 45 – 46.

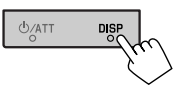


This unit can play JPEG/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV files stored in USB mass storage class device.

- You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on discs.
- All tracks in the USB device will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously when you reconnect the same USB device again.

- To select the playback mode, 23, 24.
- To select tracks on the list, 25.

Changing the display information



(56)

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Now Reading" is shown on the screen.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, 53.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.
- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("**Bluetooth PHONE**" and "**Bluetooth AUDIO**").

Connecting a new Bluetooth device

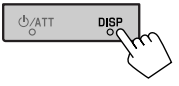
Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in <**Bluetooth**> menu to register and establish the connection with a device.
- Select "**Bluetooth PHONE**" or "**Bluetooth AUDIO**" as the source to operate <**Bluetooth**> menu.

Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. The connection is established by operating this unit.

- To register a device using <**Open**> or <**Search**>, 28.
- To connect a special device, 29.
- To connect/disconnect/delete a device, 29.

Changing the display information



(56)

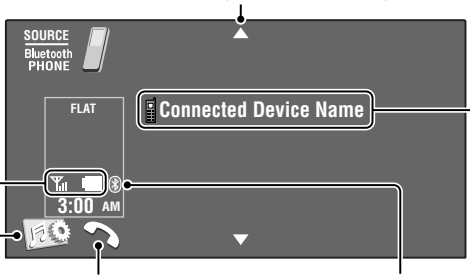
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only).

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

Status of the device
- Signal strength/Battery remainder (only when the information comes from the device).

[▲/▼]: Selects the other registered device.

Connected device name
- When a cellular phone with audio function is registered/connected, appears.



Activates <**Voice Dialing**> function. (Hold)

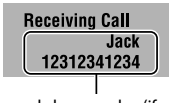
Display <**Dial Menu**> screen.
- Appears on any source information screen when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

Bluetooth icon
- Lights up when the Bluetooth adapter is connected.

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth PHONE].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [Bluetooth].**
4. **Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using <Bluetooth> menu). (27 – 29)**

When a call comes in...

The source is changed to "**Bluetooth PHONE**" automatically.



Name and phone number (if acquired)

When <Auto Answer> is activated...
The unit answers the incoming call automatically. (29)

When <Auto Answer> is deactivated...
To answer the incoming call
- Press the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Press any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

To end the call
- Hold the message displayed on the touch panel.
- Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

- You can adjust the microphone volume, 29.

To make a call, use <**Dial Menu**>. (27)

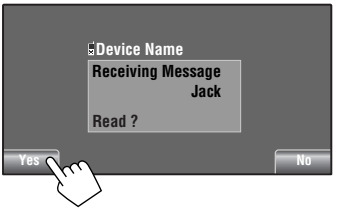
Continued on the next page

When an SMS comes in...

If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service), you can read the messages on the screen.

- You cannot edit or send a message through the unit.

When <Message Info> is set to <Auto>...
The unit rings and the following screen is displayed to inform you of a message arrival. (29)



To read the message, press [**Yes**].
The source is changed to "Bluetooth PHONE."

To read the message later, press [**No**].

- The message is stored into <**Message**> → <**Unread**>. (27)

When <Message Info> is set to <Manual>...
Access the message list to read messages, 27.

To stop ringing (canceling the outgoing call)

Hold any button on the monitor panel (except ⏻/ATT or VOL +/–).

Presetting the phone numbers

You can preset up to 6 phone numbers.

1 Select the phone number you want to preset from <Phonebook>, <Redial>, <Received Calls>, or <Missed Calls>. (27)

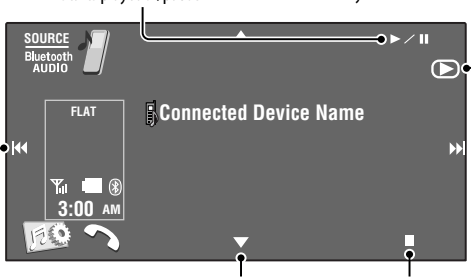
2 Select a telephone number to store.

3 Select a preset number.

Now "**Tom**" is stored into preset no. 1.

To call a preset number, 26.

Using the Bluetooth audio player



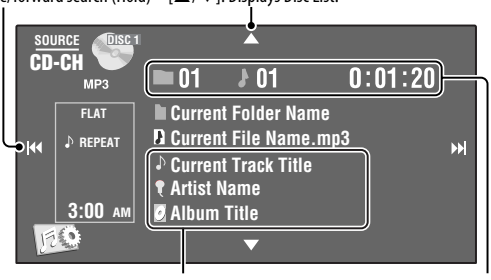
1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [Bluetooth AUDIO].**
2. **Start playback.**
   If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
- You can play only CDs (CD-DA) and MP3 discs.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Changer**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

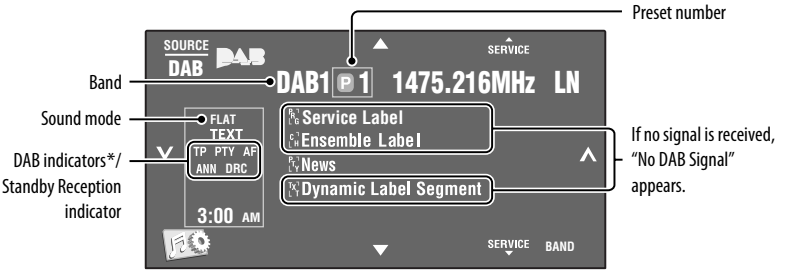
Ex.: While playing an MP3 disc
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects track
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Reverse/forward search (Hold) [▲/▼]: Displays Disc List.



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [CD-CH].**
2. **Press [ ].**
3. **Press [List].**
4. **Select a disc to start playing.**

To select the playback mode, 23, 24.

Listening to the DAB tuner



1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [DAB].**
2. **Press [BAND].** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3
3. **Press [∨] or [∧] to search for an ensemble—Auto Search.**
   - Manual Search: Hold either [∨]or [∧] until "Manual Search" appears on the screen, then press it repeatedly.
4. **Press [▲ SERVICE] or [SERVICE ▼] to select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

* *While tuning in a service with DLS (Dynamic Label Segment), the TEXT indicator lights up.*

- To improve your listening when the surrounding sounds are noisy, 23.
- To manually preset services into memory, 25.
- To select a preset service, 25.
- To activate/deactivate TA/PTY Standby Reception, 6, 22.
  (You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.)
- To activate/deactivate Announcement Standby Reception, 23.
- To change the announcement type for Announcement Standby Reception, 23.
- To trace the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF), 18.

Listening to the iPod/iPhone

You can connect the iPod/iPhone using the following cable or adapter:

To	Cable/adapter	To operate
Listen to the music	USB 2.0 cable (accessory of the iPod/iPhone) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below.
	Interface Adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the interface adapter" on page 46.
Watch the video	USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone, KS-U30 (not supplied) to the USB cable from the rear of the unit.	See "When connected with the USB cable" below. • Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**>, 18.

When connected with the USB cable

There are 2 control modes in "iPod" source.

- "HEAD MODE" : Control by this unit.
- "iPod MODE" : Control by the connected iPod/iPhone.
  Make sure <**iPod (Off)**> is selected for <**AV Input**> when using KS-U30 to connect. (18)

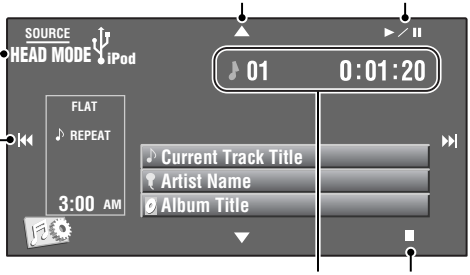
- Press and hold iPod to switch between "HEAD MODE" and "iPod MODE."

The operation explained below are under "HEAD MODE."

- [▲ / ▼]: Moves to the previous/next item of a category*1
- Enters <**Search Mode**> menu (Hold)*2 (26)

Starts playback/pause

Indicates the controlling unit for playback



- [I◀◀/▶▶I]: Selects a track/video
- [I◀◀/▶▶I]:Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Track no./Playing time

Stops playback

*1 [▲ / ▼] *may not function depending on how you select the current track/video.*

*2 *Not applicable in "iPod MODE."*

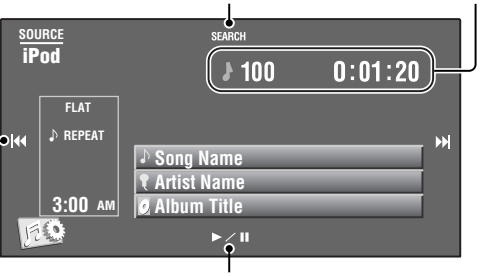
Continued on the next page

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.
- When you connect the iPod to the USB terminal, "**iPod**" is selected as the source and playback starts automatically.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select a track/video.
You cannot resume playback for video sources.

The following operations/settings are only available in "HEAD MODE."
- To display the <**iPod Artwork**>, 16.
- To select track/video from <**Search Mode**>, 26.
- To select the playback mode, 23, 24.
- To change the play speed of the audio books, 24.

When connected with the interface adapter



- [⏮/⏭]: Selects tracks
- [⏮/⏭]: Reverse/forward search (Hold)

Starts playback/pause

Preparation:
Make sure <**iPod**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

1 Press [SOURCE], then press [iPod].
Playback starts automatically.

2 Press [⏮] or [⏭] to select a track.

Selecting a track from the main menu

1 Press [SEARCH] to enter the main menu.
"SEARCH" flashes on the screen during menu operations.
- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to select the desired item.
- Skips 10 items at a time if there are more than 10 items. (Hold)

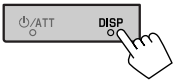
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Press [▶ / ❚❚] to confirm the selection.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select a track.
- When a track is selected finally, playback starts.
- To return to the previous menu, press [SEARCH].

To select the playback mode, 🔍 23, 24.

Changing the display information

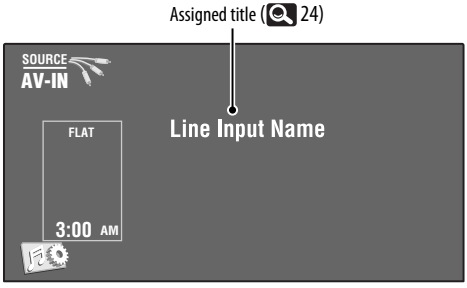


(🔍 56)

Using other external components

AV-INPUT

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN/VIDEO IN jacks.



❶ **Press [SOURCE], then press [AV-IN].**

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

To display the operation buttons while watching the playback picture, 🔍 34.

Continued on the next page

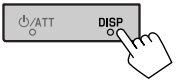
Navigation screen

You can also connect a Navigation System to the VIDEO IN jack so that you can watch the navigation screen.

Preparation:
Make sure <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)

To view the navigation screen

Press DISP on the monitor panel repeatedly. (56)

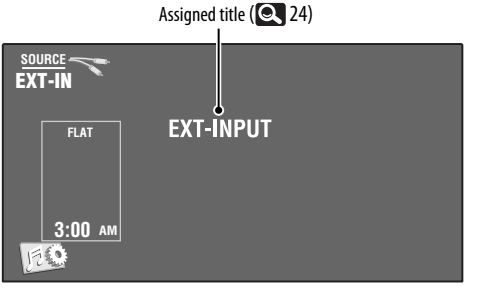


- The aspect ratio of the navigation screen is fixed to <**Full**> regardless of the <**Aspect**> setting. (15)

When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**> (18)
- You can use the source "**AV-IN**" for listening to an audio source connected to the LINE IN jacks.

EXT-INPUT

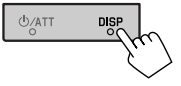
You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter, KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter, KS-U58 (not supplied).



Preparation:
Make sure <**External**> is selected for <**External Input**>. (19)

1. **Press [SOURCE], then press [EXT-IN].**
2. **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

Changing the display information

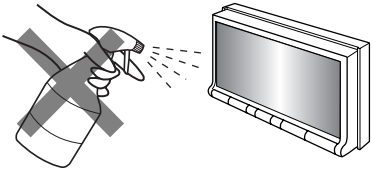


(56)

Maintenance

Caution on cleaning the unit

Do not use any solvent (for example, thinner, benzine, etc.), detergent, or insecticide. This may damage the monitor or the unit.



Recommended cleaning method:
Gently wipe the panel with a soft, dry cloth.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the monitor panel, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Tuner (FM only)

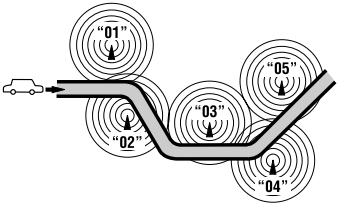
Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is over, received stations are preset in no. 1 (lowest frequency) to no. 6 (highest frequency).

FM Radio Data System operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of Radio Data System signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- **Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception:**
  When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM Radio Data System station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (18)
- Available PTY codes:
  News, Current Affairs, Information, Sport, Education, Drama, Cultures, Science, Varied Speech, Pop Music, Rock Music, Easy Listening, Light Classics M, Serious Classics, Other Music, Weather & Metr, Finance, Children's Progs, Social Affairs, Religion, Phone In, Travel & Touring, Leisure & Hobby, Jazz Music, Country Music, National Music, Oldies Music, Folk Music, Documentary

Disc

General

- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- This unit can only play back audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of audio files (MP3/WMA/WAV) are recorded on the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down or has no playable files, "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen. Eject the disc.

Ejecting a disc

- If "No Disc" appears after removing a disc, insert a disc or select another playback source.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust.

Playing Recordable/Rewritable discs

- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- Some discs or files may not be played back due to their characteristics or recording conditions.

Playing DVD-VR

- For details about DVD-VR format and playlist, refer to the instructions supplied with the recording equipment.

File playback

Playing DivX files

- This unit can play back DivX files with the extension code <.divx>, <.div>, or <.avi> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- Audio stream should conform to MP3 or Dolby Digital.
- The file encoded in the interlaced scanning mode may not be played back correctly.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing MPEG1/MPEG2 files

- This unit can play back MPEG1/MPEG2 files with the extension code <.mpg>, <.mpeg>, or <.mod>*.

* *<.mod> is an extension code used for the MPEG2 files recorded by JVC Everio camcorders. The MPEG2 files with the <.mod> extension code cannot be played back when stored on a USB mass storage class device.*

- The stream format should conform to MPEG system/program stream.
  The file format should be MP@ML (Main Profile at Main Level)/SP@ML (Simple Profile at Main Level)/MP@LL (Main Profile at Low Level).
- Audio streams should conform to MPEG1 Audio Layer-2 or Dolby Digital.
- The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 4 Mbps.

Playing JPEG files

- This unit can play back JPEG files with the extension code <.jpg>, or <.jpeg>.
- This unit can play back JPEG files that are at 32 × 32 to 8 192 × 7 680 resolution.
  It may take time to display the file depending on its resolution.
- This unit can play back baseline JPEG files.
  Progressive JPEG files or lossless JPEG files cannot be played.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV files

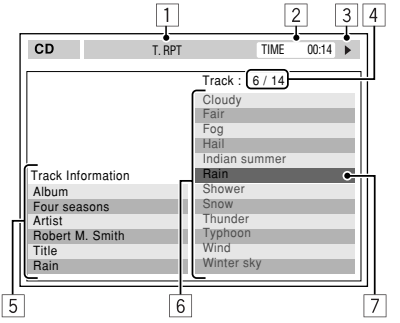
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can play back the files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate:
    MP3/WMA: 32 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG2)
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz (for WMA)
    44.1 kHz (for WAV)
- This unit can show ID3 Tag Version 1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3/2.4 (for MP3).
- This unit can also show WAV/WMA Tag.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

Continued on the next page

Disc/file information shown on the external monitor

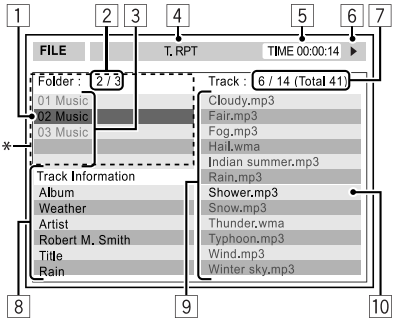
The following screens appear only on the external monitor.

- **CD**



1 Selected playback mode
2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
3 Operation status
4 Current track number/total number of tracks on the disc
5 Track information
6 Track list
7 Current track (highlighted bar)

- **DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/JPEG/MP3/WMA/WAV**



1 Current folder (highlighted bar)
2 Current folder number/total folder number
3 Folder list
4 Selected playback mode
5 Elapsed playing time of the current track (not displayed for JPEG)
6 Operation status
7 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
8 Track information (only for MP3/WMA/WAV)
9 Track list
10 Current track (highlighted)

* *If tag data includes "Jacket Picture" (baseline JPEG), it will be displayed.*

USB operations

- If "No USB Device" appears after removing a device, reattach a device or select another playback source.
- When the USB device has no playable files, or has not been formatted correctly, "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.
- This unit cannot recognize a USB device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with two or more partitions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect only one USB device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- This unit may not recognize a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- When connecting with a USB cable, use the USB 2.0 cable.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of the devices.
- This unit can recognize a total of 5 000 files and 250 folders (a maximum of 999 files per folder).
- This unit can recognize a total of 25 characters for file/folder names.
- For MPEG1/2 files: The maximum bit rate for video signals (average) is 2 Mbps.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error**:
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use <**Connect**> to connect the device again. (29)
- **Error**:
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Unfound**:
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by <**Search**>.
- **Loading**:
  The unit is updating the phone book or SMS.
- **Please Wait...**:
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset08**:
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Continued on the next page

Icons for phone types

- These icons indicate the phone type set on the device.

: Cellular phone
: Household phone
: Office
: General
: Other than above

CD changer

- If you select a folder, which does not include any music files, on the list (26), you will hear a beep. Select another folder including music files.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.

iPod/iPhone operations

- You can control the following types of iPod/iPhone:
  (A) Connected with the USB cable:
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)*1, *2, *3
  – iPod classic*1, *2
  – iPod nano *2, *3
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation) *2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod nano (4th Generation)*1, *2
  – iPod Touch*1, *2
  – iPod Touch (2nd Generation)*1, *2
  – iPhone/iPhone 3G*1, *2
  (B) Connected with the interface adapter:
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod with video (5th Generation)
  – iPod classic
  – iPod nano
  – iPod nano (2nd Generation)
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)
  – iPod nano (4th Generation) *4

*1 *To watch the video with its audio, connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*2 *"iPod MODE" is available,* *45.*
*3 *To listen to the sound in "iPod MODE," connect the iPod/iPhone using USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30, not supplied).*
*4 *It is not possible to charge the battery through this unit.*

- If the iPod does not play correctly, update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through the unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The text information scrolls on the monitor. This unit can display up to 40 characters when using the interface adapter and up to 128 characters when using the USB 2.0 cable or USB Audio and Video cable (KS-U30).

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:
<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

For the USB connection:
When <**iPod Artwork**> is set to <**On**>:
Do not press any keys during the first 5 seconds or more of playing back any track containing an Artwork*. It takes 5 seconds or more to display an Artwork and no operations are available while loading it.
* *The picture displayed on the iPod's/iPhone's screen while playing back a track.*

Menu settings

- If you change the <**Amplifier Gain**> setting from <**High**> to <**Low**> while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOL 30."
- After you change any of <**Menu Language/Audio Language/Subtitle**> settings, turn off then on the power, and re-insert the disc (or insert another disc) so that your setting takes effect.
- When you select <**16:9**> for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if <**4:3PS**> is selected, the screen size may become <**4:3LB**> for some discs.

Sound signals emitted through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT)

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed.

- DTS sound cannot be reproduced.

Through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, MPEG Audio) are emitted.

- DTS sound cannot be emitted.
- To reproduce the multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and MPEG Audio, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set <**D. Audio Output**> correctly. (17)

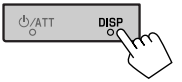
Playback disc \ <D. Audio Output>		Output signals		
		<Stream>	<Dolby D>	<PCM>
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM*		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM / 48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
DivX/ MPEG	with **Dolby Digital**	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with **MPEG Audio**	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
WAV		44.1 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

* *Digital signals may be emitted at 20 or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.*

Continued on the next page

Display information

- Available display information varies among the playback sources.

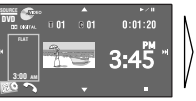


Each time you press DISP, the display changes to show the various information.

Ex.: When the playback source is a DVD video disc

Playback picture screen (only for video sources)

Source information screen



Playback picture and source information screen*1

Navigation screen*2

*1 *When the source is "iPod," the Artwork of the song is shown if the song has an Artwork data. (16)*
While MP3/WMA file is played, "Jacket picture" is shown if the file has the tag data including "Jacket picture."

*2 *When <**Navigation**> is selected for <**AV Input**>. (18)*

Characters you can enter for titles

In addition to the roman alphabet (A – Z, a – z), you can use the following characters to assign titles. (24)

- When <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

- When any language other than <**Русский**> is selected for <**Language**>. (15)

Upper and lower cases

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ł	İ	Ij	ð								

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ľ	ı	ij		

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Language codes (for DVD/DivX language selection)

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	KY	Kirghiz	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LA	Latin	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LN	Lingala	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LO	Laothian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LT	Lithuanian	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MG	Malagasy	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MI	Maori	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MK	Macedonian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	ML	Malayalam	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MN	Mongolian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MO	Moldavian	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MR	Marathi	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MS	Malay (MAY)	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JA	Japanese	MT	Maltese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

JVC bears no responsibility for any loss of data in an iPod/iPhone and/or USB mass storage class device while using this unit.

Continued on the next page

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- DivX® is a registered trademark of DivX, Inc., and is used under license.
- Plays DivX® video:
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified or DivX Ultra Certified device that plays DivX video.
- ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX® Certified device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. First generate the DivX VOD registration code for your device and submit it during the registration process. [Important: DivX VOD content is protected by a DivX DRM (Digital Rights Management) system that restricts playback to registered DivX Certified devices. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- "Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- "Works with iPhone" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

- For operations with the external components, refer also to the instructions supplied for the adapters used with the connections (as well as the instructions supplied with the external components).
- Messages (enclosed in " ") in the tables below are shown in the language selected on <**Language**>. (15) Messages described here are in the language of this manual.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• No sound comes out of the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The screen is not clear and legible.	Sunshine from the windshield may cause this symptom. Adjust <**Bright**>. (14)
	• "Position Error Push Open Key" appears on the screen.	The monitor panel angle has been forcibly adjusted, or its adjustment has been interrupted while opening or closing. Press [**OPEN/TILT**].
	• "Mecha Error Push Reset" appears on the screen, and the panel does not move.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• "No Signal" appears.	• Change the source. • Start the playback on the external component connected to VIDEO IN jack. • Check the cords and connections. • Signal input is too weak.
	• The buttons on the monitor panel do not work.	When the monitor panel is open, only VOL +/– and ⏏/⇕ work. The other buttons do not function.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (3)
	• The touch panel does not respond properly. • <**Illumination**> function does not work properly.	• Keep your hands and the touch panel clean and dry. • Eliminate static electricity and do not place magnetic items near the unit. • Leave the unit until the temperature becomes stable in the car. • A rubber mat on the floor may cause this symptom. In this case, do not use the rubber mat.
TUNER	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually. (25)
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc in general	• Disc can be neither recognized nor played back.	Eject the disc forcibly. (🔍 3)
	• Disc cannot be ejected.	Unlock the disc. (🔍 32)
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Playback does not start.	• Insert the disc correctly again. • The format of files is not supported by the unit.
	• The playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (🔍 14)
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc.
	• No playback picture is shown and "Parking Brake" appears on the screen, even when the parking brake is engaged.	Parking brake lead is not connected properly. See Installation/Connection Manual.
	• No picture appears on the external monitor.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select the correct input on the external monitor.
	• "Eject Error" or "Loading Error" appears on the screen.	Change the source by pressing SOURCE.
	• "Region code error" appears on the screen when you insert a DVD Video.	Region code is not correct. (🔍 4)
DivX/MPEG1/MPEG2/MP3/WMA/WAV	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Change the disc. • Record the tracks using a compliant application on the appropriate discs. (🔍 4) • Add appropriate extension codes to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks are not played back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "Not Support" appears on the screen and track skips.	The track is unplayable.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
USB	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not a playable file format. Skip to another file.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differ from the one played back using other players.
	• "Now Reading..." keeps flashing on the screen.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Copy tracks to the USB device.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, 56.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks are not properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again, and try again.
Bluetooth	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	This unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio player at a time. While connected to a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device.
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. If the PIN code of the device is not indicated on its instructions, try "0000" or "1234." • Select the device name from <**Special Device**>, then try to connect again. (29)
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit (supplied with Bluetooth Adapter) position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped while using a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "**Bluetooth PHONE**." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the player again.
	• "NEW DEVICE" cannot be selected for "**Bluetooth AUDIO**."	Bluetooth audio player is already connected. To select "NEW DEVICE," disconnect it. (29)
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the screen.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the screen.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Cannot play this disc Check the disc" appears on the screen.	Current disc does not include playable files. Replace the disc with one including playable files.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit. (🔍 3)
DAB tuner	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the screen.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the screen.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit. (🔍 3)
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly, then reset the unit.(🔍 3)
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the screen.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod /iPhone	• The iPod/iPhone does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version of the iPod/iPhone. • Charge the battery of the iPod/iPhone. • Check whether "HEAD MODE" or "iPod MODE" is correctly selected. (🔍 45) • Reset the iPod/iPhone.
	• Sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the screen.	Check the connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart playback.
	• "Cannot play this device Check the device" appears on the screen.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• No operations are available when playing back a track containing Artwork.	Operate the unit after the Artwork is loaded. (🔍 16)
	• "Reset01" – "Reset07" appears on the screen.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect them again.
	• "Reset08" appears on the screen.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.
	• "Restricted Device" appears on the screen.	Check whether the connected iPod is compatible with this unit. (🔍 54)
AV-IN	• No picture appears on the screen.	• Turn on the video component if it is not on. • Connect the video component correctly.
	• Playback picture is not clear and legible.	Adjust items in <**Picture Adjust**> menu. (🔍 14)

Specifications

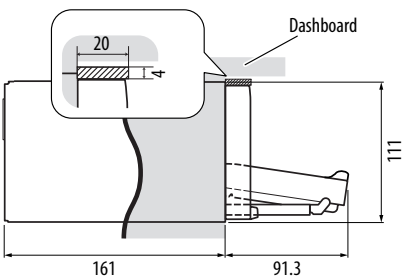
AMPLIFIER	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	20 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 1.0% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies:	60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 15 kHz
		Level:	±10 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level: • LINE OUT (REAR) • SUBWOOFER	Line-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
	Other Terminals:	Input:	LINE IN, VIDEO IN, Aerial input, USB input, Steering wheel remote input
		Output:	VIDEO OUT
		Others:	CD changer, DIGITAL OUT (optical)
FM/AM TUNER	Frequency Range:	FM1/FM2:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		FM3:	65.0 MHz to 74.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	9.3 dBf (0.8 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	40 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/40 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 μV

Continued on the next page

DVD/CD	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz/96 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
		VCD/CD:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
USB	USB Standards:	USB 2.0 Full Speed	
	Data Transfer Rate	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
	Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
	Max. Current:	DC 5 V ⎓ 500 mA	
MONITOR	Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display	
	Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels: 480 × 3 (horizontal) × 234 (vertical)	
	Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format	
	Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
	Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)	
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Storage Temperature:		−10°C to +60°C
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D): • With trim plate and sleeve attached	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 111 mm × 161 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 117 mm × 22 mm
	Mass (approx.):		3.3 kg (including trim plate and sleeve)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Required space for installation and the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, leave an open space for the monitor to come out. If you do not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, and this may result in a traffic accident.

Unit: mm

Operation index

General

Reset 3, 6
Volume 6, 7, 10, 21
AV Menu 6, 13
Source 6, 8, 11, 34
Short Cut 6, 8, 34
RM-RK252 ..... 9–11, 35–38
Clock 12, 15
Display demonstration 12, 14

Tuner

Listening to the radio (FM/AM) .. 6, 9, 10, 30
Auto/manual search 10, 30
Select preset station 9, 25, 30
Store station (automatically/manually) 22, 25
Improve FM reception 22
PTY Search 31
Store programme type 31
PTY Standby Reception 22
PTY codes 22, 50
Network-Tracking Reception 17, 50
Programme Search 18

Disc

Open/close 7, 32
Eject 3, 7
Lock/unlock disc 32
Playable disc type 4
Display information 33
Repeat/random play 23, 24, 38
Select track/folder 10, 25, 33–36
Select title/program/playlist .. 10, 11, 33–35
Start/stop/pause/resume playback 11, 34–36
Search/skip 10, 34–36
OSD 10, 16, 37, 38
PBC playback 10, 11, 35

USB

Attach/detach 39
Start/pause playback 11, 39
Repeat/random play 23, 24

Bluetooth

Connect/disconnect/delete 28, 29, 40
Make a call 27, 41
Answer/end call 29, 41
Read SMS 27, 42
Microphone volume 29
Preset phone number 42

CD changer

Start playback 26, 43
Repeat/random play 23, 24

DAB

Listening to the DAB service 44
Improve listening 23
Preset service 25
TA/PTY Standby Reception 6, 22
Announcement Standby Reception 23
DAB AF 18

iPod

Connect 45, 46
Start/pause playback 45, 46
Head Mode/iPod Mode 45
Repeat/random play 23, 24
Audiobooks 24
Select track 26, 45, 46

External component

AV-INPUT 47
EXT-INPUT 48

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

Маєте ПРОБЛЕМУ з функціонуванням?

Повторно налаштуйте систему

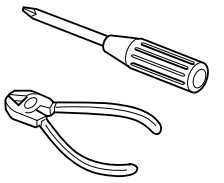
Див. сторінку “Як повторно налаштувати пристрій”

Віктор Компані оф Джепен Лімітед
12, 3-чоме, Морійя-чо, Канагава-ку, Йокогама, Канагава 221-8520, Японія

EN, RU, UK
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited
0109DTSMDTJEIN

KW-AVX720

Installation/Connection Manual
Руководство по установке/подключению
Керівництво зі встановлення та з’єднання



GET0604-002A
[EE]

0109DTSMDTJEIN
EN, RU, UK
© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе.** Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

УКРАЇНА

Цей пристрій призначений для роботи під напругою **12 В постійного струму; з електричними системами, що мають заземлення ВІД’ЄМНОГО полюсу**. Якщо ваше авто не оснащене такою системою, потрібно використовувати інвертор напруги, який можна придбати у дилерів устаткування JVC для автомобілів.

WARNINGS

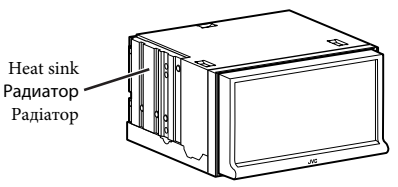
- DO NOT install any unit or wire any cable in a location where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. It may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “Parking Brake” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake lead is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery’s negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car’s chassis again after installation.**

Notes on electrical connections:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**).
  If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change <Amplifier Gain> setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

- НЕ устанавливайте устройства и не прокладывайте провода в местах, где:
  - возникает препятствие для функционирования руля и рычага переключения скоростей, так как это может привести к аварии;
  - возникает препятствие срабатыванию устройств безопасности, например, пневмоподушки, что может привести к несчастному случаю со смертельным исходом;
  - может ухудшиться обзор.
- НЕ используйте устройство, когда управляете рулем; это может привести к аварии.
- Водителю не следует смотреть на монитор во время вождения. Это может быть опасно и может стать причиной аварии.
- Если данное устройство используется во время поездки на автомобиле, следует, не отвлекаясь, следить за дорогой, иначе может произойти дорожно-транспортное происшествие.
- Если стояночный тормоз не включен, на мониторе появляется сообщение “Parking Brake” и изображение воспроизведения отображаться не будет.
  - Это предупреждение появляется только в том случае, если провод стояночного тормоза подключен к стояночной тормозной системе автомобиля.

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания по электрическим подключениям:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4 Ω до 8 Ω**).
  Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим <Amplifier Gain>, чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 21).
- Для предотвращения ороткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

ПОПЕРЕДЖЕННЯ

- НЕ встановлюйте ніяких пристроїв і не приєднуйте жодних кабелів у місцях, де:
  - вони можуть перешкоджати вправлятися з кермом і важелем перемикання передач, тому що це може призвести до аварії на дорозі;
  - вони можуть перешкоджати роботі таких пристроїв безпеки, як подушки безпеки, тому що це може призвести до смертельного випадку.
  - затуляти огляд.
- НЕ виконуйте ніяких операцій з пристроєм під час керування, тому що це може призвести до аварії на дорозі.
- Під час руху водій не повинен відволікатися й дивитись на монітор. Це може призвести до необачності та аварії.
- Якщо вам потрібно скористатися пристроєм підчас руху, уважно стежте за дорогою, щоб не потрапити в аварію.
- Якщо автомобіль не на ручному гальмі, на екрані монітора з’являється напис “Parking Brake”, і зображення не буде виводитися.
  - Це попередження з’являється тільки тоді, коли провід ручного гальма з’єднаний з ручним гальмом автомобіля.

Для запобігання коротким замиканням рекомендується перед встановленням пристрою відключити від’ємну клему акумулятора та виконати усі електричні з’єднання.

- **Переконайтеся у тому, що після закінчення встановлення пристрою, виконано його заземлення на шасі авто.**

Зауваження щодо електричних з’єднань:

- Заміняти запобіжник можна тільки запобіжником із вказаними у специфікації номінальними характеристиками. Якщо запобіжники часто виходять з ладу, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів.
- Рекомендується підключати гучномовці з максимальною потужністю, що перевищує 50 Вт (як для розташованих спереду, так і для тих, що розміщуються позаду. Рекомендований діапазон опору: від **4 до 8 Ом**).
  У разі, якщо потужність є меншою чим 50 Вт, змініть налаштування <Amplifier Gain> (коефіцієнт підсилення) задля запобігання пошкодженню гучномовців (див. стор. 21 ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).
- Для запобігання короткому замиканню, заізолюйте клеми провідника, ЩО НЕ ВИКОРИСТОВУЄТЬСЯ, ізоляційною стрічкою.
- По закінчені роботи радіатор стає надто гарячим. Будьте обережні, не торкайтесь його при видалені цього пристрою.

Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

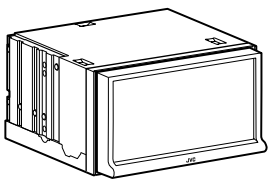
Список деталей для установки и подключения

При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.

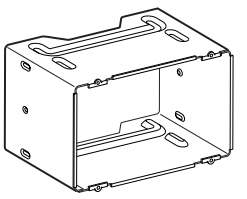
Перелік деталей для встановлення та з’єднання

Якщо будь-яка з цих деталей відсутня, негайно зверніться до дилера устаткування JVC для автомобілів.

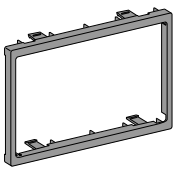
Main unit
Главное устройство
Головний пристрій



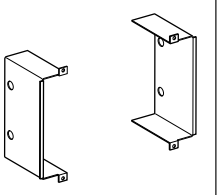
Sleeve*1
Муфта*1
Екран*1



Trim plate
Декоративную панель
Знімна пластина



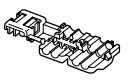
Brackets*1
Декоративную панель*1
Кронштейны*1



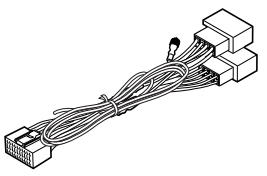
Flat head screws*1 (M5 × 8 mm)
Болты с плоской головкой*1 (M5 × 8 мм)
Гвинти з пласкими голівками*1 (M5 × 8 мм)

Round head screws*1 (M2.6 × 3 mm)
Болты с круглой головкой*1 (M2,6 × 3 мм)
Гвинти з напівкруглими голівками*1 (M2,6 × 3 мм)

Crimp connector
Обжимные разъемы
Обтиснене рознімання



Power cord
Кабель питания
Шнур живлення



Remote controller
Дистанционного управления
Пульт дистанційного керування

RM-RK252

Batteries
Батареи
Батареї

R03/LR03/AAA

Use these screws when installing the unit without the supplied sleeve.
Используйте эти болты при установке устройства без поставляемой муфты.
Використовуйте ці гвинти для встановлення пристрою без монтажного короба, що постачається в комплекті.

Flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Болты с плоской головкой (M5 × 8 мм)
Гвинти з пласкими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)

Round head screws (M5 × 8 mm)
Болты с круглой головкой (M5 × 8 мм)
Гвинти з напівкруглими голівками (M5 × 8 мм)

*1 Fitted to the main unit when shipped.

*1 Закреплено на основном устройстве при поставке.

*1 приєднаний до головного пристрою під час транспортування.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Before installing the unit

- When mounting the unit, be sure to use the screws provided, as instructed. If other screws are used, parts could become loose or damaged.
- When tightening screws or bolts, be careful not to pinch any connection cord.
- Make sure not to block the fan on the rear to maintain proper ventilation when installing the unit.

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Однако необходимо выполнить настройки, соответствующие конкретному автомобилю. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобильных систем JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.

Предостережение во время установки

- При установке устройства используйте только прилагаемые болты в соответствии с инструкцией. В случае использования других болтов существует вероятность, что детали могут быть ненадежно закреплены или повреждены.
- Аккуратно затягивайте болты,чтобы не пережать соединительные кабели.
- При установке для обеспечения правильной вентиляции не закрывайте вентилятор на задней панели.

ВСТАНОВЛЕННЯ (МОНТАЖ НА ПРИЛАДОВУ ПАНЕЛЬ)

Наведена нижче ілюстрація демонструє типовий процес встановлення. Проте необхідно виконати регулювання у відповідності до типу автомобіля. У разі будь яких запитань або потреби у інформації щодо набору інструментів та спорядження, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів або з компанією, що постачає набір інструментів та спорядження.

- Якщо ви не впевнені щодо правильності встановлення цього пристрою, залучіть до його встановлення кваліфікованого спеціаліста.

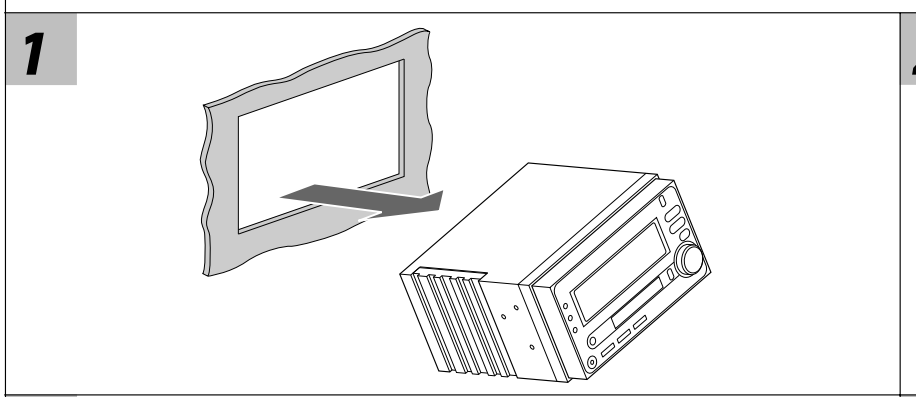
Перед встановленням пристрою

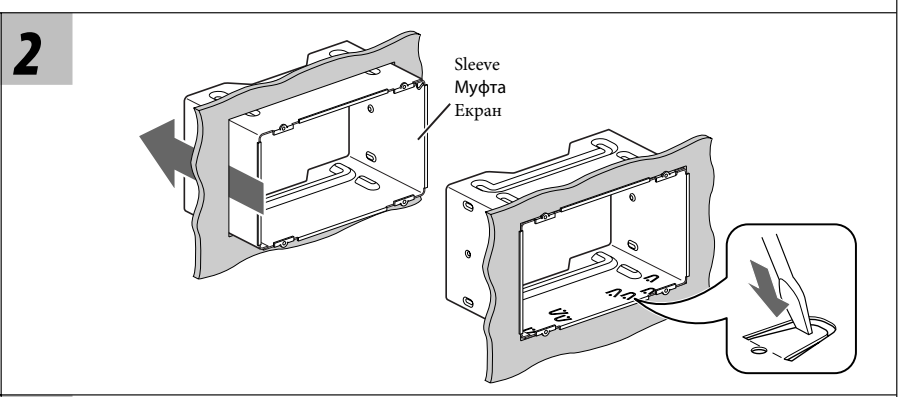
- При встановленні пристрою, використовуйте тільки гвинти з комплекту постачання, відповідно до інструкцій. Якщо використовуються інші гвинти, кріплення окремих частин пристрою може ослабнути або пошкодитись.
- При затягуванні гвинтів чи болтів будьте обережні, щоб не затиснути жоден з'єднувальний шнур.
- При встановленні переконайтеся, що вентилятор задньої панелі не заблокований для забезпечення належної вентиляції.

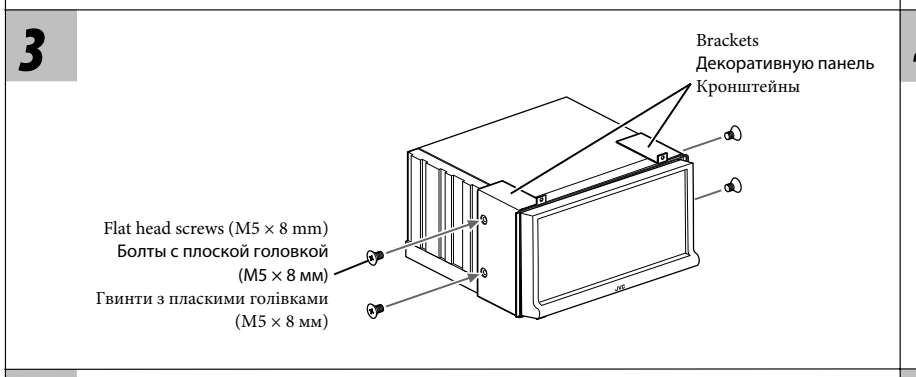
1. Remove the audio system originally installed in the car, together with its mounting brackets.
   Note: Be sure to keep all the screws and parts removed from your car for future use.
2. Install the sleeve in the dashboard of the car.
3. Attach the brackets to the main unit.
   - Make sure to use the supplied flat head screws (M5 × 8 mm). If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
4. Do the required electrical connections.
   - See pages 3 – 6.
5. Install the main unit in the sleeve.
6. Attach the trim plate.

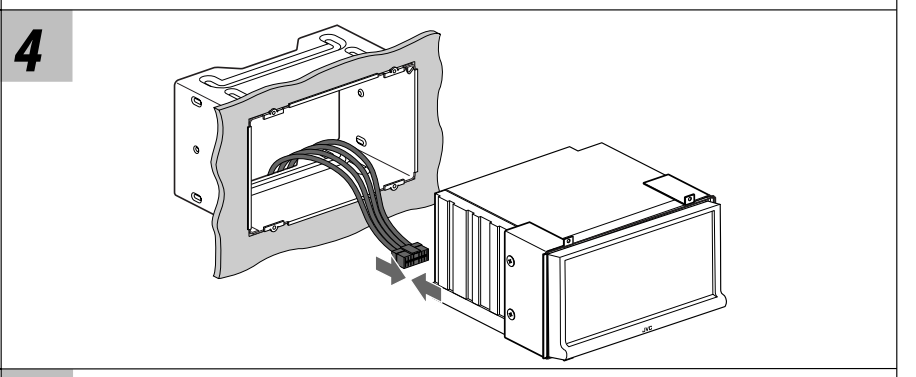
1. Извлеките аудиосистему, изначально установленную в автомобиле, вместе с монтажными кронштейнами.
   Примечание: Не теряйте винты и детали, извлеченные из автомобиля, поскольку они будут использоваться в дальнейшем.
2. Вмонтируйте муфту в приборную панель автомобиля.
3. Прикрепите кронштейны к главному устройству.
   - Используйте болты с плоской головкой (M5 × 8 мм), которые входят в комплект поставки. При использовании более длинных болтов можно повредить устройство.
4. Выполните необходимые электрические соединения.
   - См. стр. 3 – 6.
5. Установите главное устройство в муфту.
6. Прикрепите декоративную панель.

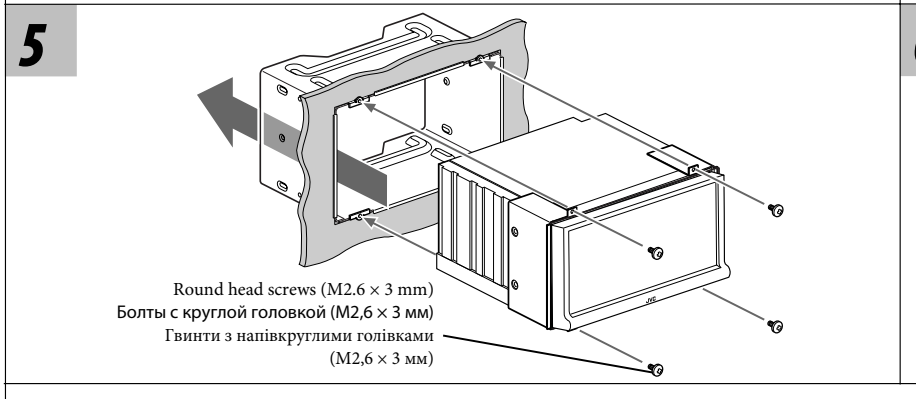
1. Вийміть аудіосистему, встановлену в автомобілі виробником, разом з монтажними кронштейнами.
   Примітка: Зберігайте усі гвинти та деталі, видалені з автомобіля, для подальшого використання.
2. Встановіть екран у приладову панель автомобіля.
3. Приєднайте кронштейни до головного пристрою.
   - Використовуйте лише гвинти із пласкими голівками (M5 × 8 мм), що входять до комплекту поставки. Якщо гвинти довші, вони можуть пошкодити пристрій.
4. Виконайте необхідні електричні з'єднання.
   - Див. стор. 3 – 6.
5. Встановіть головний пристрій всередину екрану.
6. Приєднайте знімну пластину.

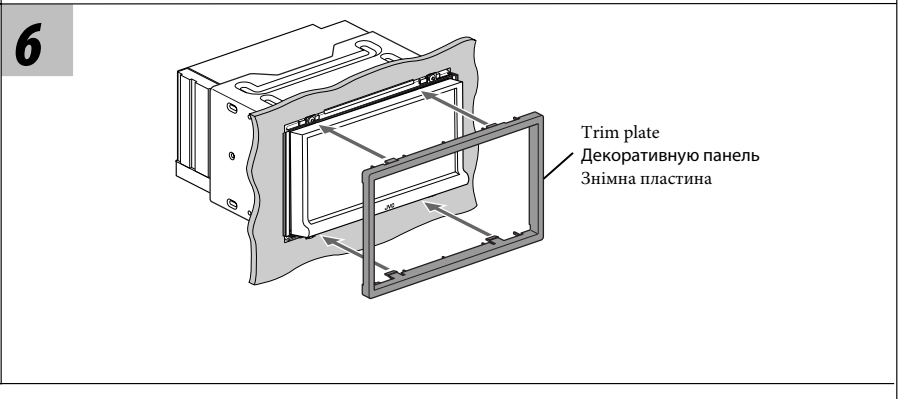




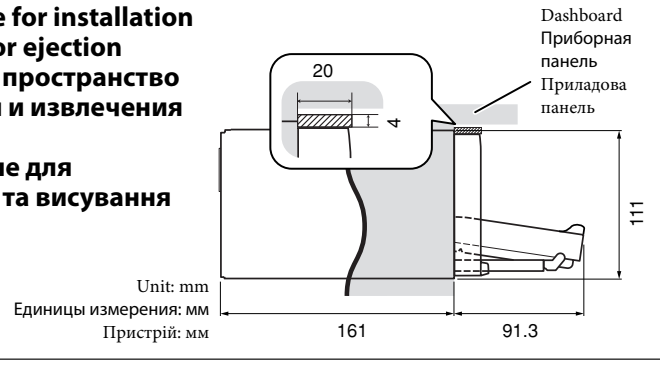




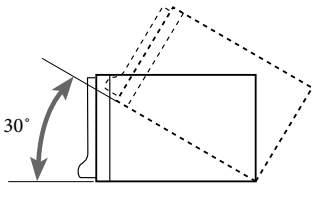




Required space for installation and the monitor ejection
Необходимое пространство для установки и извлечения монитора
Місце, потрібне для встановлення та висування монітора



Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30°, принимая во внимание то,что при использовании монитор будет выдвигаться.
Встановіть пристрій під кутом, меншим ніж 30˚, зважаючи на те, що монітор під час його використання буде знаходитися у висунутому стані.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

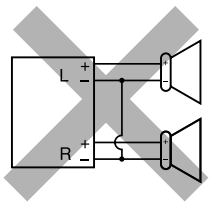
ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

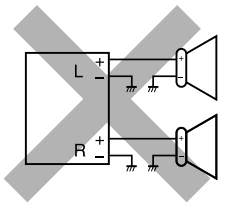
- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.

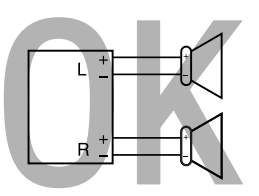
ЕЛЕКТРИЧНІ З'ЄДНАННЯ

ЗАСТЕРЕЖЕННЯ щодо приєднання джерела живлення та гучномовців:

- **НЕ з'єднуйте провідники живлення гучномовців з акумулятором. Невиконання такої вимоги призведе до тяжкого ушкодження пристрою.**
- ПЕРЕД тим, як з'єднати провідники живлення з гучномовцями, перевірте схему з'єднання гучномовців вашого авто.

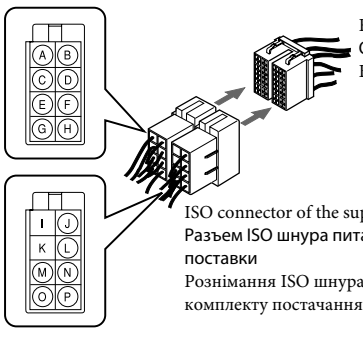






If your car is equipped with the ISO connector
Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO
Якщо ваше авто оснащене розніманням за стандартом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.
- Приєднайте рознімання ISO, як рекомендовано на ілюстрації.



From the car body
От корпуса автомобиля
Від корпусу авто

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки
Рознімання ISO шнура живлення, що входить до комплекту постачання

View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов
Вид зі сторони електричних виводів

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles
Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)
Для деяких авто марки VW/Audi або Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

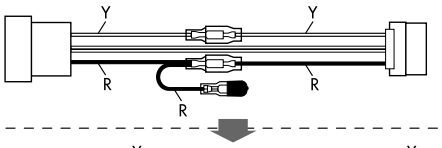
Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.

- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Вам, можливо, прийдеться внести зміни до з'єднання провідників шнура живлення згідно з ілюстрацією.

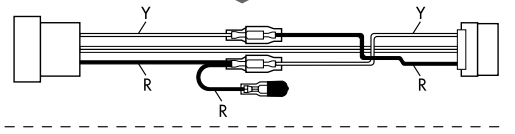
- Перед тим, як встановлювати цей пристрій, зв'яжіться з уповноваженим дилером вашого авто.

Original wiring
Исходная схема соединений
Початкова схема з'єднання рознімань

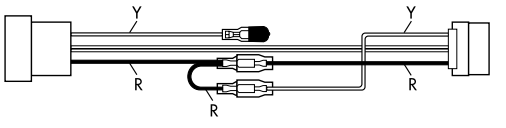


Y: Yellow / Желтый / Жовтий
R: Red / Красный / Червоний

Modified wiring 1
Преобразованная схема соединений 1
Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 1

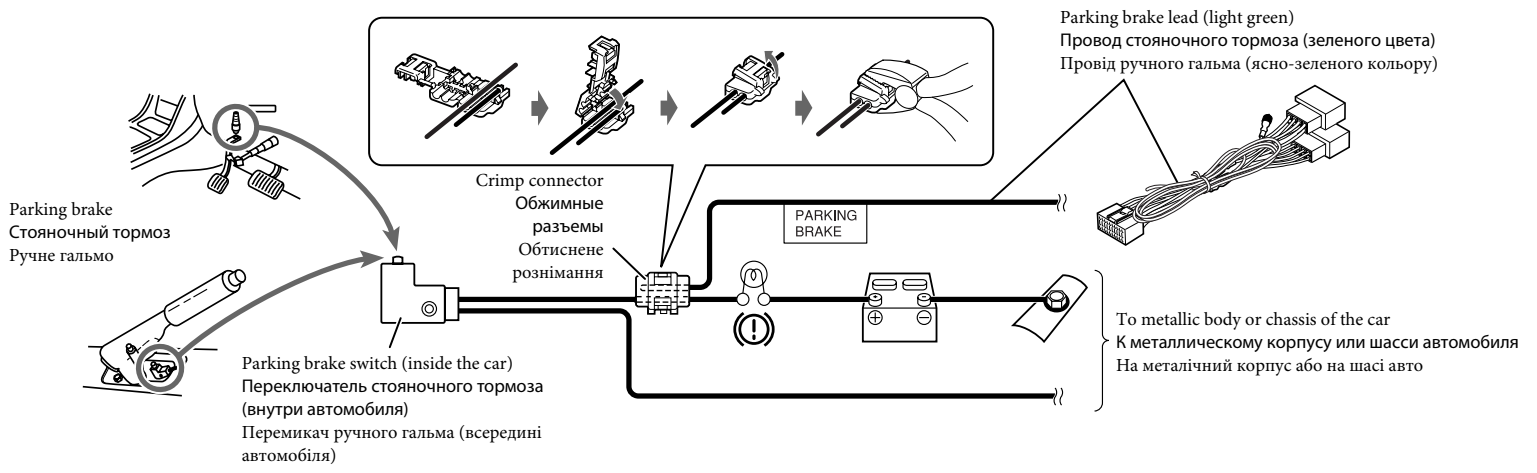


Modified wiring 2
Преобразованная схема соединений 2
Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 2



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.
Якщо пристрій не включається, скористуйтеся зміненою схемою з'єднання рознімань 2.

Connecting the parking brake lead / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза / З'єднання проводу ручного гальма

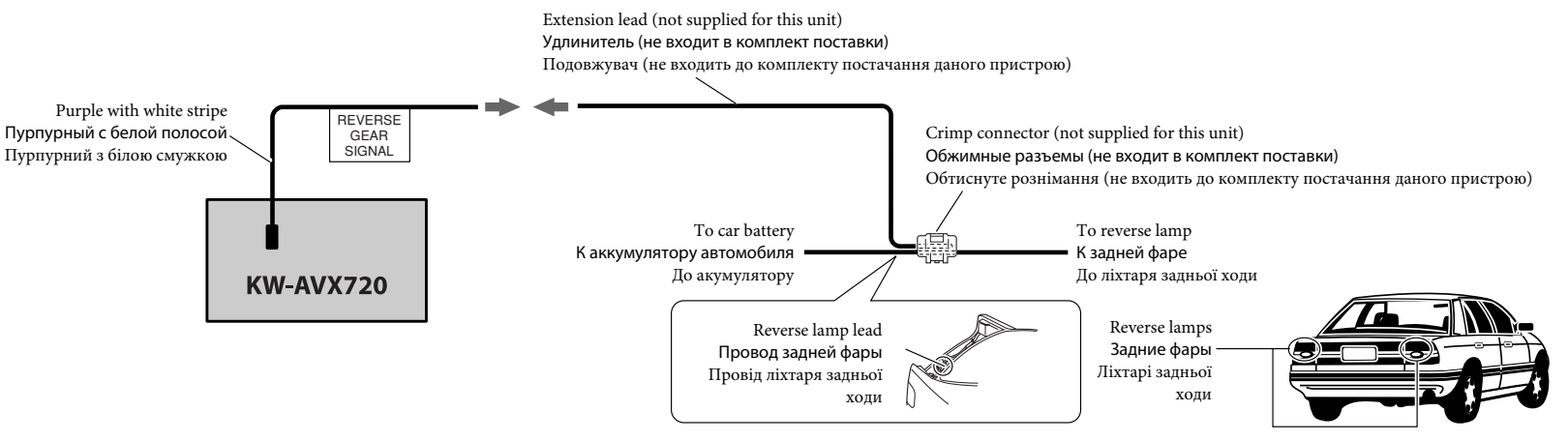


Connecting the reverse gear signal lead (for rear view camera) / Подсоединение провода сигнал включения задней скорости (для видеокамеры заднего вида) / З'єднання з провідником сигналу заднього ходу (для камери заднього виду)

Locate the reverse lamp lead in the trunk.

Найдите в багажнике провод задней фары.

Знайдіть у багажнику провід ліхтаря задньої ходи.



ENGLISH | РУССКИЙ | УКРАЇНА

Connections without using the ISO connector / Подключение без использования разъема ISO / З'єднання без допомоги з'єднувача ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

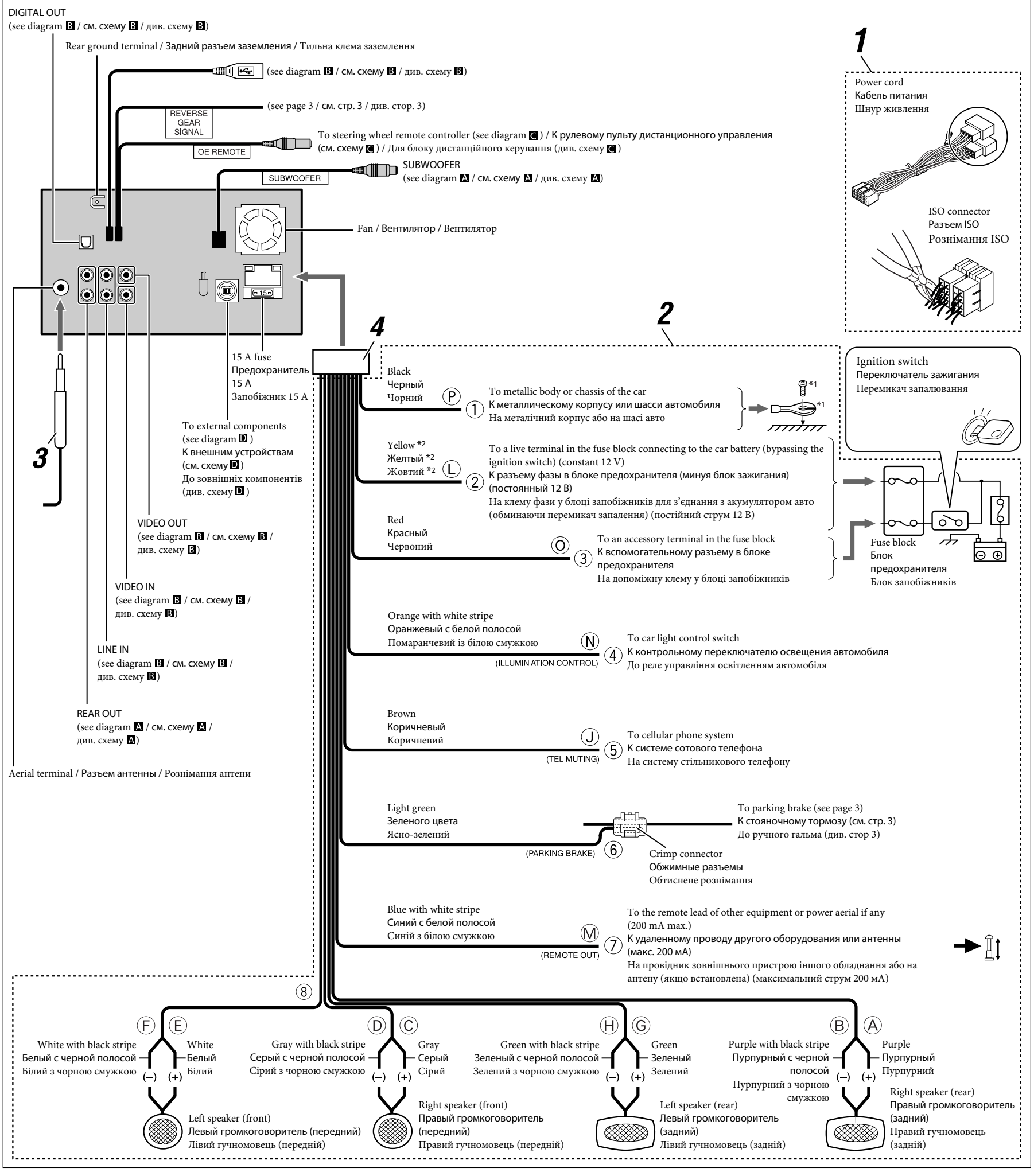
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.
Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

Перед тим, як з'єднати: Уважно перевірте електричну схему з'єднання вашого авто. Неправильне з'єднання може спричинити тяжке пошкодження вашого пристрою.
Контакти шнура живлення та рознімання, яке йде від корпуса авто можуть мати різні кольори.

1. Від'єднайте рознімання ISO.
2. З'єднайте кольорові провідники шнура живлення у порядку, що наведений нижче на ілюстрації.
3. Приєднайте провід антени.
4. Виконайте кінцеве приєднання джгута провідників до пристрою.



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 Не входит в комплект.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

*1 Не входить до комплекту постачання цього пристрою.
*2 Перед тим, як перевірити працездатність цього виробу до його встановлення, цей контакт необхідно приєднати, інакше живлення на прилад подаватися не буде.

A Connecting the external amplifier and subwoofer / Подключение внешнего усилителя и низкочастотного динамика / Приєднання зовнішнього підсилювача та низькочастотного динаміка

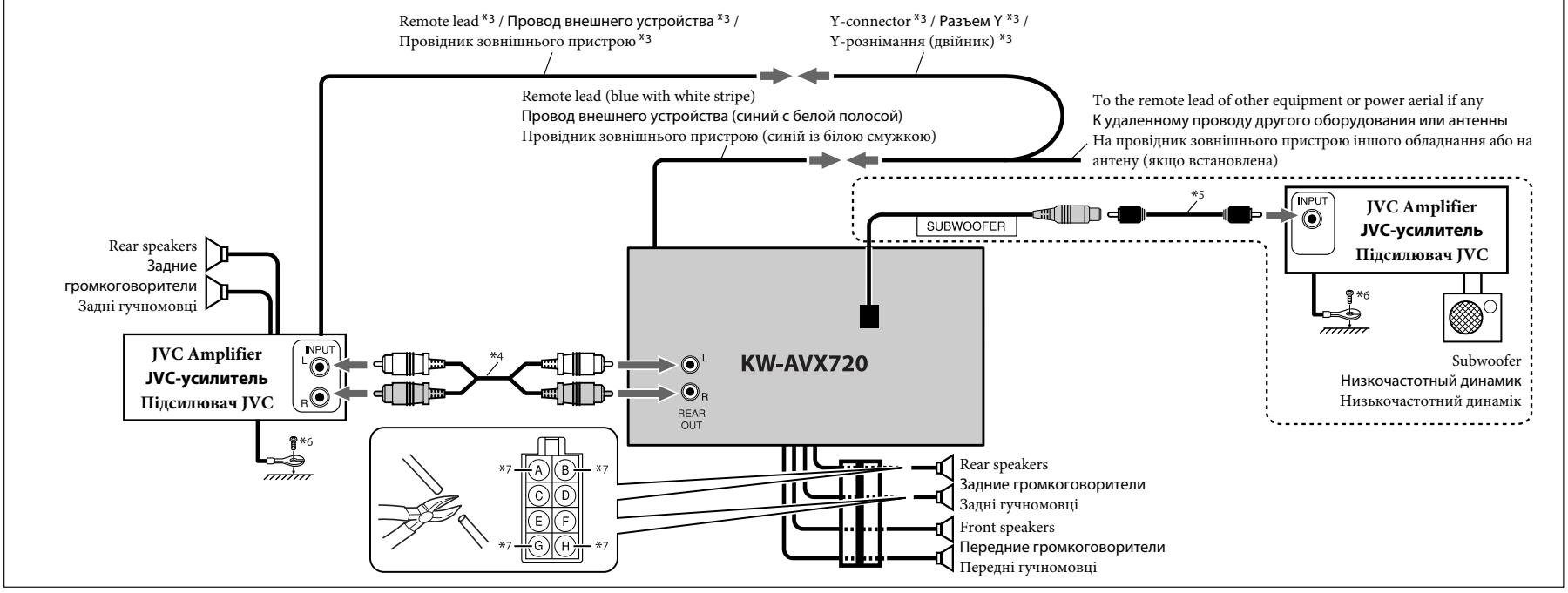
You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.

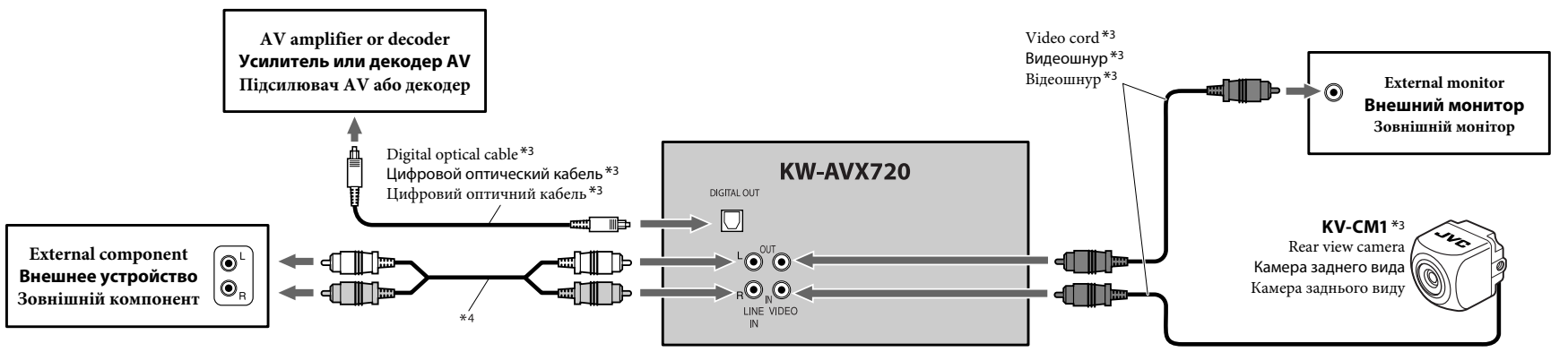
Только для усилителя:
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**
- Для получения более чистого звука и предотвращения внутреннего перегрева устройства можно отключить встроенный усилитель и использовать для усиления аудиосигнала только внешние усилители. См. стр. 21 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ (отдельный документ).

Для покращення характеристик стереосистеми, до неї можна підключити підсилювач.
- Підключіть провідник зовнішнього пристрою (синій з білою смужкою) до провідника зовнішнього пристрою іншого обладнання. Таким чином, ним можна буде керувати з цього пристрою.

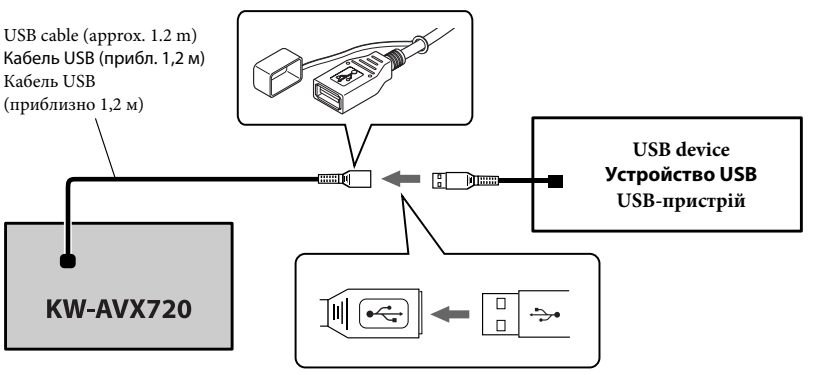
Тільки для підсилювача:
- **Відключіть гучномовці від цього пристрою, приєднайте їх до підсилювача. Залиште провідники гучномовців такими, що не використовуються.**
- Можна вимкнути вбудований підсилювач і спрямувати звукові сигнали тільки на зовнішній(ні) підсилювач(і), щоб отримати якісний звук і запобігти збільшенню температури всередині пристрою. Див. стор. 21 ІНСТРУКЦІЇ (окрема книга).



B Connecting the external components / Подключение внешних устройств / З'єднує зовнішні компоненти



USB devices / Устройства USB / USB-пристрої



You cannot connect a computer to the USB (⭠) terminal of the unit.
Вы не можете подключить компьютер к терминалу USB (⭠) устройства.
Підключити комп'ютер до входу пристрою (⭠), який використовується для підключення USB-пристроїв, неможливо.

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.
iPod є торговою маркою Apple Inc., зареєстрованою у Сполучених Штатах та інших країнах.

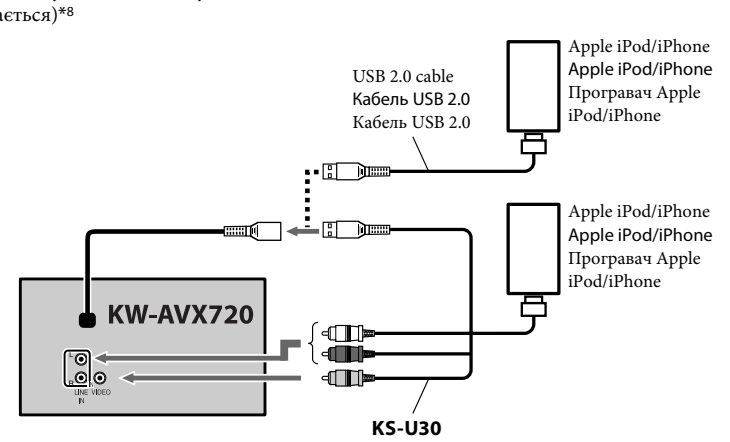
iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc.
iPhone является товарным знаком корпорации Apple Inc.
iPhone є торговим знаком Apple Inc.

Connecting the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal / Подключение iPod/iPhone к разъему USB /Підключення iPod/iPhone до рознімання USB

You can connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB terminal using the following cables:
- To listen to the music: USB 2.0 cable (supplied for the iPod/iPhone)
- To watch the video: USB Audio and Video cable for iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (not supplied)*8

Можно подключить iPod/iPhone к разъему USB с помощью следующих кабелей:
- для прослушивания музыки: кабель USB 2.0 (поставляется с iPod/iPhone)
- для просмотра видеозаписей: кабель USB Audio и Video для iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (не входит в комплект поставки)*8

Можна підключити iPod/iPhone до рознімання USB за допомогою наступних кабелів:
- Для прослуховування музики: Кабель USB 2.0 (постачається для iPod/iPhone)
- Для перегляду відео: Кабель аудіо-відео USB для iPod/iPhone—KS-U30 (в комплекті не постачається)*8



*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*5 Audio cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*7 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*8 When using the cable, make sure <iPod (Off)> is selected for <AV Input> (see page 18 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 Не входит в комплект.
*4 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки).
*5 Аудиошнур (не входит в комплект поставки).
*6 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.
*7 Обрежьте выводы задних динамиков для разъема ISO автомобиля и подсоедините их к усилителю.
*8 При использовании кабеля убедитесь в том, что выбрано значение <iPod (Off)> для настройки <AV Input> (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 18).

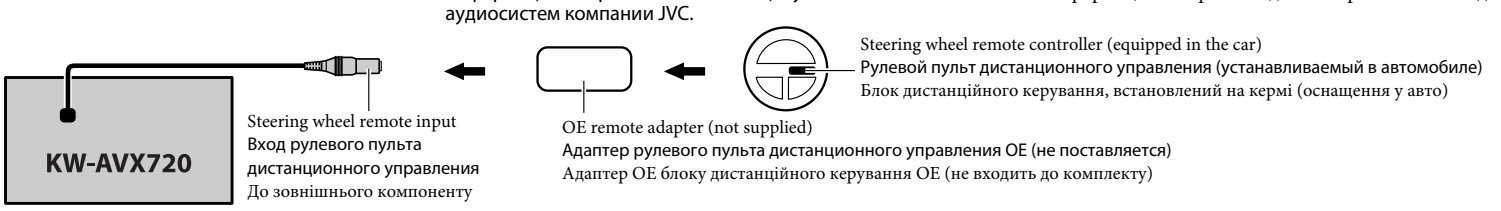
*3 Не входить до комплекту постачання цього пристрою.
*4 Сигнальний шнур (не входить до комплекту постачання даного пристрою).
*5 Аудіошнур (не входить до комплекту постачання даного пристрою).
*6 Надійно прикрутіть провідник заземлення до металічного корпусу або до шасі авто у місці, яке не має фарбового покриття (якщо воно є, видаліть фарбу до підключення провідника). Невиконання цієї вимоги може призвести до пошкодження пристрою.
*7 Відключіть провідники задніх гучномовців від рознімання ISO, що належить до авто, та з'єднайте їх із підсилювачем.
*8 При використанні кабелю переконайтеся, що для рознімання <AV Input> обрано режим <iPod (Off)> (див. стор. 18 ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления / З'єднання з блоком дистанційного керування, що встановлений на кермі

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.

Якщо авто оснащене блоком дистанційного керування, який встановлюється на кермі, можна керувати пристроєм за його допомогою. Щоб зробити це, потрібен адаптер OE блоку дистанційного керування компанії JVC (не входить до комплекту), що підходить до даного типу авто. За додатковою інформацією зверніться до свого регіонального дилера JVC.



D Connecting the external components to the CD changer jack / Подключение внешних устройств к разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков / Приєднання зовнішніх компонентів до гнізда пристрою зміни CD-дисків

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 и т. д.
Тюнер DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.

Компонентный	Адаптер	Название модели
Устройство Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod	KS-PD100
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	Адаптер линейного входа	KS-U57
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	Адаптер входа AUX	KS-U58

При подключении нескольких устройств (максимум: трех) рекомендуется подключить устройства последовательно, как описано ниже.

У разі приєднання зовнішніх компонентів, також зверніться до посібника, що входить до комплекту постачання вказаних компонентів та адаптера.

УВАГА:
Перед тим як приєднати зовнішній компонент, переконайтеся утому, що ваш пристрій вимкнений.

Наведені нижче компоненти виробництва компанії JVC можна приєднати через гніздо пристрою для зміни компакт-дисків.

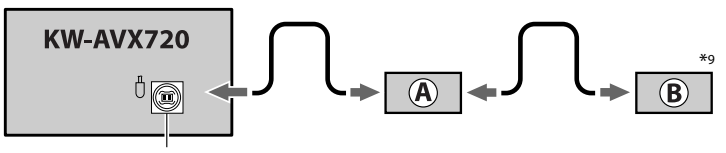
Компонент виробництва JVC	Назва моделі
Пристрій для зміни компакт-дисків (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 та ін.
Тюнер цифрового радіомовлення JVC	KT-DB1000

За допомогою різних адаптерів виробництва JVC можна також приєднувати такі компоненти.
- Можливо, з'єднувальні кабелі вам доведеться придбати окремо.

Компонент	Адаптер	Назва моделі
Пристрій Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Інтерфейсний адаптер для iPod	KS-PD100
Портативний аудіопрогравач із гніздами лінійних виходів	Адаптер лінійного входу	KS-U57
Портативний аудіопрогравач зі стереофонічним мініатюрним штекером 3,5 мм	Адаптер вхідного сигналу від зовнішнього пристрою	KS-U58

У разі приєднання більш ніж одного компонента (не більше трьох) рекомендується приєднувати їх послідовно, згідно з наведеними нижче поясненнями.

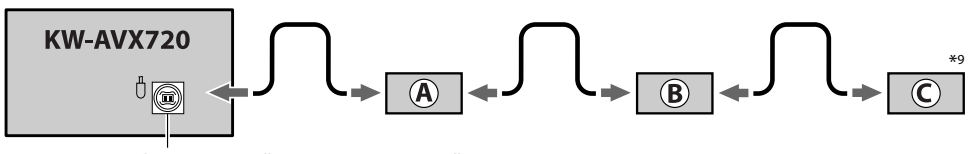
When connecting two components in series / Последовательное подключение двух устройств / У разі послідовного приєднання двох компонентів



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200 / KT-DB1000**[*10]
Ⓑ[*9] **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

CD changer jack / Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков / Гніздо пристрою зміни CD-дисків

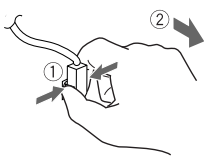
When connecting three components in series / При подключении трех устройств последовательно / У разі послідовного приєднання дрьох компонентів



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ **KT-DB1000**
Ⓒ[*9] **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

CD changer jack / Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков / Гніздо пристрою зміни CD-дисків

To disconnect the connector / Отключение от разъема / Відключення з'єднувача



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Крепко возьмитесь за верхнюю часть разъема (①), затем выдерните его (②).
Візьміться за верхню частину (①) з'єднувача, потім витягніть його (②).

*9 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*10 If KS-BTA200 is available, connect it to position Ⓐ and connect KT-DB1000 to position Ⓑ.

*9 Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 19).
*10 Если устройство KS-BTA200 доступно, подключите его к Ⓐ, а устройство KT-DB1000 к Ⓑ.

*9 Для використання цих компонентів правильно налаштуйте параметри зовнішнього входу (див. стор. 19 ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).
*10 Якщо присутній KS-BTA200, приєднайте його до деталі поз. Ⓐ та приєднайте KT-DB1000 до деталі поз. Ⓑ.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
  * Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
  * Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
  * Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
  * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
  * Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
  * Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
  * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
  * Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
  * Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

НЕСПРАВНОСТІ

- **Вийшов з ладу запобіжник.**
  * Чи правильно приєднані червоний та чорний провідники?
- **Не можна включити живлення.**
  * Чи приєднаний жовтий провідник?
- **Звук з гучномовців відсутній.**
  * Чи не замкнуто "на коротко" вихідні провідники гучномовця?
- **Звук спотворений.**
  * Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
  * Чи заземлені разом провідники "–" лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Звук чути з перешкодами.**
  * Чи приєднано тильну клему заземлення до шасі авто за допомогою коротших та товстіших шнурів?
- **Пристрій нагрівається.**
  * Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
  * Чи заземлені разом провідники "–" лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Цей пристрій не працює взагалі.**
  * Чи ви переналаштовували пристрій?